Deuteronomy

translationNotes

v10

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License, which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at http://unfoldingword.org." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from http://unfoldingword.org must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 10

Published: 2017-10-03

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing **1**
translationNotes **27**
Introduction to Deuteronomy 27
Deuteronomy 01 General Notes 29
Deuteronomy 1:1-2 30
Deuteronomy 1:3-4 32
Deuteronomy 1:5-6 34
Deuteronomy 1:7-8 36
Deuteronomy 1:9-11 38
Deuteronomy 1:12-14 40
Deuteronomy 1:15-16 42
Deuteronomy 1:17-18 44
Deuteronomy 1:19 46
Deuteronomy 1:20-21 47
Deuteronomy 1:22-24 49
Deuteronomy 1:25 51
Deuteronomy 1:26-28 53
Deuteronomy 1:29-31 55
Deuteronomy 1:32 57
Deuteronomy 1:34-35 58
Deuteronomy 1:37-38 60
Deuteronomy 1:39-40 62
Deuteronomy 1:41-42 63
Deuteronomy 1:43-44 65
Deuteronomy 1:45-46 67
Deuteronomy 02 General Notes 68
Deuteronomy 2:1-3 69
Deuteronomy 2:4-5 71
Deuteronomy 2:6-7 73
Deuteronomy 2:8 75
Deuteronomy 2:9 77
Deuteronomy 2:10-11 79
Deuteronomy 2:12 80
Deuteronomy 2:13-15 81
Deuteronomy 2:16-19 83
Deuteronomy 2:20-22 85
Deuteronomy 2:23 87
Deuteronomy 2:24-25 89
Deuteronomy 2:26-27 92
Deuteronomy 2:28-29 94
Deuteronomy 2:30-31 96

Deuteronomy 2:32-33 98
Deuteronomy 2:34-35 99
Deuteronomy 2:36-37 100
Deuteronomy 03 General Notes 102
Deuteronomy 3:1-2 103
Deuteronomy 3:3-4 105
Deuteronomy 3:5-7 107
Deuteronomy 3:8-10 109
Deuteronomy 3:11 111
Deuteronomy 3:12-13 113
Deuteronomy 3:14 115
Deuteronomy 3:15-16 117
Deuteronomy 3:17 119
Deuteronomy 3:18 120
Deuteronomy 3:19-20 122
Deuteronomy 3:21-22 124
Deuteronomy 3:23-25 125
Deuteronomy 3:26-27 127
Deuteronomy 3:28-29 129
Deuteronomy 04 General Notes 130
Deuteronomy 4:1-2 131
Deuteronomy 4:3-4 133
Deuteronomy 4:5-6 135
Deuteronomy 4:7-8 137
Deuteronomy 4:9-10 138
Deuteronomy 4:11-12 140
Deuteronomy 4:13-14 142
Deuteronomy 4:15-18 144
Deuteronomy 4:19-20 146
Deuteronomy 4:21-22 148
Deuteronomy 4:23-24 150
Deuteronomy 4:25-26 152
Deuteronomy 4:27-28 154
Deuteronomy 4:29 156
Deuteronomy 4:30-31 158
Deuteronomy 4:32-33 160
Deuteronomy 4:34 162
Deuteronomy 4:35-36 164
Deuteronomy 4:37-38 166
Deuteronomy 4:39-40 168
Deuteronomy 4:41-43 170
Deuteronomy 4:44-46 172
Deuteronomy 4:47-49 174

Deuteronomy 05 General Notes 176
Deuteronomy 5:1-3 177
Deuteronomy 5:4-6 179
Deuteronomy 5:7-8 181
Deuteronomy 5:9-10 183
Deuteronomy 5:11 185
Deuteronomy 5:12-14 187
Deuteronomy 5:15 189
Deuteronomy 5:16 191
Deuteronomy 5:17-20 192
Deuteronomy 5:21 194
Deuteronomy 5:22 195
Deuteronomy 5:23-24 196
Deuteronomy 5:25-27 197
Deuteronomy 5:28-30 199
Deuteronomy 5:31 201
Deuteronomy 5:32-33 202
Deuteronomy 06 General Notes 204
Deuteronomy 6:1-2 205
Deuteronomy 6:3 207
Deuteronomy 6:4-5 209
Deuteronomy 6:6-7 210
Deuteronomy 6:8-9 212
Deuteronomy 6:10-12 214
Deuteronomy 6:13-15 216
Deuteronomy 6:16-17 218
Deuteronomy 6:18-19 219
Deuteronomy 6:20-23 220
Deuteronomy 6:24-25 222
Deuteronomy 07 General Notes 224
Deuteronomy 7:1 225
Deuteronomy 7:2-3 226
Deuteronomy 7:4-5 227
Deuteronomy 7:6 229
Deuteronomy 7:7-8 230
Deuteronomy 7:9-11 232
Deuteronomy 7:12-13 234
Deuteronomy 7:14-15 236
Deuteronomy 7:16 238
Deuteronomy 7:17-19 240
Deuteronomy 7:20-22 242
Deuteronomy 7:23-24 244
Deuteronomy 7:25-26 246

Deuteronomy 08 General Notes 248
Deuteronomy 8:1-2 249
Deuteronomy 8:3 251
Deuteronomy 8:4-6 253
Deuteronomy 8:7-8 255
Deuteronomy 8:9-10 256
Deuteronomy 8:11-12 258
Deuteronomy 8:13-14 259
Deuteronomy 8:15-17 261
Deuteronomy 8:18-20 263
Deuteronomy 09 General Notes 266
Deuteronomy 9:1-2 267
Deuteronomy 9:3 269
Deuteronomy 9:4 271
Deuteronomy 9:5 272
Deuteronomy 9:6 274
Deuteronomy 9:7-8 275
Deuteronomy 9:9-10 277
Deuteronomy 9:11-12 279
Deuteronomy 9:13-14 281
Deuteronomy 9:15-16 282
Deuteronomy 9:17-18 284
Deuteronomy 9:19-20 286
Deuteronomy 9:21 287
Deuteronomy 9:22-24 288
Deuteronomy 9:25-26 290
Deuteronomy 9:27-29 292
Deuteronomy 10 General Notes 294
Deuteronomy 10:1-2 295
Deuteronomy 10:3-4 296
Deuteronomy 10:5 298
Deuteronomy 10:6-7 299
Deuteronomy 10:8-9 301
Deuteronomy 10:10-11 303
Deuteronomy 10:12-13 305
Deuteronomy 10:14-15 307
Deuteronomy 10:16-17 309
Deuteronomy 10:18-19 311
Deuteronomy 10:20-21 313
Deuteronomy 10:22 315
Deuteronomy 11 General Notes 317
Deuteronomy 11:1 318
Deuteronomy 11:2-3 319

Deuteronomy 11:4-5 . . . 321
Deuteronomy 11:6-7 . . . 323
Deuteronomy 11:8-9 . . . 325
Deuteronomy 11:10-12 . . . 327
Deuteronomy 11:13-15 . . . 329
Deuteronomy 11:16-17 . . . 331
Deuteronomy 11:18-19 . . . 333
Deuteronomy 11:20-21 . . . 335
Deuteronomy 11:22-23 . . . 337
Deuteronomy 11:24-25 . . . 339
Deuteronomy 11:26-28 . . . 341
Deuteronomy 11:29-30 . . . 343
Deuteronomy 11:31-32 . . . 345
Deuteronomy 12 General Notes . . . 346
Deuteronomy 12:1-2 . . . 347
Deuteronomy 12:3-4 . . . 349
Deuteronomy 12:5-6 . . . 351
Deuteronomy 12:7 . . . 353
Deuteronomy 12:8-9 . . . 354
Deuteronomy 12:10-11 . . . 356
Deuteronomy 12:12 . . . 358
Deuteronomy 12:13-14 . . . 360
Deuteronomy 12:15-16 . . . 362
Deuteronomy 12:17 . . . 364
Deuteronomy 12:18-19 . . . 366
Deuteronomy 12:20 . . . 368
Deuteronomy 12:21-22 . . . 369
Deuteronomy 12:23-25 . . . 371
Deuteronomy 12:26-27 . . . 373
Deuteronomy 12:28 . . . 375
Deuteronomy 12:29-30 . . . 377
Deuteronomy 12:31-32 . . . 379
Deuteronomy 13 General Notes . . . 380
Deuteronomy 13:1-3 . . . 381
Deuteronomy 13:4-5 . . . 383
Deuteronomy 13:6-7 . . . 386
Deuteronomy 13:8-9 . . . 388
Deuteronomy 13:10-11 . . . 390
Deuteronomy 13:12-14 . . . 392
Deuteronomy 13:15-16 . . . 394
Deuteronomy 13:17-18 . . . 396
Deuteronomy 14 General Notes . . . 398
Deuteronomy 14:1-2 . . . 399

Deuteronomy 14:3-5 . . . 401
Deuteronomy 14:6-7 . . . 403
Deuteronomy 14:8 . . . 405
Deuteronomy 14:9-10 . . . 406
Deuteronomy 14:11-13 . . . 408
Deuteronomy 14:14-17 . . . 409
Deuteronomy 14:18-20 . . . 410
Deuteronomy 14:21 . . . 412
Deuteronomy 14:22-23 . . . 414
Deuteronomy 14:24-25 . . . 416
Deuteronomy 14:26-27 . . . 417
Deuteronomy 14:28-29 . . . 419
Deuteronomy 15 General Notes . . . 421
Deuteronomy 15:1-3 . . . 422
Deuteronomy 15:4-6 . . . 424
Deuteronomy 15:7-8 . . . 426
Deuteronomy 15:9-10 . . . 428
Deuteronomy 15:11 . . . 430
Deuteronomy 15:12-14 . . . 432
Deuteronomy 15:15-17 . . . 434
Deuteronomy 15:18 . . . 436
Deuteronomy 15:19-21 . . . 437
Deuteronomy 15:22-23 . . . 439
Deuteronomy 16 General Notes . . . 441
Deuteronomy 16:1-2 . . . 442
Deuteronomy 16:3-4 . . . 444
Deuteronomy 16:5 . . . 446
Deuteronomy 16:7-8 . . . 447
Deuteronomy 16:9-10 . . . 449
Deuteronomy 16:11-12 . . . 451
Deuteronomy 16:13-14 . . . 453
Deuteronomy 16:15 . . . 455
Deuteronomy 16:16-17 . . . 456
Deuteronomy 16:18-20 . . . 458
Deuteronomy 16:21-22 . . . 461
Deuteronomy 17 General Notes . . . 462
Deuteronomy 17:1 . . . 463
Deuteronomy 17:2-4 . . . 464
Deuteronomy 17:5-7 . . . 466
Deuteronomy 17:8-9 . . . 468
Deuteronomy 17:10-11 . . . 470
Deuteronomy 17:12-13 . . . 471
Deuteronomy 17:14-15 . . . 472

Deuteronomy 17:16-17 474
Deuteronomy 17:18-19 476
Deuteronomy 17:20 478
Deuteronomy 18 General Notes 480
Deuteronomy 18:1-2 481
Deuteronomy 18:3-5 483
Deuteronomy 18:6-8 485
Deuteronomy 18:9-11 487
Deuteronomy 18:12-14 489
Deuteronomy 18:15-16 491
Deuteronomy 18:17-19 493
Deuteronomy 18:20-21 495
Deuteronomy 18:22 497
Deuteronomy 19 General Notes 498
Deuteronomy 19:1-2 499
Deuteronomy 19:4-5 501
Deuteronomy 19:6-7 503
Deuteronomy 19:8-10 505
Deuteronomy 19:11-13 508
Deuteronomy 19:14 511
Deuteronomy 19:15-16 513
Deuteronomy 19:17-19 515
Deuteronomy 19:20-21 517
Deuteronomy 20 General Notes 519
Deuteronomy 20:1 520
Deuteronomy 20:2-4 522
Deuteronomy 20:5 524
Deuteronomy 20:6-7 525
Deuteronomy 20:8-9 527
Deuteronomy 20:10-11 529
Deuteronomy 20:12-13 531
Deuteronomy 20:14-15 532
Deuteronomy 20:16-18 534
Deuteronomy 20:19-20 536
Deuteronomy 21 General Notes 538
Deuteronomy 21:1-2 539
Deuteronomy 21:3-4 541
Deuteronomy 21:5 543
Deuteronomy 21:6-7 545
Deuteronomy 21:8-9 547
Deuteronomy 21:10-12 549
Deuteronomy 21:13-14 551
Deuteronomy 21:15-17 553

Deuteronomy 21:18-19 . . . 555
Deuteronomy 21:20-21 . . . 557
Deuteronomy 21:22-23 . . . 559
Deuteronomy 22 General Notes . . . 561
Deuteronomy 22:1-2 . . . 562
Deuteronomy 22:3-4 . . . 564
Deuteronomy 22:5 . . . 566
Deuteronomy 22:6-7 . . . 567
Deuteronomy 22:8 . . . 569
Deuteronomy 22:9-11 . . . 570
Deuteronomy 22:12 . . . 572
Deuteronomy 22:13-14 . . . 573
Deuteronomy 22:15 . . . 575
Deuteronomy 22:16-17 . . . 576
Deuteronomy 22:18-19 . . . 578
Deuteronomy 22:20-21 . . . 580
Deuteronomy 22:22 . . . 582
Deuteronomy 22:23-24 . . . 583
Deuteronomy 22:25-27 . . . 585
Deuteronomy 22:28-29 . . . 587
Deuteronomy 22:30 . . . 589
Deuteronomy 23 General Notes . . . 590
Deuteronomy 23:1-2 . . . 591
Deuteronomy 23:3-4 . . . 593
Deuteronomy 23:5-6 . . . 595
Deuteronomy 23:7-8 . . . 597
Deuteronomy 23:9-11 . . . 599
Deuteronomy 23:12-14 . . . 601
Deuteronomy 23:15-16 . . . 603
Deuteronomy 23:17-18 . . . 604
Deuteronomy 23:19-20 . . . 606
Deuteronomy 23:21-23 . . . 608
Deuteronomy 23:24-25 . . . 610
Deuteronomy 24 General Notes . . . 612
Deuteronomy 24:1-2 . . . 613
Deuteronomy 24:3-4 . . . 615
Deuteronomy 24:5 . . . 617
Deuteronomy 24:6 . . . 618
Deuteronomy 24:7 . . . 619
Deuteronomy 24:8-9 . . . 621
Deuteronomy 24:10-11 . . . 623
Deuteronomy 24:12-13 . . . 625
Deuteronomy 24:14-15 . . . 627

Deuteronomy 24:16 629
Deuteronomy 24:17-18 630
Deuteronomy 24:19-20 632
Deuteronomy 24:21-22 634
Deuteronomy 25 General Notes 636
Deuteronomy 25:1-2 637
Deuteronomy 25:3 639
Deuteronomy 25:4 641
Deuteronomy 25:5-6 642
Deuteronomy 25:7-8 644
Deuteronomy 25:9-10 646
Deuteronomy 25:11-12 648
Deuteronomy 25:13 649
Deuteronomy 25:15-16 651
Deuteronomy 25:17-19 653
Deuteronomy 26 General Notes 655
Deuteronomy 26:1-2 656
Deuteronomy 26:3-4 657
Deuteronomy 26:5 658
Deuteronomy 26:6-7 660
Deuteronomy 26:8-9 662
Deuteronomy 26:10-11 664
Deuteronomy 26:12-13 666
Deuteronomy 26:14-15 668
Deuteronomy 26:16-17 670
Deuteronomy 26:18-19 672
Deuteronomy 27 General Notes 674
Deuteronomy 27:1-3 675
Deuteronomy 27:4-5 677
Deuteronomy 27:6-8 679
Deuteronomy 27:9-10 681
Deuteronomy 27:11-12 683
Deuteronomy 27:13-14 685
Deuteronomy 27:15 686
Deuteronomy 27:16-17 688
Deuteronomy 27:18-19 690
Deuteronomy 27:20-21 692
Deuteronomy 27:22-23 694
Deuteronomy 27:24-25 695
Deuteronomy 27:26 696
Deuteronomy 28 General Notes 697
Deuteronomy 28:1-2 698
Deuteronomy 28:3-4 700

Deuteronomy 28:5-6 702
Deuteronomy 28:7-8 703
Deuteronomy 28:9-10 705
Deuteronomy 28:11-12 707
Deuteronomy 28:13-14 709
Deuteronomy 28:15 711
Deuteronomy 28:16-17 713
Deuteronomy 28:18-19 715
Deuteronomy 28:20-21 717
Deuteronomy 28:22 719
Deuteronomy 28:23-24 721
Deuteronomy 28:25-26 723
Deuteronomy 28:27-29 725
Deuteronomy 28:30-31 727
Deuteronomy 28:32 729
Deuteronomy 28:33-35 731
Deuteronomy 28:36-37 733
Deuteronomy 28:38-39 735
Deuteronomy 28:40-41 736
Deuteronomy 28:42-44 738
Deuteronomy 28:45-46 740
Deuteronomy 28:47-48 742
Deuteronomy 28:49-51 744
Deuteronomy 28:52-53 746
Deuteronomy 28:54 748
Deuteronomy 28:56 750
Deuteronomy 28:58-59 752
Deuteronomy 28:60-62 754
Deuteronomy 28:63-64 756
Deuteronomy 28:65-66 758
Deuteronomy 28:67-68 760
Deuteronomy 29 General Notes 762
Deuteronomy 29:1 763
Deuteronomy 29:2-4 765
Deuteronomy 29:5-6 767
Deuteronomy 29:7-9 769
Deuteronomy 29:10-11 771
Deuteronomy 29:12-13 773
Deuteronomy 29:14-16 775
Deuteronomy 29:17-19 777
Deuteronomy 29:20-21 779
Deuteronomy 29:22-24 781
Deuteronomy 29:25-26 784

Deuteronomy 29:27-28 786
Deuteronomy 29:29 788
Deuteronomy 30 General Notes 789
Deuteronomy 30:1-3 790
Deuteronomy 30:4-5 793
Deuteronomy 30:6-8 795
Deuteronomy 30:9-10 797
Deuteronomy 30:11-12 799
Deuteronomy 30:13-14 801
Deuteronomy 30:15-16 802
Deuteronomy 30:17-18 804
Deuteronomy 30:19-20 806
Deuteronomy 31 General Notes 808
Deuteronomy 31:1-3 809
Deuteronomy 31:4-6 811
Deuteronomy 31:7-8 813
Deuteronomy 31:9-11 815
Deuteronomy 31:12-13 817
Deuteronomy 31:14-15 819
Deuteronomy 31:16 820
Deuteronomy 31:17-18 822
Deuteronomy 31:19-20 824
Deuteronomy 31:21 826
Deuteronomy 31:22-23 828
Deuteronomy 31:24-26 829
Deuteronomy 31:27-29 830
Deuteronomy 31:30 833
Deuteronomy 32 General Notes 834
Deuteronomy 32:1-2 835
Deuteronomy 32:3-4 837
Deuteronomy 32:5-6 839
Deuteronomy 32:7-8 841
Deuteronomy 32:9-10 843
Deuteronomy 32:11-12 845
Deuteronomy 32:13 847
Deuteronomy 32:14 849
Deuteronomy 32:15-16 851
Deuteronomy 32:17-18 853
Deuteronomy 32:19-20 855
Deuteronomy 32:21 857
Deuteronomy 32:22 859
Deuteronomy 32:23-24 861
Deuteronomy 32:25-26 863

Deuteronomy 32:27 . . . 865
Deuteronomy 32:28-29 . . . 867
Deuteronomy 32:30-31 . . . 869
Deuteronomy 32:32 . . . 871
Deuteronomy 32:33-34 . . . 873
Deuteronomy 32:35 . . . 875
Deuteronomy 32:36 . . . 877
Deuteronomy 32:37-38 . . . 879
Deuteronomy 32:39-40 . . . 881
Deuteronomy 32:41 . . . 883
Deuteronomy 32:42 . . . 885
Deuteronomy 32:43 . . . 887
Deuteronomy 32:44-45 . . . 889
Deuteronomy 32:46-47 . . . 890
Deuteronomy 32:48-49 . . . 892
Deuteronomy 32:50-52 . . . 894
Deuteronomy 33 General Notes . . . 896
Deuteronomy 33:1-2 . . . 897
Deuteronomy 33:3-4 . . . 899
Deuteronomy 33:5-6 . . . 901
Deuteronomy 33:7 . . . 903
Deuteronomy 33:8 . . . 905
Deuteronomy 33:9 . . . 907
Deuteronomy 33:10 . . . 909
Deuteronomy 33:11 . . . 910
Deuteronomy 33:12 . . . 912
Deuteronomy 33:13 . . . 914
Deuteronomy 33:14-15 . . . 916
Deuteronomy 33:16 . . . 918
Deuteronomy 33:17 . . . 920
Deuteronomy 33:18-19 . . . 922
Deuteronomy 33:20 . . . 924
Deuteronomy 33:21 . . . 926
Deuteronomy 33:22 . . . 928
Deuteronomy 33:23 . . . 929
Deuteronomy 33:24-25 . . . 931
Deuteronomy 33:26 . . . 933
Deuteronomy 33:27 . . . 935
Deuteronomy 33:28 . . . 937
Deuteronomy 33:29 . . . 939
Deuteronomy 34 General Notes . . . 941
Deuteronomy 34:1-3 . . . 942
Deuteronomy 34:4-6 . . . 944

Deuteronomy 34:7-8 . . . 946
Deuteronomy 34:9 . . . 947
Deuteronomy 34:10-12 . . . 948
translationQuestions . . . 950
Deuteronomy 1 . . . 950
Deuteronomy 2 . . . 953
Deuteronomy 3 . . . 955
Deuteronomy 4 . . . 957
Deuteronomy 5 . . . 962
Deuteronomy 6 . . . 965
Deuteronomy 7 . . . 967
Deuteronomy 8 . . . 969
Deuteronomy 9 . . . 971
Deuteronomy 10 . . . 974
Deuteronomy 11 . . . 976
Deuteronomy 12 . . . 978
Deuteronomy 13 . . . 981
Deuteronomy 14 . . . 982
Deuteronomy 15 . . . 984
Deuteronomy 16 . . . 987
Deuteronomy 17 . . . 990
Deuteronomy 18 . . . 992
Deuteronomy 19 . . . 994
Deuteronomy 20 . . . 996
Deuteronomy 21 . . . 998
Deuteronomy 22 . . . 1001
Deuteronomy 23 . . . 1004
Deuteronomy 24 . . . 1008
Deuteronomy 25 . . . 1011
Deuteronomy 26 . . . 1013
Deuteronomy 27 . . . 1015
Deuteronomy 28 . . . 1017
Deuteronomy 29 . . . 1021
Deuteronomy 30 . . . 1025
Deuteronomy 31 . . . 1028
Deuteronomy 32 . . . 1033
Deuteronomy 33 . . . 1039
Deuteronomy 34 . . . 1042
translationWords . . . 1044
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed . . . 1045
Aaron . . . 1046
abomination, abominations, abominable . . . 1047

Abraham, Abram 1049
acacia 1051
accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations 1052
acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted 1053
acquit, acquits, acquitted 1054
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses 1055
adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies 1057
afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions 1059
age, ages, aged 1061
alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners 1062
altar, altars 1064
Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites 1066
amen, truly 1067
Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites 1069
Amorite, Amorites 1070
ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather 1072
anger, angered, angry 1075
appoint, appoints, appointed 1077
Arabah 1078
Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic 1079
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh 1080
arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance 1081
Asher 1082
Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths 1083
asleep, fall asleep, fell asleep, fallen asleep, sleep, sleeps, slept, sleeping, sleeper, sleepless, sleepy 1084
assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled 1085
atonement, atone, atones, atoned 1087
avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance 1088
ax, axes 1090
Baal 1091
Balaam 1093
barley 1094
barren 1095
Bashan 1096
basket, baskets, basketfuls 1097
beast, beasts 1098
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief 1099
beloved 1102
Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites 1103
bind, bond, bound 1104
blameless 1106
blemish, blemishes, unblemished 1107

bless, blessed, blessing 1108
blood 1111
bloodshed 1113
blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out 1114
body, bodies 1115
bow and arrow, bows and arrows 1117
bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down 1118
bread 1120
breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing 1122
bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery 1124
bronze 1125
brother, brothers 1126
burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome 1128
burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire 1129
bury, buries, buried, burying, burial 1130
Caleb 1131
call, calls, calling, called 1132
camel, camels 1134
Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites 1135
captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity 1137
cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out 1139
chariot, chariots, charioteers 1141
chief, chiefs 1142
children, child 1143
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect 1145
Christ, Messiah 1147
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision 1149
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean 1152
column, columns, pillar, pillars 1154
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments 1155
commander, commanders 1159
commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment 1160
compassion, compassionate 1161
condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation 1162
confirm, confirms, confirmed, confirmation 1163
consume, consumes, consumed, consuming 1164
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses 1166
corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly 1167
court, courts, courtyard, courtyards 1168
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love 1170
covenant, covenants, new covenant 1171
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen 1175

create, creates, created, creation, creator 1177
creature, creatures 1179
crime, crimes, criminal, criminals 1180
cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries 1181
cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy . . . 1182
curse, cursed, curses, cursing 1184
cut off, cuts off, cutting off 1186
Dan 1187
darkness 1188
David 1190
day, days 1192
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive 1193
declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations 1195
decree, decrees, decreed 1196
dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication 1198
deer, doe, does, fawns, roebuck, roebucks 1199
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled 1200
deliver, delivers, delivered, delivering, deliverer, deliverance 1202
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit 1204
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants 1206
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses 1208
detest, detested, detestable 1210
devour, devours, devoured, devouring 1211
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly 1212
discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline 1215
dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable 1216
disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient 1217
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer 1218
divorce 1219
donkey, mule 1220
doorpost 1221
dream 1222
drink offering 1224
drunk, drunkard 1225
eagle, eagles 1226
earth, earthen, earthly 1227
Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea 1229
Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians 1230
elder, elders 1233
Elijah 1235
Elisha 1236
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound 1237

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants 1238
envy, covet 1241
Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites 1242
Esau 1243
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 1245
Euphrates River, the River 1248
evil, wicked, wickedness 1249
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins 1252
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation 1254
exile, exiles, exiled 1255
face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown 1256
faith 1258
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness 1260
family, families 1262
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism 1263
fear, fears, afraid 1265
fellowship offering, fellowship offerings 1267
festival, festivals 1268
fig, figs 1269
fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots 1270
firstborn 1272
firstfruits 1274
flesh 1275
flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds 1277
fool, fools, foolish, folly 1279
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 1281
forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook 1283
found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations 1285
fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing 1286
free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty 1287
freewill offering, freewill offerings 1289
fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful 1290
fulfill, fulfilled 1292
Gad 1294
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways 1295
Gaza 1297
generation 1298
Geshur, Geshurites 1300
Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites 1301
Gilgal 1302
Girgashites 1303
glean, gleans, gleaned, gleanings 1304
glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies 1305

goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids 1308
God 1309
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry 1315
gold, golden 1318
Gomorrah 1319
good, goodness 1320
grain, grains, grainfields 1322
grape, grapes, grapevine 1323
grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place 1324
guilt, guilty 1326
had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with 1328
Hades, Sheol 1330
hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of 1332
hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung 1335
hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness 1336
harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters 1338
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded 1340
heart, hearts 1342
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly 1345
Hebrew, Hebrews 1348
high place, high places 1349
Hittite, Hittites 1350
Hivite, Hivites 1351
Holy One 1352
holy place 1353
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 1355
honey, honeycomb 1358
honor, honors 1359
hoof, hoofs, hooves 1361
Horeb 1362
horror, horrors, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying 1363
horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback 1364
house of God, Yahweh's house 1365
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers 1366
household, households 1368
humble, humbles, humbled, humility 1369
humiliate, humiliated, humiliation 1370
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures 1371
incense, incenses 1373
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir 1374
iniquity, iniquities 1377

innocent 1378
inquire, inquires, inquired, inquiries 1380
instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors 1381
Isaac 1382
Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob 1384
Israel, Israelites 1386
Issachar 1389
jealous, jealousy 1390
Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites 1392
Jericho 1393
Jordan River, Jordan 1394
Joseph (OT) 1396
Joshua 1398
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing 1400
Judah 1402
judge, judges 1403
judge, judges, judgment, judgments 1404
just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification 1406
Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh 1409
kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses 1410
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly 1411
kingdom, kingdoms 1413
know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge 1415
labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers 1417
lamb, Lamb of God 1418
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh 1420
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles 1423
Lebanon 1424
leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous 1425
Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical 1426
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive 1428
like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike 1431
lions, lion, lioness, lionesses 1433
livestock 1434
locust, locusts 1435
loins 1436
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God 1437
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs 1439
Lot 1442
love, loves, loving, loved 1443

majesty 1446
Manasseh 1447
manna 1449
mercy, merciful 1450
messenger, messengers 1452
might, mighty, mightier, mightily 1453
mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded 1455
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs 1457
Miriam 1459
Moab, Moabite, Moabitess 1460
month, months, monthly 1461
Moses 1462
Most High 1464
mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully 1465
multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication 1466
name, names, named 1467
Naphtali 1469
nation, nations 1470
Negev 1473
neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring 1474
oak, oaks 1476
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by 1477
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient 1479
oil 1481
olive, olives 1482
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors 1483
ordinance, ordinances 1485
Paran 1486
partial, be partial, partiality 1487
Passover 1488
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers 1490
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks 1492
people group, peoples, the people, a people 1493
people of God, my people 1496
perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly 1498
perish, perished, perishing, perishable 1499
Perizzite 1501
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors . . 1502
perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting 1504
Pharaoh, king of Egypt 1505

pig, pigs, pork, swine . . . 1507
plague, plagues . . . 1508
plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing . . . 1509
pledge, pledged, pledges . . . 1511
plow, plows, plowed, plowing, plowers, plowman, plowmen, plowshares, unplowed . . . 1512
pomegranate, pomegranates . . . 1513
possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess . . . 1514
power, powers . . . 1517
praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy . . . 1519
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed . . . 1521
precious . . . 1523
prey, prey on . . . 1524
priest, priests, priesthood . . . 1525
prince, princes, princess, princesses . . . 1527
proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations . . . 1529
promise, promises, promised . . . 1530
Promised Land . . . 1532
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . 1534
prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous . . . 1536
prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored . . . 1538
proverb, proverbs . . . 1539
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished . . . 1540
pure, purify, purification . . . 1542
Rabbah . . . 1544
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . 1545
reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping . . . 1548
rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness . . . 1549
rebuke, rebukes, rebuked . . . 1551
receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver . . . 1552
redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer . . . 1554
refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering . . . 1556
reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection . . . 1558
rest, rests, rested, resting, restless . . . 1559
restore, restores, restored, restoration . . . 1561
Reuben . . . 1562
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation . . . 1563
reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder . . . 1565
right hand . . . 1567
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness . . . 1569
ruin, ruins, ruined . . . 1572
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled . . . 1573
Sabbath . . . 1574

sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings 1576
Salt Sea, Dead Sea 1579
sanctuary 1580
sandal, sandals 1582
Satan, devil, evil one 1583
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation 1585
scroll, scrolls 1588
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea 1589
seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed 1590
seed, semen 1591
seize, seizes, seized, seizure 1593
send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out 1594
serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers 1596
serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice 1597
set apart 1599
shield, shields, shielded 1601
Sidon, Sidonians 1602
siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks 1603
sign, signs, proof, reminder 1604
silver 1606
Simeon 1607
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning 1608
Sinai, Mount Sinai 1611
sister, sisters 1612
snare, snares, ensnare, ensnares, ensnared, entrap, trap, traps, trapped 1613
Sodom 1614
son, sons 1615
sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft 1618
soul, souls 1619
spirit, spirits, spiritual 1621
statute, statutes 1623
stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness 1625
stone, stones, stoning 1626
strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening 1627
strong drink, strong drinks 1629
suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings 1630
sulfur, sulfurous 1632
sword, swords, swordsmen 1633
teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught 1635
tempt, temptation 1636
Ten Commandments 1638
tent of meeting 1639
tent, tents, tentmakers 1640

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes 1641
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying 1642
test, tests, tested 1643
testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses 1645
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea 1648
thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing 1649
thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing 1650
throne, thrones, enthroned 1651
time, timely, times, untimely 1652
transgress, transgresses, transgression 1654
trial, trials 1655
tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen 1656
tribulation 1658
trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome 1659
true, truth, truths 1661
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness 1663
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back 1665
understand, understands, understood, understanding 1667
unleavened bread 1668
vain, vanity 1670
vine, vines 1671
vineyard, vineyards 1672
virgin, virgins, virginity 1673
voice, voices 1674
vow, vows, vowed 1676
walk, walks, walked, walking 1677
waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands 1679
water, waters, watered, watering 1680
week, weeks 1682
wheat 1683
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine 1684
winepress 1686
wise, wisdom 1687
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures 1689
word, words 1691
works, deeds, work, acts 1693
worship 1695
wrath, fury 1697
written 1698
wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful 1699

Yahweh 1700
year, years 1706
yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened 1708
yoke, yokes, yoked 1710
Zebulun 1711
Zoar 1712
translationAcademy 1713
Abstract Nouns 1713
Active or Passive 1716
Apostrophe 1722
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 1724
Background Information 1730
Biblical Distance 1733
Biblical Money 1736
Direct and Indirect Quotations 1738
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding 1741
Double Negatives 1744
Doublet 1747
Ellipsis 1750
Euphemism 1752
Forms of You 1754
Generic Noun Phrases 1760
Go and Come 1762
Hebrew Months 1765
Hendiadys 1768
How to Translate Names 1770
Hyperbole and Generalization 1775
Hypothetical Situations 1779
Idiom 1782
Inclusive “We” 1787
Irony 1788
Litotes 1791
Merism 1793
Metaphor 1795
Metonymy 1807
Nominal Adjectives 1813
Numbers 1815
Ordinal Numbers 1819
Parallelism 1822
Personification 1826
Predictive Past 1828
Pronouns 1830
Quotes Within Quotes 1833

Rhetorical Question 1836
Simile 1840
Symbolic Action 1843
Synecdoche 1845
Translate Unknowns 1849
When Masculine Words Include Women 1852

translationNotes

Introduction to Deuteronomy

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Deuteronomy

1. First teaching (1:1–4:43) -Reminder of Yahweh's guidance of Israel (1:1–46)
    - Events at Kadesh and Sidon, and the defeat of Og, King of Basham (2:1–3:29)
    - Appeal to obey the law of Yahweh (4:1–43)
2. Presenting the law of God and Rules and Warnings (4:44–28:68)
    - The Ten Commandments (5:1–10:22)
    - Rules and Warnings from the Law (11:1–26:19)
3. Instructions for entering Canaan (27:1–28:68)
4. Exhortation to obey the law of God, and ratification of the law (30)
5. Last words of Moses, his blessing, Song of Moses, and his death (31–34)

What is the Book of Deuteronomy about?

In the book of Deuteronomy, Moses repeats the laws of the covenant that God made with the people of Israel. The people of Israel were about to go into the Promised Land. Before they entered the land Moses reminded them of what Yahweh did for them and what he expected from them. Moses warned the people about worshipping idols and no longer trusting Yahweh once they settled in the Promised Land. Yahweh promised to judge those who disobey him and to bless those who obey his Law. (See: covenant, covenants, new covenant)

How should the title of this book be translated?

The name "Deuteronomy" means "Second Law" or "the retelling of the Law." Translators may decide on a title such as, "A Repeat of the Law" or "Moses Explains the Law Again." (See: How to Translate Names)

Who wrote the Book of Deuteronomy?

The writers of both the Old and New Testament present Moses as being very involved with writing the Book of Deuteronomy. However, many scholars think that Joshua wrote chapter 34. This chapter concerns how Moses died.

What are the important features of the Book of Deuteronomy?

The book contains a series of speeches that Moses gave to Israel before he died. He spoke these things just before the people entered the Promised Land. (See: Promised Land)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why did Yahweh command the Israelites to completely destroy the people who lived in the Promised Land?

As God prepared the Israelites to enter the Promised Land, he gave them instructions to completely destroy the people who were living there. These people become like the animals that Israel brought as whole burnt offerings to Yahweh. Yahweh wanted the people completely destroyed so that the Israelites would not be tempted to join them and worship their false gods.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the role of God's name in Deuteronomy?

God's name is mentioned over thirty times in the book of Deuteronomy. The use of God's name in this book usually represents God's honor or fame. At other times in Deuteronomy, God's name represents his presence. God said he would choose a place and make his name dwell there. This means God's presence will be there. The people were to go to that place to worship him.

Can this book be translated before the rest of the Pentateuch?

The books of Genesis and Exodus provide help explain what is happening in Deuteronomy. For this reason, those books should be translated before the Book of Deuteronomy.

Deuteronomy 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter forms a continuation with the last chapter of the book of Numbers.

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's victory

The chapter explains that Israel's conquering of the Promised Land will be done by Yahweh. They are not to fear the people of Canaan but be obedient to Yahweh. Yahweh is bringing about his judgement upon the people of Canaan. (See: Promised Land and judge, judges, judgment, judgments)

Possessing the land

While the Promised Land belongs to Israel, they do not possess the land. Possessing the land is an important theme. Posessing the land depended on Israel's faithfulness. (See: faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 01:01 Notes**
- **Deuteronomy intro**

Deuteronomy 1:1-2

UDB:

[1] In this book is written what Moses had said to all the Israelites, after they had set up their tents east of the Jordan—in the desert plain along the Jordan—near a place named Suph, between Paran on one side of the Jordan River and the towns of Tophel, Laban, Hazeroth, and Dizahab on the other side of the river. [2] To walk from Mount Sinai to Kadesh Barnea, people usually travel for only eleven days, going by way of the hill country called Edom.

ULB:

[1] These are the words that Moses spoke to all Israel beyond the Jordan in the wilderness, in the plain of the Jordan River valley over against Suph, between Paran, Tophel, Laban, Hazeroth, and Dizahab. [2] It is eleven days' journey from Horeb by the way of Mount Seir to Kadesh Barnea.

translationNotes

beyond the Jordan

This refers to the land across the Jordan River, to the east of Israel. Moses was east of the Jordan when he spoke to the Israelites. AT: "east of the Jordan"

Suph ... Paran ... Tophel ... Laban ... Hazeroth ... Dizahab

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

It is eleven days' journey from Horeb ... to Kadesh Barnea

"It takes eleven days to walk from Horeb ... to Kadesh Barnea"

Mount Seir

This is a mountainous area south of the Dead Sea. The area is also called "Edom." (See: How to Translate Names)

eleven

"11" (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- word, words
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Horeb
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:3-4

UDB:

[3] Forty years after the Israelites had left Egypt, Moses told the Israelite people everything that Yahweh had commanded him. [4] This was after they had defeated Sihon, the king of the Amor people group, who lived in the city of Heshbon, and Og, the king of the region of Bashan, who lived in towns of Ashtaroth and Edrei.

ULB:

[3] It happened in the fortieth year, in the eleventh month, on the first day of the month, that Moses spoke to the people of Israel, telling them all that Yahweh commanded him concerning them. [4] This was after Yahweh had attacked Sihon the king of the Amorites, who lived in Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, who lived in Ashtaroth at Edrei.

translationNotes

It happened in the fortieth year, in the eleventh month, on the first day of the month, that Moses spoke

The ordinal numbers can be translated as cardinal numbers. AT: “They had lived in the wilderness for 40 years, 11 months, and 1 day, when Moses spoke” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

fortieth

40th (See: Numbers)

in the eleventh month, on the first day of the month

This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of January on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

eleventh

11th (See: Numbers)

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Yahweh had attacked

“Yahweh had enabled the Israelites to defeat”

Sihon ... Og

These are names of kings. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heshbon ... Ashtaroth at Edrei

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- year, years
- day, days
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Amorite, Amorites
- Bashan

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:5-6

UDB:

[5] Moses told them these things while the people were in Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River. He explained to them God's instructions. This is what he said to them:

[6] "Yahweh our God said to us when we were at Mount Sinai, 'You have stayed for a very long time at the foot of this mountain.

ULB:

[5] Beyond the Jordan, in the land of Moab, Moses began to announce these instructions, saying, [6] "Yahweh our God spoke to us at Horeb, saying, 'You have lived long enough in this hill country.

translationNotes

Beyond the Jordan

This refers to the land across the Jordan River, to the east of Israel. Moses was east of the Jordan when he said this. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 1:1. AT: "East of the Jordan River"

spoke to us

The word "us" refers to Moses and the other people of Israel.

You have lived long enough in this hill country

This is an idiom. AT: "You do not need to stay near this mountain any longer" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Moses
- Yahweh
- God
- Horeb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:7-8

UDB:

[7] So now continue traveling. Go to the hill country where the Amorites live and to the nearby areas—to the plain along the Jordan, to the hill country, to the western foothills, to the southern Judean wilderness, to the Mediterranean seacoast, to all the land of Canaan, to the Lebanon mountains, and northeast to the great Euphrates River. [8] I will give that land to you. I, Yahweh, promised to your ancestors Abraham and Isaac and Jacob that I would give it to them and to their descendants. So now go and occupy it.'"

ULB:

[7] Turn and take your journey, and go to the hill country of the Amorites and to all the places near there in the plain of the Jordan River valley, in the hill country, in the lowland, in the Negev, and by the seashore—the land of the Canaanites, and in Lebanon as far as the great river, the Euphrates. [8] Look, I have set the land before you; go in and possess the land that Yahweh swore to your fathers—to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob—to give to them and to their descendants after them.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel what Yahweh said to them.

Turn and take your journey

The word "turn" is an idiom for beginning action. AT: "Start again on your journey" (See: Idiom)

hill country ... Euphrates

Yahweh is describing places in the land that he has promised to give to the Israelites.

hill country

This is an area in the hills near the place where the Amorites lived.

lowland

an area of land that is low and flat

Look

"Pay attention to what I am about to say"

I have set the land before you

"I am now giving this land to you"

that Yahweh swore

Yahweh is speaking as if he were another person. AT: "that I, Yahweh, swore" (See: Pronouns)

fathers

The word "fathers" is a synecdoche for all ancestors. AT: "ancestors" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Amorite, Amorites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Negev
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Lebanon
- Euphrates River, the River
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Yahweh
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:9-11

UDB:

[9] Moses also said to the people, "When we were still at Mount Sinai, I said to your ancestors, 'It is a very big task for me to govern all of you. I cannot do it by myself. [10] Yahweh our God has caused us Israelites to become as numerous as the stars in the sky. [11] And I hope that Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, will cause us to become a thousand times as numerous as we are now and that he will bless us just like he promised to do.

ULB:

[9] I spoke to you at that time, saying, 'I am not able to carry you myself alone. [10] Yahweh your God has multiplied you, and, look, you are today as the multitude of the stars of heaven. [11] May Yahweh, the God of your fathers, make you a thousand times as many as you are, and bless you, as he has promised you!

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel what Yahweh said to them.

I spoke to you at that time

Here "I" refers to Moses. The phrase "at that time" refers to when the Israelites were at Horeb, which is the same as Mount Sinai. AT: "When we were at Horeb, I spoke to you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I am not able to carry you myself alone

Here "to carry you" means "to lead you" or "to govern you." AT: "It is too much for me to lead you by myself" (See: Idiom)

as the multitude of the stars of heaven

This is an exaggeration that means God has greatly increased the number of Israelites. AT: "a great crowd of many people" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization and Simile)

a thousand times

The phrase "a thousand" is a metaphor for "very many." AT: "very many times" (See: Metaphor)

a thousand

1000 (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- bless, blessed, blessing
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:12-14

UDB:

[12] But I certainly cannot deal with all of your complaints and disputes. [13] So choose some men from your tribes who are wise and who have good sense and who are respected. Then I will appoint them to be your leaders.'

[14] Your ancestors replied, 'What you have suggested is good for us to do.'

ULB:

[12] But how can I myself alone carry your loads, your burdens, and your disputes? [13] Take wise men, understanding men, and men of good repute from each tribe, and I will make them heads over you.' [14] You answered me and said, 'The thing that you have spoken is good for us to do.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

But how can I myself alone carry your loads, your burdens, and your disputes?

Moses uses a question to emphasize that he cannot solve all of their problems by himself. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "I cannot carry your loads, your burdens, and your disputes by myself." (See: Rhetorical Question)

carry your loads, your burdens

Moses speaks as if the people's problems and complaints that he needed to take care of were heavy physical objects that he had been carrying. AT: "take care of your problems, your complaints" (See: Metaphor)

your disputes

"your arguments" or "your disagreements"

men of good repute from each tribe

"men from each tribe whom the people of Israel respect"

translationWords

- burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome
- wise, wisdom
- understand, understands, understood, understanding
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:15-16

UDB:

15 So I took the wise and respected men that your ancestors chose from your tribes, and I appointed them to be your leaders. I appointed some to rule over one thousand people, some to have authority over one hundred people, some to have authority over fifty people, and some to have authority over ten people. I also appointed other officers from throughout your tribes. 16 I instructed your leaders, 'Listen to the disputes that occur among your people. Judge each dispute, including disputes between close relatives and quarrels between your people and people from other countries who live among you.

ULB:

15 So I took the heads of your tribes, wise men, and men of good repute, and made them heads over you, captains of thousands, captains of hundreds, captains of fifties, captains of tens, and officers, tribe by tribe. 16 I commanded your judges at that time, saying, 'Hear the disputes between your brothers, and judge righteously between a man and his brother, and the foreigner who is with him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

men of good repute

"men whom your people respected." See how this is translated in Deuteronomy 1:13.

of thousands ... of hundreds ... of fifties ... of tens

"of groups of 1,000 ... of groups of 100 ... of groups of 50 ... and groups of 10" (See: Numbers)

captains ... officers

These are titles for different leaders in Israel's government.

tribe by tribe

"from each of your tribes"

judge righteously between a man and his brother

"make right and fair decisions about the disputes Israelites have with each other"

translationWords

- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- wise, wisdom
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- judge, judges
- brother, brothers
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:17-18

UDB:

17 You must not play favorites. You must treat poor people and important people equally. You must not worry about what anyone will think, because you will decide matters as God wants you to. If any dispute is very difficult and you are unable to decide it, bring it to me, and I will decide.' 18 At that time I also told to you many other things."

ULB:

17 You will not show partiality to anyone in a dispute; you will hear the small and the great alike. You will not be afraid of the face of man, for the judgment is God's. The dispute that is too hard for you, you will bring to me, and I will hear it.' 18 I commanded you at that time all the things that you should do.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the judges, so the commands are plural. (See: Pronouns)

You will not show partiality

"Do not show partiality"

you will hear the small and the great alike

These two extremes "small" and "great" represent all people. AT: "you will treat all people alike" (See: Merism)

You will not be afraid of the face of man

The word "face" is a metonym for the whole person. "You will not" is a command. "Do not be afraid of anyone" (See: Synecdoche)

at that time

This means the time when they were at Horeb, at Mount Sinai. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- partial, be partial, partiality
- fear, fears, afraid
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:19

UDB:

[19] "Then, just like Yahweh our God commanded us, we left Mount Sinai and went through that huge desert that is very dangerous, on the road to the hill country where the Amor people group live. We arrived at Kadesh Barnea.

ULB:

[19] We journeyed away from Horeb and went through all that great and terrible wilderness that you saw, on our way to the hill country of the Amorites, as Yahweh our God had commanded us; and we came to Kadesh Barnea.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

terrible wilderness that you saw

"large and dangerous desert that you crossed through"

translationWords

- Horeb
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Amorite, Amorites
- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:20-21

UDB:

[20] I said to your ancestors, 'We have now come to the hill country where the Amor people group live. This is part of the area that Yahweh our God, the one whom our ancestors worshiped, is giving to us. [21] Note that Yahweh our God is giving this land to us. So go and occupy it as he commanded. Do not be at all afraid.'

ULB:

[20] I said to you, 'You have come to the hill country of the Amorites, which Yahweh our God is giving to us. [21] Look, Yahweh your God has set the land before you; go up, take possession, as Yahweh, the God of your fathers, has spoken to you; do not be afraid, neither be discouraged.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

Look ... your God ... before you; go up, take possession ... your fathers ... to you; do not be afraid, neither be discouraged

Moses is speaking to the Israelites as if he were speaking to one man, so these forms should be singular, not plural. (See: Pronouns)

has set the land before you

"is now giving this land to you." See how this is translated in Deuteronomy 1:8.

translationWords

- Amorite, Amorites
- Yahweh
- God
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:22-24

UDB:

[22] But your ancestors all came to me and said, 'Before we go, we should first send some men there to explore the land, in order that they can return and tell us which will be the best road to go there and what kind of towns are there.'

[23] I thought that it would be good to do that, so I chose twelve men, one man from each tribe. [24] They went up into the hill country as far as Eshcol Valley, and they explored all that area.

ULB:

[22] Every one of you came to me and said, 'Let us send men ahead of us, so that they may search out the land for us, and bring us word about the way by which we should attack, and about the cities to which we will come.' [23] The advice pleased me well; I took twelve men of you, one man for every tribe. [24] They turned and went up into the hill country, came to the Valley of Eshkol, and scouted it.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

twelve men

"12 men" (See: Numbers)

They turned and went

Turning is an idiom for beginning to obey a command. AT: "They left that place and went" (See: Idiom)

Valley of Eshkol

This is a valley in the Hebron region, which is south of Jerusalem. (See: How to Translate Names)

scouted it

"looked for places they could attack"

translationWords

- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- word, words
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:25

UDB:

25 They picked some of the fruit that they found there and brought it to us. They reported that the land that Yahweh our God was giving to us is very good."

ULB:

25 They took some of the produce of the land in their hands and brought it down to us. They also brought us word and said, 'It is a good land that Yahweh our God is giving to us.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

They took

"The 12 men took"

took some of the produce of the land in their hands

"picked some of the produce of the land"

brought us word and said

The speaker speaks as if a "word" were a physical object that someone could bring. AT: "told us" (See: Metaphor)

said, 'It is a good land that Yahweh our God is giving to us.'

The direct quotation can be translated as an indirect quotation. AT: "said that the land that Yahweh our God was giving to us was good"

translationWords

- word, words
- Yahweh
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:26-28

UDB:

[26] "But your ancestors refused to go and conquer that land. They rebelled against what Yahweh our God had commanded them to do, and they would not go into that land. [27] Your ancestors stayed in their tents and complained. They said, 'Yahweh hates us. So he has brought us here from Egypt just to allow the Amor people group to destroy us. [28] We do not want to go there. The men whom we sent there have made us very discouraged. They have told us that the people there are much stronger and taller than we are, and that there are very high walls around their towns. Also they reported that they had seen giants there that are descendants of Anak.'

ULB:

[26] Yet you refused to attack, but rebelled against the commandment of Yahweh your God. [27] You complained in your tents and said, "It is because Yahweh hated us that he has brought us out of the land of Egypt, to give us into the hand of the Amorites to destroy us. [28] Where can we go now? Our brothers have made our heart to melt, saying, 'Those people are bigger and taller than we are; their cities are large and are fortified up to the heavens; moreover, we have seen the sons of the Anakim there.'"

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

Yet you refused to attack

God commanded the Israelites to attack and destroy the Amorites, but the Israelites were afraid and refused to fight them. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

into the hand of the Amorites

Here "into the hand" means to give the Amorites power over them. AT: "into the power of the Amorites" (See: Metonymy)

Where can we go now?

Here this question emphasizes how afraid they were. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "We have nowhere to go." (See: Rhetorical Question)

made our heart to melt

This means that they became afraid. AT: "made us very afraid" (See: Idiom)

are fortified up to the heavens

This is an exaggeration that emphasizes how frightened the people were because the cities were so large and strong. AT: "have walls so high it is like they reach up to the heavens" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

sons of the Anakim

These are descendants of the Anak people who were very large and fierce. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Yahweh
- God
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- power, powers
- Amorite, Amorites
- heart, hearts
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:29-31

UDB:

[29] Then I said to your ancestors, 'Do not be afraid at all of those people! [30] Yahweh our God will go ahead of you, and he will fight for you, just like you saw him do for you in Egypt [31] and in the desert. You saw how he brought you safely here, like a man would carry his son. '

ULB:

[29] Then I said to you, 'Do not be terrified, neither be afraid of them. [30] Yahweh your God, who goes before you, he will fight for you, like everything that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes, [31] and also in the wilderness, where you have seen how Yahweh your God carried you, as a man carries his son, everywhere you went until you came to this place.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

I said to you

"I said to your ancestors"

before your eyes

Here the people are represented by their "eyes" to emphasize what they saw. AT: "which you yourselves saw" (See: Synecdoche)

you have seen ... Yahweh your God carried you ... you went ... you came

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Yahweh your God carried you, as a man carries his son

Here Yahweh's care for his people is compared to that of a father. AT: "Yahweh your God has taken care of you, like a father takes care of his son" (See: Simile)

until you came to this place

"until you came to this land that God promised to give you"

translationWords

- terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying
- fear, fears, afraid
- Yahweh
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:32

UDB:

[32-33] I reminded them that he always went ahead of them while they traveled in the desert. He directed them by a pillar of fire during the night and a pillar of cloud during the day. He showed them places to set up their tents. But in spite of what I said, your ancestors would not trust Yahweh our God.

ULB:

[32] Yet in spite of this word you did not believe Yahweh your God, [33] who went before you on the way to find a place for you to make camp, in fire by night and in a cloud by day.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

Yahweh your God ... who went before you

Moses reminds them of all the ways Yahweh had gone ahead of Israel during all their travels in the past.

make camp

“put up your tents”

translationWords

- believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief
- Yahweh
- God
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:34-35

UDB:

[34] Yahweh heard what they said, and he became angry. He solemnly declared, [35-36] 'Caleb son of Jephunneh, will enter the land. He has obeyed me completely. So I will give to him and to his descendants some of the land that he explored. He is the only one of all you people who will enter that land. None of these evil people will ever see that good land which I solemnly promised to give to your ancestors.'

ULB:

[34] Yahweh heard the sound of your words and was angry; he swore and said, [35] 'Surely not one of these men of this evil generation will see the good land that I swore to give to your ancestors, [36] save Caleb son of Jephunneh; he will see it. To him I will give the land that he has stepped on, and to his children, because he has wholly followed Yahweh.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel what Yahweh said to them.

heard the sound of your words

"heard what you were saying"

he swore and said

God made a vow not to allow those who rebelled against him to enter the land he promised to give them.

will see

"will enter"

save Caleb

"except Caleb"

Jephunneh

This is the name of Caleb's father. (See: How to Translate Names)

he has wholly followed Yahweh

Yahweh speaks as if he were someone else. AT: “he has completely obeyed me” (See: Pronouns)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- word, words
- anger, angered, angry
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- generation
- Caleb
- children, child

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:37-38

UDB:

[37] But because of what your ancestors did, Yahweh was also angry with me. He said to me, 'You also will not go enter that land. [38] Joshua son of Nun, who is your helper, will enter it. Encourage him, because he is the one who will enable you Israelite people to occupy that land.'

ULB:

[37] Also Yahweh was angry with me because of you, saying, 'You also will not go in there; [38] Joshua son of Nun, who stands before you, he will go in there; encourage him, for he will lead Israel to inherit it.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

Yahweh was angry with me because of you

This refers to when Moses disobeyed what Yahweh told him to do because Moses was angry with the people of Israel. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Nun

This is the name of Joshua's father. (See: How to Translate Names)

who stands before you

Why Joshua stands before Moses can be stated clearly. AT: "who stands before you as your servant" or "who helps you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry
- Joshua
-
- Israel, Israelites
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:39-40

UDB:

[39] Then Yahweh said to all of us, 'You said that your children would be captured by your enemies. Because they are very young, they do not yet know what is good and what is evil. But they are the ones to whom I will give that land, and they will enter it and occupy it. [40] But as for you, turn around and go back into the desert, toward the Sea of Reeds.'

ULB:

[39] Moreover, your little children, the ones you said would be victims, who today have no knowledge of good or evil—they will go in there. To them I will give it, and they will possess it. [40] But as for you, turn and take your journey into the wilderness along the way to the Sea of Reeds.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

no knowledge of good or evil

They do not yet know what is good and what is evil.

turn and take your journey

"turn around and go back on the road you have come on"

translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:41-42

UDB:

41 Then your ancestors replied, ‘We have sinned; we have disobeyed Yahweh. So we will go and attack the people who live in that land, just as Yahweh our God has commanded us to do.’ And each of their men put on his weapons, and they thought that it would be easy to invade the hill country.

42 But Yahweh said to me, ‘Tell them, “Do not go there and attack those people, because I will not go with you, and if you go, you can be sure that your enemy will defeat you.” ’

ULB:

41 Then you answered and said to me, ‘We have sinned against Yahweh; we will go up and fight, and we will follow all that Yahweh our God has commanded us to do.’ Every man among you put on his weapons of war, and you were ready to attack the hill country. 42 Yahweh said to me, ‘Say to them, ”Do not attack and do not fight, for I will not be with you, and you will be defeated by your enemies.’

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

sinned against Yahweh

“we have rebelled against Yahweh by disobeying him”

we will follow

“we will obey”

to attack the hill country

Here the metonym “hill country” represents the people that live there. AT: “to attack the people who live in the hill country” (See: Metonymy)

for I will not be with you, and you will be defeated by your enemies

This can be stated in active form. AT: “your enemies will defeat you because I will not be with you” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:43-44

UDB:

43 So I said that to your ancestors, but they did not want to listen to what I said. They again rebelled against what Yahweh commanded them to do. Their soldiers proudly marched up into that hill country. 44 Then the men of the Amor people group who lived in that region came out of their towns and attacked those soldiers. They chased your ancestors' soldiers like a swarm of bees would chase a person, and they pursued their men south from Edom and defeated them at the city of Hormah.

ULB:

43 I spoke to you in this way, but you did not listen. You rebelled against the commandment of Yahweh; you were arrogant and attacked the hill country. 44 But the Amorites, who lived in that hill country, came out against you and chased you like bees, and struck you down in Seir, as far as Hormah.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

attacked the hill country

The metonym "hill country" stands for the people who live there. AT: "attacked the people who live in the hill country" (See: Metonymy)

chased you like bees

A "bee" is a small, flying insect that flies in large groups and stings people who threaten them. This means that so many Amorites attacked the Israelite soldiers that they had to leave the battle. (See: Simile and Translate Unknowns)

Seir

This is the name of a piece of land. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hormah

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

struck you down

"killed many of your soldiers"

translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Yahweh
- arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance
- Amorite, Amorites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1:45-46

UDB:

45 So your ancestors went back to Kadesh Barnea and cried out to request Yahweh to help them, but he did not listen to them. He did not pay any attention to them. 46 So we stayed there at Kadesh Barnea for a long time."

ULB:

45 You returned and wept before Yahweh; but Yahweh did not listen to your voice, nor did he pay attention to you. 46 So you stayed in Kadesh many days, all the days that you stayed there.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

returned

"returned to Kadesh"

translationWords

- Yahweh
- voice, voices
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 02 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Covenant faithfulness

Yahweh is faithful to the covenant he made with Abraham. He is also faithful to the promises he made with Esau and Lot. Because of this, Israel was given specific land it was able to conquer in Canaan. (See: covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, covenant, covenants, new covenant and promise, promises, promised)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 02:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 2:1-3

UDB:

[1] "Then we turned around and went through the desert toward the Sea of Reeds as Yahweh told us to do, and we wandered in Edom for many years.

[2] Then Yahweh said to me, [3] 'You have been wandering around this hill country for a long enough time. Now turn and travel toward the north.

ULB:

[1] Then we turned and took our journey into the wilderness by the way to the Sea of Reeds, as Yahweh had spoken to me; we went around Mount Seir for many days. [2] Yahweh spoke to me, saying, [3] 'You have gone around this mountain long enough; turn northward.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what the previous generation of Israelites did.

Then we turned and took our journey

"Then we turned around and went"

we went around Mount Seir for many days

Possible meanings are 1) the Israelites traveled around the mountain called Seir for a very long time or 2) the Israelites wandered in a region called Mount Seir for a very long time.

Mount Seir

This is a mountainous area south of the Dead Sea. The area is also called "Edom." See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:2 (See: How to Translate Names)

many days

Some languages translate this as "many nights."

translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:4-5

UDB:

[4] And tell the people that they are about to travel near the land that belongs to the descendants of Esau, who are also descendants of Isaac. They live in the hill country of Edom. They will be afraid of you, [5] but do not start to fight against them, because I am not going to give you even a tiny bit of their land. I have given that land to the descendants of Esau.

ULB:

[4] Command the people, saying, "You are to pass through the border of your brothers, the descendants of Esau, who live in Seir; they will be afraid of you. Therefore be careful [5] not to fight with them, for I will not give you any of their land, no, not even enough for the sole of a foot to step on; for I have given Mount Seir to Esau as a possession.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

of your brothers, the descendants of Esau

"of your relatives, the descendants of Esau"

I have given Mount Seir to Esau as a possession

Yahweh is reminding the Israelites that he has given this territory to the descendants of Esau.

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- brother, brothers
- Esau
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- fear, fears, afraid
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:6-7

UDB:

[6] When you travel near their land, buy food and water from them.'

[7] Do not forget that Yahweh our God has blessed you in everything that you have done. He knows what has happened to you while you have wandered in this huge desert. But he has been with you during those forty years, and as a result you have had everything that you needed.

ULB:

[6] You will purchase food from them for money, so that you may eat; you will also buy water from them for money, so that you may drink. [7] For Yahweh your God has blessed you in all the work of your hand; he has known your walking through this great wilderness. For these forty years Yahweh your God has been with you, and you have lacked nothing."'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to instruct Israel in how they are to treat the descendants of Esau.

You will purchase food from them

Yahweh is giving them permission or instruction, not a command, and he is telling them not to steal. "I permit you to purchase food from them" or "If you need food, you are to purchase it from them"

from them

"from Esau's descendants"

for money

If these words are not needed or make the translation unclear, you may omit them.

your God has blessed you ... your hand ... your walking ... your God ... with you, and you have lacked

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you in all the work of your hand

The “work of your hand” refers to all the work they had done. AT: “all of your work” (See: Synecdoche)

he has known your walking

Here what happened to the people while they were walking is spoken of as their “walking.” (See: Metonymy)

forty years

“40 years” (See: Numbers)

you have lacked nothing

This is a litotes for “you have had everything you needed.” (See: Litotes)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:8

UDB:

[8] So we continued to travel. We avoided going through the hill country where the descendants of Esau live. We turned from the road that goes along the plain of the Jordan valley, and comes up from Ezion Geber and Elath, and we traveled along the desert road of Moab.

ULB:

[8] So we passed by our brothers, the descendants of Esau who live in Seir, away from the Arabah road, from Elath and from Ezion Geber. Then we turned and passed by the way of the wilderness of Moab.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

by our brothers

“by our relatives”

Elath ... Ezion Geber

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

we turned

This is an idiom. AT: “we kept going” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Esau
- Arabah
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:9

UDB:

[9] Yahweh said to me, 'Do not bother the people of Moab, and do not start to fight against them, because I am not going to give you any of their land. Do not forget that they are descendants of Abraham's nephew Lot, and I have given to them the city of Ar.'"

ULB:

[9] Yahweh said to me, 'Do not trouble Moab, and do not fight with them in battle. For I will not give you his land for your own possession, because I have given Ar to the descendants of Lot, for their possession.'

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the end of a part of Moses' speech reminding the Israelites of how Yahweh guided them in the wilderness. (See: Background Information)

Do not trouble Moab

The word "Moab" represents the people of Moab. AT: "Do not trouble the people of Moab" (See: Metonymy)

Ar

This is the name of a city in Moab. (See: How to Translate Names)

the descendants of Lot

The people of Israel were related to the descendants of Moab. Moab was the son of Lot. Lot was the nephew of Abraham. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Lot

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:10-11

UDB:

[10] A large group of giants called Emim formerly lived there. They were as tall as the giants who were descendants of Anak. [11] They and the descendants of Anak are also called the Repha giants, but the people of Moab call them Emim.

ULB:

[10] (The Emites lived there previously, a people as great, as many, and as tall as the Anakim; [11] these also are considered to be the Rephaim, like the Anakim; but the Moabites call them the Emim.

translationNotes

General Information:

The writer begins to give background information about the people of the land. These words are not part of Moses' speech to the Israelites. (See: Background Information)

The Emites lived ... call them the Emim

These words give background information about the Emite people, who had lived in the land before the Moabites. Your language may have a special way to mark background information. (See: Background Information)

Emites ... Rephaim

These are names of people groups that were considered giants. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anakim

These are descendants of the Anak people who were very large and fierce. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:28.

translationWords

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:12

UDB:

[12] The Hor people group also formerly lived in the Edom area, but the descendants of Esau chased them out. They defeated and killed them and settled in their land, just as the Israelite people later expelled their enemies from the land that Yahweh gave to them.)

ULB:

[12] The Horites also lived in Seir previously, but the descendants of Esau succeeded them. They destroyed them from before them and lived in their place, like Israel did to the land of his possession that Yahweh gave to them.)

translationNotes

General Information:

This continues the background information about the different people groups that had lived in the land. (See: Deuteronomy 2:10-11 and Background Information).

Horites

This is the name of a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

destroyed them from before them

“killed all of them so none of them were left living with them” or “removed them from their presence by killing all of them”

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Esau
- Israel, Israelites
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:13-15

UDB:

[13] Moses also said to the Israelite people, "Then we crossed the Zered Gorge, as Yahweh told us to do. [14] It had been thirty-eight years from the time we first left Kadesh Barnea until we crossed the Zered Gorge. During those years, all the Israelite fighting men of that generation died, as Yahweh had solemnly said would happen. [15] They died because Yahweh opposed them until he had gotten rid of all of them.

ULB:

[13] "'Now rise up and go over the brook Zered.' So we went over the brook Zered. [14] Now the days from when we came from Kadesh Barnea until we crossed the brook Zered, were thirty-eight years. It was by that time that all that generation of the men fit for fighting were gone from the people, as Yahweh had sworn to them. [15] Moreover, the hand of Yahweh was against that generation in order to destroy them from the people until they were gone.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the Israelites of what had happened to them in the wilderness.

'Now rise up ... Zered.' So

"'Then Yahweh said, "Now rise up ... Zered.' So." This can be translated as an indirect quote. AT: "Then Yahweh told us to rise up ... Zered. So" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

rise up

begin to do something (See: Idiom)

the brook Zered

This stream flows into the Dead Sea from the southeast and creates the border between Edom and Moab. (See: How to Translate Names)

Now the days

The word "now" marks a change from the story to background information about how long the people of Israel traveled and about God's anger towards that generation. If your language has a way of showing that what follows is background information, you should use it here. (See: Background Information)

thirty-eight years

“38 years” (See: Numbers)

were gone from the people

This is a polite way of saying “had died.” (See: Euphemism)

the hand of Yahweh was against

Here “the hand of Yahweh” refers to Yahweh’s power. AT: “Yahweh used his power against” or “Yahweh punished” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- generation
- Yahweh
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:16-19

UDB:

16 After all the men who had been old enough to fight in wars had died, 17 Yahweh said to me, 18 'Today you all must travel through the region of Moab, near Ar, their city. 19 When you come near the border of the land where the Ammon people group live, do not bother them or start to fight against them. They are also descendants of Lot, so I am not going to give you any of the land that I have given to them.'"

ULB:

16 So it happened, when all the men fit for fighting were dead and gone from among the people, 17 that Yahweh spoke to me, saying, 18 'You are today to pass over Ar, the border of Moab. 19 When you come near opposite the people of Ammon, do not trouble them or fight them; for I will not give you any of the land of the people of Ammon as a possession; because I have given it to the descendants of Lot as a possession.'"

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel of what happened in the past.

You are ... you come ... do not trouble ... give you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and the command "do not trouble" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

pass over Ar

This is the name of a city in Moab. See how you translated "Ar" in Deuteronomy 2:9. (See: How to Translate Names)

to the descendants of Lot

The people of Israel were related to the descendants of Ammon. Ammon was the son of Lot. Lot was the nephew of Abraham. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- Yahweh

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Lot

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:20-22

UDB:

[20] (That region is also called the land of the Repha giants, who formerly lived there. The Ammon people group call them the Zamzum group. [21] They were a large and powerful group, who were as tall as the descendants of Anak. But Yahweh destroyed them, and the Ammon people group drove them away and took their land from them and started to live there. [22] Yahweh had done the same thing for the descendants of Esau who live in the hill country of Edom. He got rid of the Hor people group, with the result that the Edom people group took their land from them and started to live there. They still live there.

ULB:

[20] (That also is considered to be a land of the Rephaim. The Rephaim lived there previously—but the Ammonites call them Zamzummim— [21] a people as great, as many, and as tall as the Anakim. But Yahweh destroyed them before the Ammonites, and they succeeded them and lived in their place. [22] This Yahweh also did for the people of Esau, who live in Seir, when he destroyed the Horites from before them, and the descendants of Esau succeeded them and have lived in their place even until today.

translationNotes

General Information:

These verses begin to give background information about the people groups who lived in the land. If your language has a way of showing that what follows is background information, you should use it here. (See: Background Information)

That also is considered

This can be stated in active form. AT: “People also consider that” (See: Active or Passive)

Rephaim

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zamzummim

This is another name for the Rephaim people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anakim

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:28. (See: How to Translate Names)

destroyed them before the Ammonites

“allowed the Ammonites to defeat them” or “allowed the Ammonites to kill them all”

they succeeded them and lived in their place

“the Ammonites took over everything the Rephaim had owned and have lived where the Rephaim had lived”

Horites

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:12. (See: How to Translate Names)

succeeded them and have lived in their place

“took over everything the Horites had owned and have lived where the Horites had lived”

translationWords

- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- Yahweh
- Esau
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:23

UDB:

[23] People who came from the island of Crete got rid of the Av group who previously lived in the land close to the Mediterranean Sea, as far south as Gaza. They took their land from them and started to live there.)

ULB:

[23] As for the Avvites who lived in villages as far as Gaza, the Caphtorim, who came from Caphtor, destroyed them and settled in their place.)

translationNotes

General Information:

The writer finishes describing how God enabled Esau to conquer the land Esau is now inhabiting.

Avvites ... Caphtorim

These are names of people groups. (See: How to Translate Names)

Caphtor

This is the name of a place. It may be another name for the island of Crete located in the Mediterranean Sea. (See: How to Translate Names)

destroyed them

“destroyed the Avvim”

settled in their place

“lived where the Avvim had lived”

translationWords

- Gaza

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:24-25

UDB:

[24] "After we had gone through the region of Moab, Yahweh said to us, 'Now cross the Arnon River. I will help you to defeat the army of Sihon, the king of the Amor people group, who lives in the city of Heshbon. So attack their army and start to take their land from them. [25] Today I will begin to cause everyone, everywhere, to be afraid of you. Everyone who hears about you will tremble and be terrified.'

ULB:

[24] "'Now rise up, go on your journey, and pass over the Valley of the Arnon; look, I have given into your hand Sihon the Amorite, king of Heshbon, and his land. Begin to possess it, and fight with him in battle. [25] Today I will begin to put the fear and terror of you on the peoples that are under the whole sky; they will hear news about you and will tremble and be in anguish because of you.'

translationNotes

General Information:

The writer has finished giving background information and is now again telling what Moses said to the Israelites.

Now rise up

Yahweh is telling Moses what the people should do. "Now get up" or "Now go."

go on your journey

"continue your journey"

Valley of the Arnon

This is the name of the valley of the Arnon River. It creates the border between Moab and the Amorites. (See: How to Translate Names)

I have given into your hand

The metonym "into your hand" means "into your control or power." AT: "I have given you the power to defeat" (See: Metonymy)

your hand ... Begin to possess it ... fight ... terror of you ... news about you ... because of you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" and the commands "begin to possess" and "fight" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Sihon

This is the name of a king. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heshbon

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

fight with him

"fight against him and his army"

put the fear and terror

The words "fear" and "terror" mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the fear is intense. AT: "put a terrible fear" (See: Doublet)

peoples that are under the whole sky

This is an idiom. AT: "peoples in every land" (See: Idiom)

tremble and be in anguish

This is hendiadys and emphasizes that the people will "tremble in anguish." (See: Hendiadys)

translationWords

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- Amorite, Amorites
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- fear, fears, afraid
- terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:26-27

UDB:

[26] Then I sent messengers to go from the desert, where we were, to King Sihon at Heshbon. I told them to give this peaceful message to the king: [27] 'Please allow us to travel through your land. We promise that we will stay on the road; we will not turn off to the right or to the left.

ULB:

[26] I sent messengers from the wilderness of Kedemoth to Sihon, king of Heshbon, with words of peace, saying, [27] 'Let me pass through your land; I will go along the highway; I will turn neither to the right hand nor to the left.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

I sent

Here "I" refers to Moses.

wilderness of Kedemoth

This is the name of a place near the valley of Arnon. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sihon ... Heshbon

These are the names of a man and a place. See how you translated them in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

with words of peace

"with my offer of peace" or "with a message from me asking for peace"

I will turn neither to the right hand nor to the left

This phrase emphasizes that they will always go in the same direction. It can be stated in positive form. "I will not change direction" or "I will always stay on the path" (See: Litotes)

translationWords

- messenger, messengers
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- word, words
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:28-29

UDB:

[28] We will pay for any food or water that you allow us to buy. We want only to walk through your country [29] until we cross the Jordan River into the land that Yahweh our God is giving to us. Do for us just as the descendants of Esau who live in the Edom area and the Moab people group did for us when they allowed us to go through their areas.'

ULB:

[28] You will sell me food for money, so that I may eat; give me water for money, so that I may drink; only let me pass through on my feet; [29] as the descendants of Esau who live in Seir, and as the Moabites who live in Ar, did for me; until I pass over the Jordan into the land that Yahweh our God is giving us.'

translationNotes

General Information:

This continues Moses' message to King Sihon.

You will sell me food for money, so that I may eat; give me water for money, so that I may drink

Moses tells Sihon that the Israelites will not steal from the Amorites and requests that Sihon and his people sell food and water to the Israelites; he is not giving a command. AT: "I expect to have to pay for food so I can eat and to pay for water so I can drink"

sell me ... I may eat ... give me ... I may drink

Moses is referring to the people of Israel as if they were Moses himself. AT: "sell to me and my people ... we may eat ... give us ... we may drink" (See: Synecdoche)

only let me pass through on my feet

"only let us walk through your land"

Ar

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:9. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Esau
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Yahweh
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:30-31

UDB:

30 But King Sihon would not allow us to go through his country. That was because Yahweh our God caused him to be stubborn. The result was that Yahweh enabled us to defeat his army and take his land, which we still live in.

31 Yahweh said to me, 'Listen! I am about to allow you to defeat Sihon's army and to take the people's land from them. So start to occupy it!'

ULB:

30 But Sihon, king of Heshbon, would not let us pass by him; for Yahweh your God had hardened his mind and made his heart obstinate, that he might defeat him by your might, which he has now done today. 31 Yahweh said to me, 'Look, I have begun to deliver up Sihon and his land before you; begin to possess it, in order that you may inherit his land.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of what happened in the past.

Sihon ... Heshbon

These are the names of a man and a place. See how you translated them in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

your God ... your might

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

hardened his mind and made his heart obstinate

Both of these phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh "caused him to become very stubborn." (See: Parallelism)

to deliver up Sihon and his land before you

"to give Sihon and his land over to you"

begin to possess it, in order that you may inherit his land

“take possession of his land, so that you may inherit it”

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Yahweh
- God
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- heart, hearts
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- deliver, delivers, delivered, delivering, deliverer, deliverance
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:32-33

UDB:

[32] Then Sihon came out of the city with all his army to fight against us at the town of Jahaz. [33] But God enabled us to defeat them, and we killed Sihon, his sons, and all his soldiers.

ULB:

[32] Then Sihon came out against us, he and all his people, to fight at Jahaz. [33] Yahweh our God gave him over to us and we defeated him; we struck him dead, his sons, and all his people.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

Sihon

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jahaz

This is the name of a city in Moab (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Yahweh
- God
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- son, sons

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:34-35

UDB:

[34] We captured their cities and destroyed them all. We killed all the men and women and children; we did not allow any of them to remain alive. [35] We took the valuable things that were in the cities that we captured, and also their cattle.

ULB:

[34] We took all his cities at that time and completely destroyed every city—men and the women and the little ones; we left no survivor. [35] Only the cattle we took as spoils for ourselves, along with the spoil of the cities that we had taken.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people about what happened in the past.

We took all his cities

“We captured all of King Sihon’s cities”

completely destroyed every city

“killed all the people who lived in every city”

translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 2:36-37

UDB:

[36] Yahweh our God enabled us to capture all their towns from Aroer in the south, which is at the edge of the Arnon River Valley, to the region of Gilead in the north. Some of their cities had walls around them, but we were still able to capture them. [37] But we did not go near the area where the Ammon people group live, or the banks of the Jabbok River, or the towns of the hill country, or any other place where Yahweh our God told us not to go."

ULB:

[36] From Aroer, which is on the edge of the Valley of the Arnon, and from the city that is in the valley, all the way to Gilead, there was not a city too high for us. Yahweh our God gave them into our hands. [37] It was only to the land of the descendants of Ammon that you did not go, as well as all the side of the Jabbok River, and the cities of the hill country—wherever Yahweh our God had forbidden us to go.

translationNotes

Aroer

This is the name of a city on the north bank of the Arnon River. (See: How to Translate Names)

Valley of the Arnon

"Arnon" is the name of a river. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:24. (See: How to Translate Names)

there was not a city too high for us

This negative statement is used to emphasize their success in battle. This can be stated in a positive form. AT: "we were able to defeat the people of every city even if the city had high walls around it" (See: Litotes)

you did not go

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so "you" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

Jabbok River

This is the name of a river that created the border between Sihon's land and the land of the Ammonites. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Yahweh
- God
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 2 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 03 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Victories

The victories recorded in this chapter occurred on the east side of the Jordan River. This was not part of the Promised Land, which was on the west side of the Jordan River. (See: Promised Land)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 03:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 3:1-2

UDB:

[1] "Then we turned north and went toward the region of Bashan. Og, the king of that area, and all his soldiers marched south to fight against us at the city of Edrei. [2] Yahweh said to me, 'Do not be afraid of him, because I will enable your army to defeat him and all his army and to capture all their land. Do to him what you did to Sihon, the king of the Amor people group, who ruled in Heshbon.'

ULB:

[1] Then we turned and went up the way to Bashan. Og, the king of Bashan, came and attacked us, he and all his people, to fight at Edrei. [2] Yahweh said to me, 'Do not fear him; for I have given you victory over him and have put all his people and his land under your control. You will do to him as you did to Sihon, king of the Amorites, who lived at Heshbon.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel of what happened in the past.

Og ... Sihon

These are names of kings. See how you translated these in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Edrei ... Heshbon

These are names of cities. See how you translated these in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Yahweh said to me, 'Do not fear him; ... given you ... under your control ... You will do ... as you did ... at Heshbon.'

Yahweh is speaking to Moses as if Moses were the Israelites, so the command "do not fear" and all instances of "you" and "your" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

fear him ... over him ... his people and his land

Here the words "him" and "his" refer to Og.

I have given you victory

Yahweh speaks of what he will do as if he had already done it. (See: Predictive Past)

You will do to him as you did to Sihon

The word "him" is a metonym for "his people." AT: "You will destroy Og and his people as you did Sihon" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Bashan
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Yahweh
- fear, fears, afraid
- Amorite, Amorites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:3-4

UDB:

[3] So Yahweh enabled us to defeat King Og and all his army. We killed them all; we did not allow any of them to remain alive. [4] There were sixty cities in that region of Argob, in King Og's kingdom of Bashan. But we captured all of them.

ULB:

[3] So Yahweh our God also gave us victory over Og the king of Bashan, and all his people were put under our control. We struck them down until not one of his people remained. [4] We took all his cities at that time. There was not one of the sixty cities that we did not take from them—all the region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan.

translationNotes

all his people were put under our control

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh put all of Og's people under our control" (See: Active or Passive)

not one of his people remained

This is a litotes that is used to emphasize that the Israelites did not let anyone live. AT: "all of his people were dead" (See: Litotes)

There was not one of the sixty cities that we did not take

This is a double negative that emphasizes that they took all of the 60 cities. AT: "We took every one of the sixty cities" (See: Double Negatives)

sixty cities

"60 cities" (See: Numbers)

the region of Argob

This is the name of a region within Bashan. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Bashan
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- kingdom, kingdoms

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:5-7

UDB:

5 All those cities had high walls around them with gates and bars. We also captured many villages
that did not have walls around them. 6 We completely destroyed everything, just as we had done
in the area that King Sihon ruled. We killed all the men, women, and children. 7 But from those
cities we took for ourselves all the livestock and other valuable things.

ULB:

5 These were all cities fortified with high walls, gates, and bars; this was besides very many un-
walled villages. 6 We completely destroyed them, as we did to Sihon king of Heshbon, completely
destroying every city—men and the women and the little ones. 7 But all the cattle and the spoil of
the cities, we took as spoils for ourselves.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel of what happened in the past.

These were all cities fortified with

“These were all cities protected by”

besides

“in addition to” or “not including”

Sihon

This is the name of a king. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heshbon

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

completely destroying every city

“killing all the people who lived in every city”

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:8-10

UDB:

[8] So at that time we took from those two kings of the Amor people group all the land east of the Jordan River, from the Arnon River gorge in the south to Mount Hermon in the north." [9] (That mountain is called Sirion by the people of the city of Sidon and is called Senir by the Amor people group.) [10] "We captured all the towns on the plateau, and all the region of Gilead, and all of Bashan as far east as the cities of Edrei and Salekah, which also belonged to Og's kingdom."

ULB:

[8] At that time we took the land out of the hand of the two kings of the Amorites, who were beyond the Jordan, from the Valley of the Arnon to Mount Hermon [9] (Mount Hermon the Sidonians call Sirion, and the Amorites call it Senir) [10] and all the cities of the plain, all Gilead, and all Bashan, all the way to Salekah and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

out of the hand of the two kings

Here the metonym "out of the hand of" means "from the control of." AT: "from the control of the two kings" or "from the two kings" (See: Metonymy)

Amorites ... Bashan ... Edrei ... Og

"Amorite people ... land of Bashan ... town of Edrei ... King Og" See how you translated these in Deuteronomy 1:4.

beyond the Jordan

This refers to the land across the Jordan River, to the east of Israel. Moses was east of the Jordan when he said this. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:1. AT: "east of the Jordan River"

the Valley of the Arnon

See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 2:24.

Mount Hermon ... Sirion ... Senir

These are all names of the same mountain which is at the northern border of Bashan. (See: How to Translate Names)

of the plain

This is high, flat land between the Arnon River and Mount Gilead.

Salekah

This is the name of a city near Edrei. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Amorite, Amorites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Sidon, Sidonians
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- kingdom, kingdoms
- Bashan

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:11

UDB:

11 (Og was the last king who was a descendant of the Repha giants. His bed was made of iron. It was four meters long and two meters wide. It was in the city of Rabbah in the region of Ammon.)

ULB:

11 (For of the remnant of the Rephaim, only Og king of Bashan had remained. Look! His bed was a bed of iron. Was it not in Rabbah, where the descendants of Ammon live? It was nine cubits long and four cubits wide, the way people measure.)

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

For of the remnant ... the way people measure

This is background information about King Og. (See: Background Information)

Rephaim

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:11.

Look!

“Pay attention to the important thing I am going to tell you.”

Was it not in Rabbah, ... live?

The writer uses a question to remind the people of Israel that they could go to Rabbah and see how large Og must have been. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Possible meanings are 1) “It was in Rabbah, ... live.” or 2) “It is in Rabbah ... live.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: Biblical Distance)

the way people measure

“according to the cubit most people use”

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Bashan
- Rabbah
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:12-13

UDB:

[12] "From the land that we captured at that time, I allotted to the tribes of Reuben and Gad the land north of the city of Aroer near the Arnon River, and some of the hill country of Gilead, along with the nearby cities. [13] The other part of Gilead and all of Bashan, which was the region of Argob that King Og had ruled, I allotted to half of the tribe of Manasseh." (The entire region of Bashan is called the land of the Repha giants.)

ULB:

[12] "This land that we took in possession at that time—from Aroer, that is by the Valley of the Arnon, and half the hill country of Gilead, and its cities—I gave to the Reubenites and to the Gadites. [13] The rest of Gilead and all Bashan, the kingdom of Og, I gave to the half tribe of Manasseh. (All the region of Argob, and all Bashan. The same territory is called the land of Rephaim.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of what happened in the past.

Aroer

See how you translated the name of this town in Deuteronomy 2:36.

the Valley of the Arnon

See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 2:24.

the region of Argob

See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 3:4.

The same territory is called the land of Rephaim

The writer begins to present background information about the land that the people of Israel captured. If your language has a way of showing that what follows is background information, you should use it here. (See: Background Information)

Rephaim

See how you translated the name of this land in Deuteronomy 2:11.

translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Reuben
- Gad
- Bashan
- kingdom, kingdoms
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Manasseh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:14

UDB:

14 "Jair, a man from the tribe of Manasseh, conquered all of Bashan as far north as the border of the Geshur and Maacath territories. He gave his own name to the villages there, and they are still called the villages of Jair.

ULB:

14 Jair, a descendant of Manasseh, took all the region of Argob to the border of the Geshurites and the Maakathites. He called the region, even Bashan, by his own name, Havvoth Jair, to this day.)

translationNotes

General Information:

This continues the background information about the land the people of Israel captured. (See: Deuteronomy 3:13)

Jair

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Geshurites and the Maakathites

These are people groups who lived west of Bashan. (See: How to Translate Names)

Havvoth Jair

Translators may make a footnote that says: "The name 'Havvoth Jair' means 'tent villages of Jair' or 'realm of Jair.'"

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Manasseh
- Geshur, Geshurites
- Bashan

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:15-16

UDB:

15 The northern part of the Gilead region I allotted to the Machir clan, who are descendants of the tribe of Manasseh. 16 I allotted to the tribes of Reuben and Gad the southern part of Gilead, extending south to the Arnon River. The middle of the river is the southern boundary. The northern boundary is the Jabbok River, which is part of the border of region of Ammon.

ULB:

15 I gave Gilead to Machir. 16 To the Reubenites and to the Gadites I gave territory from Gilead to the Valley of the Arnon—the middle of the valley is the territory's border—and to the Jabbok River, which is the border with the descendants of Ammon.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

I gave

Here "I" refers to Moses.

to Machir

Machir was the son of Manasseh. He had died before Moses gave this land. The name is a metonym for the descendants of the person. AT: "to the descendants of Machir" (See: How to Translate Names)

the Valley of the Arnon

This is the name of the valley of the Arnon River. It creates the border between Moab and the Amorites. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:24. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jabbok River

This is the name of a river that created the border between Sihon's land and the land of the Ammonites. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:37. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Reuben
- Gad
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:17

UDB:

17 The border extends from the plain along the east side of the Jordan valley, from Kinnereth in the north (known as the Sea of Galilee), to the Sea of Arabah (known as the Dead Sea) in the south, and to the slopes of Mount Pisgah on the east.

ULB:

17 Another of its borders is also the plain of the Jordan River valley, from Kinnereth to the Sea of the Arabah (that is, the Salt Sea) to the slopes of Mount Pisgah eastward.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

Another of its borders is also

“The western border of the Reubenite and Gadite territory is”

Kinnereth

“the Sea of Kinnereth.” This is the same place as “the Sea of Galilee” or “the Lake of Gennesaret.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain in the northern part of the Abarim mountain range. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Arabah
- Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:18

UDB:

[18] At that time, I told you three tribes, 'Yahweh our God is giving you this land east of the Jordan River, for you to occupy. So now, your soldiers must take their weapons and go across the Jordan River ahead of the men from the other Israelite tribes to help them to conquer the land that God is going to give to them.

ULB:

[18] I commanded you at that time, saying, 'Yahweh your God has given you this land to possess it; you, all the men of war, will pass over armed before your brothers, the people of Israel.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

I commanded you at that time

Moses reminds the tribe of Reuben, the tribe of Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh that they must help the other Israelites conquer the rest of the land God promised them. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will pass over armed before

"will take your weapons and cross the Jordan River ahead of"

your brothers, the people of Israel

"your fellow Israelites"

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Yahweh
- God
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- brother, brothers
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:19-20

UDB:

19 But your wives and children and your very numerous cattle must stay in the towns that I have allotted to you. 20 Your men must help your fellow Israelites until Yahweh enables them to live there peacefully after they capture all the land that Yahweh our God is giving to them on the west side of the Jordan River, just like he did for you here on the east side of the river. After that, you all may return to this land that I have allotted to you.'

ULB:

19 But your wives, your little ones, and your cattle (I know that you have much cattle), will stay in your cities that I have given you, 20 until Yahweh gives rest to your brothers, as he has to you, until they also possess the land that Yahweh your God is giving them beyond the Jordan; then will you return, every man of you, to your own property that I have given you.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the tribes of Reuben and Gad and half of the tribe of Manasseh.

Yahweh gives rest to your brothers

The writer speaks as if the ability to rest were a physical object that could be given as a gift. The word "rest" is also a metaphor for peaceful life in which there is no war. AT: "Yahweh allows your brothers to rest" or "Yahweh allows your brothers to stop fighting wars and live peacefully" (See: Metaphor)

beyond the Jordan

This refers to the land across the Jordan River, to the east of Israel. Moses was east of the Jordan when he said this. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 1:1. AT: "east of the Jordan River"

then will you return

Moses is emphasizing that the other tribes must possess their land before Yahweh will permit these three tribes to possess their land. "only then are you to return."

translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- Yahweh
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- brother, brothers
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- God
- Jordan River, Jordan

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:21-22

UDB:

[21] And I told Joshua, 'You have seen everything that Yahweh our God did to those two kings, Sihon and Og. He will do the same thing to the people who are now in the land that you will be entering. [22] Do not be afraid of those people, because Yahweh our God is the one who will fight for you all.'"

ULB:

[21] I commanded Joshua at that time, saying, 'Your eyes have seen all that Yahweh your God has done to these two kings; Yahweh will do the same to all the kingdoms where you go over. [22] You will not fear them, for Yahweh your God is the one who will fight for you.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

Your eyes have seen

Here "eyes" refers to Joshua. AT: "You have seen" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Joshua
- Yahweh
- God
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- kingdom, kingdoms
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:23-25

UDB:

[23] "At that time, I earnestly prayed, saying [24] 'Yahweh our Lord, you have merely begun to show me that you are very great and to show me the powerful things that you can do. There is certainly no god in heaven or on earth who can do the powerful things that you have done. [25] So please allow me to cross the Jordan River and to see the good land on the east side, the beautiful hill country and the mountains in Lebanon.'

ULB:

[23] I implored Yahweh at that time, saying, [24] 'O Lord Yahweh, you have begun to show your servant your greatness and your strong hand; for what god is there in heaven or in earth that can do the same works as you have done, and the same mighty acts? [25] Let me go over, I beg you, and see the good land that is beyond the Jordan, that good hill country, and also Lebanon.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people about what happened in the past.

I implored

Here "I" refers to Moses. This means he asked God in a very earnest, emotional way.

to show your servant

Here "your servant" is a polite way of speaking to someone with greater authority. AT: "to show me, your servant,"

your strong hand

Here the metonym "hand" means control or power. AT: "your power" (See: Metonymy)

for what god is there ... acts?

Moses uses a question to emphasize that Yahweh is the only God with the power to do the works he has done. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "for there is no god ... acts." (See: Rhetorical Question)

in heaven or in earth

These two extremes together mean "anywhere." (See: Merism)

beyond the Jordan

"west of the Jordan River." When Moses spoke these words to Yahweh, he was east of the Jordan River in Moab.

translationWords

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- works, deeds, work, acts
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Lebanon

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:26-27

UDB:

[26] But Yahweh was angry with me because of what your ancestors had done, so he would not pay attention to me. Instead, he said, 'That is enough talk from you! Do not talk to me about that again! [27] You will climb up to the top of Mount Pisgah and look toward the west and to the east, toward the north and to the south. You must look at it all carefully, because you will not cross the Jordan River to see the land from there.

ULB:

[26] But Yahweh was angry with me because of you; he did not listen to me. Yahweh said to me, 'Let this be enough for you—speak no more to me about this matter: [27] go up to the top of Pisgah and lift up your eyes westward, northward, southward, and eastward; look with your eyes, for you will not go over the Jordan.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the people of Israel what happened in the past.

Yahweh was angry with me because of you

This refers to when Moses disobeyed what Yahweh told him to do because Moses was angry with the people of Israel. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:37. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Pisgah

See how you translated this is in Deuteronomy 3:17.

lift up your eyes

The words "lift up your eyes" are an idiom that means look. AT: "look" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry
- Jordan River, Jordan

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 3:28-29

UDB:

[28] But tell Joshua what he must do; encourage him to be strong, because he is the one who will lead the people across the river so they can occupy the land that you will see from the top of the mountain.'

[29] So we remained in the Jordan River valley close to the town of Beth Peor."

ULB:

[28] Instead, instruct Joshua and encourage and strengthen him, for he will go over before this people, and he will cause them to inherit the land that you will see.' [29] So we stayed in the valley opposite Beth Peor.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Beth Peor

This is the name of a town in Moab near Mount Pisgah. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Joshua
-
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 3 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 04 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Law of Moses

In order to possess the land, the people needed to obey the law of Moses. This will be the most important thing in the religious life of Israel. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Moses' instructions

Moses is not allowed to enter into the Promised Land. Since they are getting ready to possess the Promised Land, Moses gives them some last instructions before his death. (See: Promised Land)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Moses uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. The purpose of these questions is to convince his readers to obey his instructions. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 04:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 4:1-2

UDB:

[1] "Now, you Israelite people, obey all the rules and regulations that I will teach you. If you do that, you will remain alive and you will enter and occupy the land that Yahweh, the God whom your ancestors worshiped, is giving to you. [2] Do not add anything to what I command you, and do not take anything away from what I tell you. Obey all the commands of Yahweh our God that I am giving to you.

ULB:

[1] Now, Israel, listen to the laws and the decrees that I am about to teach you, to do them; so that you may live and go in and possess the land that Yahweh, the God of your fathers, is giving you. [2] You will not add to the words that I command you, neither will you diminish them, so that you may keep the commandments of Yahweh your God that I am about to command you.

translationNotes

I am about to teach you

Moses is telling the people of Israel what God wants them to do.

to do them

"and obey them"

You will not add to the words ... neither will you diminish them

Yahweh does not want his people to create new laws, or to ignore those he has already given them.

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- decree, decrees, decreed
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Yahweh
- God
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:3-4

UDB:

[3] You have seen what Yahweh did at Baal Peor. He destroyed all the people who worshiped the god Baal there, [4] but all of you who faithfully continued to worship Yahweh our God are still alive today.

ULB:

[3] Your eyes have seen what Yahweh did because of Baal Peor; for all the men who followed the Baal of Peor, Yahweh your God has destroyed them from among you. [4] But you who clung to Yahweh your God are alive today, every one of you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Your eyes have seen

Here “eyes” refers to the people of Israel. AT: “You saw” (See: Synecdoche)

because of Baal Peor

The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “because of the sins you committed at Baal Peor” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Peor

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 3:29.

Yahweh your God has destroyed them from among you

Moses speaks to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so “your” and “you” are singular. (See: Pronouns)

you who clung to Yahweh

The writer speaks as if trusting in Yahweh and obeying him were like physically holding on to a person. AT: “you who were careful to obey Yahweh” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Baal
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:5-6

UDB:

[5] Note that I have taught you all the rules and regulations, just like Yahweh our God told me to do. He wants you to obey them when you are living in the land that you are about to enter and occupy. [6] Obey them faithfully because, if you do that, you will show the people of other nations that you are very wise. When they hear about all these laws, they will say, 'The people of this great nation of Israel are certainly very wise!'

ULB:

[5] Look, I have taught you laws and decrees, as Yahweh my God had commanded me, that you should do so in the midst of the land which you are going into in order to possess it. [6] Therefore keep them and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the peoples who will hear about all these statutes and say, 'Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Look

"Pay attention"

that you should do so in the midst of the land

"that you should obey them when you live in the land"

keep them and do them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that they are to obey them. AT: "obey them carefully" (See: Doublet)

this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the peoples

The abstract nouns "wisdom" and "understanding" can be translated as adjective phrases, and the abstract noun "sight" refers to how the peoples judge or decide on the value of something. AT: "this is what will show the peoples that you are wise and that you understand what is important" (See: Abstract Nouns and Metaphor)

this great nation is a wise and understanding people

The word “nation” is a metonym for the people of that nation. AT: “the people of this great nation are wise and understanding” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- wise, wisdom
- understand, understands, understood, understanding
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- statute, statutes
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:7-8

UDB:

7 Even if other nations are great, there is none of them that has a god who is as near to them as Yahweh our God is to us! 8 And there is no other nation, even if it is a great nation, that has laws that are as just as the laws that I am speaking to you today.

ULB:

7 For what other great nation is there that has a god so near to them, as Yahweh our God is whenever we call upon him? 8 What other great nation is there that has laws and decrees so righteous as all this law that I am setting before you today?

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

For what other great nation is there ... him? What other great nation is there ... today?

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. AT: “For there is no other great nation ... him. There is no other great nation ... today.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- nation, nations
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- Yahweh
- God
- call, calls, calling, called
- decree, decrees, decreed
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:9-10

UDB:

[9] But be very careful! Do not forget what you have seen God do. Remember those things as long as you are alive. Tell them to your children and your grandchildren. [10] Tell them about the day that your ancestors stood in the presence of Yahweh our God at Mount Sinai, when he said to me, 'Gather the people together, in order that they can hear what I say. I want them to learn to respect me and honor me for me as long as they are alive, and I want them to teach their children to do that also.'

ULB:

[9] Only pay attention and carefully guard yourself, so that you do not forget the things that your eyes have seen, so that they do not leave your heart for all the days of your life. Instead, make them known to your children and your children's children. [10] On the day that you stood before Yahweh your God at Horeb, when Yahweh said to me, 'Assemble me the people, and I will make them hear my words, that they may learn to fear me all the days that they live on the earth, and that they may teach their children.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

Only pay attention ... guard yourself ... you do not forget ... your eyes ... your heart ... your life ... make them known to your children and your children's children ... you stood before Yahweh your God

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they are one person, so all instances of "you," "your," and "yourself," as well as the commands "pay attention," "guard," and "make known" are singular. (See: Pronouns and Forms of You)

Only pay attention and carefully guard yourself

"Pay careful attention and be sure to remember these things always"

you do not forget ... they do not leave your heart

These phrases means the same thing and emphasize that the people of Israel must remember what they have seen. (See: Parallelism)

your eyes have seen

Here “eyes” are a synecdoche for the person. AT: “you have seen” (See: Synecdoche)

Assemble me the people

“Bring the people together and bring them to me”

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- children, child
- Yahweh
- God
- Horeb
- word, words
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:11-12

UDB:

[11] Tell your children that your ancestors came near to the foot of the mountain, while the mountain burned with a fire that went up to the sky, and the mountain was covered with dark clouds and black smoke. [12] Then Yahweh spoke to your ancestors out of the middle of the fire. Your ancestors heard him speak, but they did not see him. They only heard his voice.

ULB:

[11] You came near and stood at the foot of the mountain. The mountain burned with fire to the heart of heaven, with darkness, cloud, and thick darkness. [12] Yahweh spoke to you out of the middle of the fire; you heard the voice with its words, but you saw no form; you only heard a voice.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the Israelites of their history.

with fire to the heart of heaven

This is an idiom. "The heart of" means "the middle of" or "the innermost part of," and "heaven" here refers to the sky. AT: "with a fire that went up to the sky" (See: Idiom)

with darkness, cloud, and thick darkness

Here "thick darkness" describes the cloud. AT: "with a thick, dark cloud" (See: Hendiadys)

thick darkness

Another possible meaning is "heavy cloud."

translationWords

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- heart, hearts
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- darkness
- Yahweh
- voice, voices
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:13-14

UDB:

[13] And he declared to them his covenant that he wants you also to obey. He gave them the Ten Commandments. He wrote those on two stone tablets. [14] Yahweh commanded me to teach all the rules and regulations to you, in order that you would obey them in the land that you are about to enter and occupy.

ULB:

[13] He declared to you his covenant that he commanded you to perform, the Ten Commandments. He wrote them on two tablets of stone. [14] Yahweh commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and ordinances, so that you might do them in the land that you are crossing over to take possession of.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

He declared

“Yahweh declared”

to you

Here “you” refers to the Israelites who were at Mount Horeb.

in the land that you are crossing over to take possession of

“after you have crossed over the Jordan River and taken possession of the land”

translationWords

- declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Ten Commandments
- Yahweh
- statute, statutes
- ordinance, ordinances
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:15-18

UDB:

15 On the day that Yahweh spoke to your ancestors at Mount Sinai, they did not see him. So be careful! 16 Do not sin by making for yourselves any carved figure! Do not make anything that resembles the likeness of any person, either a man or a woman, 17 or that resembles any animal or any bird 18 or any reptile or any fish in the deep ocean.

ULB:

15 So take great heed to yourselves—for you saw no kind of form on the day that Yahweh spoke to you at Horeb out of the middle of the fire— 16 that you do not corrupt yourselves and by making a carved image in the form of any figure, in the likeness of male or female, 17 the likeness of any animal on the earth, the likeness of any winged bird that flies in the heavens, 18 the likeness of anything that creeps on the ground, or the likeness of any fish that is in the water under the earth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

So take great heed to yourselves

Possible meanings are 1) “So you need to be very careful how you act” or 2) “Guard your souls carefully.”

do not corrupt yourselves

“do not do what is wrong”

creeps on the ground

“crawls on the ground”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Horeb
- corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

- like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike
- creature, creatures
- beast, beasts
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:19-20

UDB:

[19] And be careful to not look up toward the sky and be tempted to worship anything that you see there—the sun or the moon or the stars. Yahweh our God has given those to help all people everywhere, but you must not worship them. [20] Yahweh has brought your ancestors out of Egypt, where they were suffering as though they were in a blazing furnace, in order that they would be people who belong to him, which is what you are today.

ULB:

[19] You shall not lift your eyes up to the heavens and look at the sun, the moon, or the stars—all the host of the heavens—and be drawn away to worship them and adore them—those things of which Yahweh your God has given a share all the peoples under the whole sky. [20] But Yahweh has taken you and brought you out of the iron furnace, out of Egypt, to be to him a people of his own inheritance, as you are today.

translationNotes

You shall not lift your eyes ... and look ... and be drawn ... Yahweh your God

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" and the words "lift," "look," and "be drawn" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You shall not ... and be drawn away to worship

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Do not ... and do not let anyone make you want to worship" or "Do not ... and do not allow yourself worship" (See: Active or Passive)

all the host of the heavens

"everything you can see in the sky." This is another way of referring to the sun, moon, and stars.

of which Yahweh your God has given a share all the peoples

This is an idiom. Moses speaks of the stars as if they were small objects like food that Yahweh was dividing and giving out to the people groups. AT: "that Yahweh your God has put there to help all people groups" (See: Idiom)

brought you out of the iron furnace

Moses speaks of Egypt and the hard work the Israelites did there as if it were an oven in which iron is heated and the Israelites were the iron. AT: "brought you out of the land where people made you do hard work" (See: Metaphor)

a people of his own inheritance

This is an idiom that can be translated "people who belong only to him." (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- worship
- Yahweh
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:21-22

UDB:

[21] But Yahweh was angry with me because of what your ancestors did. And he promised that I would never enter the land that he is giving to you. [22] He swore that I would die here in this land and never cross the Jordan River. But you will go across it, and you will occupy that land.

ULB:

[21] Yahweh was angry with me because of you; he swore that I should not go over the Jordan, and that I should not go into that good land, the land that Yahweh your God is giving to you as an inheritance. [22] Instead, I must die in this land; I must not go over the Jordan; but you will go over and possess that good land.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Yahweh was angry with me because of you

This refers to when Moses disobeyed what Yahweh told him to do because Moses was angry with the people of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:37. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Yahweh your God is giving to you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so “you” and “your” are singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- Jordan River, Jordan
- God
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:23-24

UDB:

[23] Be sure that you do not forget the covenant that Yahweh our God made with you, and do not make a carved figure in the likeness of anything he has forbidden you. [24] You must not do that because Yahweh your God wants everyone to worship him alone. He will destroy anyone who worships idols.

ULB:

[23] Pay attention to yourselves, so that you do not forget the covenant of Yahweh your God, which he made with you, and make for yourselves a carved image in the form of anything that Yahweh your God has forbidden you to make. [24] For Yahweh your God is a devouring fire, a jealous God.

translationNotes

Pay attention to yourselves

“Pay careful attention”

Yahweh your God has forbidden you ... Yahweh your God

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one person, so the words “you” and “your” are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Yahweh your God is a devouring fire, a jealous God

Moses compares how Yahweh acts when he is angry to the way a fire destroys things. AT: “Yahweh your God will severely punish and destroy you like a fire does because he does not want you to worship other gods” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- jealous, jealousy

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:25-26

UDB:

25 When you have been in the land of Canaan for a long time and you have children and grandchildren, do not sin by making a carved figure that represents anything, because Yahweh says that is evil, and if you do that, you will cause him to become angry with you and punish you. 26 Today I am requesting everyone who is in heaven and everyone who is on the earth to watch what you are doing. If you disobey what I am telling you, you will soon all die in the land that you will be crossing the Jordan River to occupy. You will not live very long there; Yahweh will completely get rid of many of you.

ULB:

25 When you beget children and children's children, and when you will have been in the land for a long time, and if you corrupt yourselves and make a carved figure in the form of anything, and do what is evil in the sight of Yahweh your God, to provoke him to anger— 26 I call heaven and earth to witness against you today that you will soon utterly perish from off the land that you are going over the Jordan to possess; you will not prolong your days in it, but you will be completely destroyed.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

you beget ... Yahweh your God

The words "you" and "your" are singular here.

beget

become the father of, or become the ancestor of

if you corrupt yourselves

"if you do what is wrong." See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:16.

do what is evil in the sight of Yahweh your God, to provoke him to anger

This is an idiom. AT: "you make Yahweh your God angry by doing what he says is evil" (See: Idiom)

I call heaven and earth to witness

Possible meanings are 1) Moses is calling on all those who live in heaven and earth to be witnesses to what he says or 2) Moses is speaking to heaven and earth as if they are people, and he is calling them to be witnesses to what he says. (See: Metonymy and Personification)

you will not prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. AT: "you will not be able to live a long time" (See: Metaphor)

but you will be completely destroyed

As indicated in 4:27, not every Israelite will be killed. Here "completely destroy" is a generalization and emphasizes that many of the Israelites will die. This can be stated in active form. AT: "but Yahweh will destroy many of you" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- anger, angered, angry
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- Jordan River, Jordan
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:27-28

UDB:

[27] And the rest of you, Yahweh will force you to go and live among the people of many other nations. Only a few of you will survive there. [28] When you are in those nations, you will worship gods that are made of wood and stone, gods made by humans, gods that cannot see anything or hear anything or eat anything or smell anything.

ULB:

[27] Yahweh will scatter you among the peoples, and you will be left few in number among the nations, where Yahweh will lead you away. [28] There you will serve other gods, the work of men's hands, wood and stone, which neither see, hear, eat, nor smell.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Yahweh will scatter you among the peoples

Moses speaks as if the people were seeds that Yahweh would scatter around a field. AT: "Yahweh will send you to many different places and force you to live there" (See: Metaphor)

will lead you away

"will send you" or "will cause your enemies to take you away"

the work of men's hands, wood and stone

Here "men's hands" refers the men themselves, and "the work ... wood and stone" to the idols that they have created. AT: "the wood and stone idols that men have made" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation, nations
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- works, deeds, work, acts

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:29

UDB:

[29] But while you are there, you will try to know Yahweh your God, and if you try with your entire heart to know him, he will answer you.

ULB:

[29] But from there you will seek Yahweh your God, and you will find him, when you search after him with all your heart and with all your soul.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel. He speaks as though they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

But from there

"But when you are in those other nations"

you will seek

The word "you" here is plural. (See: Forms of You)

when you search after him

"when you really try to find him" or "when you really try to know him"

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom "with all ... heart" means "completely" and "with all ... soul" means "with all ... being." (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:30-31

UDB:

30 In the future, when you are being mistreated there and all those bad things happen to you, you will again worship only Yahweh and obey him. 31 Yahweh is a God who acts mercifully. If you continue to obey him, he will not abandon you or destroy you or forget the agreement that he solemnly made with your ancestors."

ULB:

30 When you are in distress, and when all these things will have come on you, in those later days you will return to Yahweh your God and listen to his voice. 31 For Yahweh your God is a merciful God; he will not fail you nor destroy you, nor forget the covenant of your fathers that he swore to them.

translationNotes

will have come on

"have happened to"

in those later days

"afterwards" or "then"

listen to his voice

Here "listen" is an idiom that means to hear and obey. Also, "his voice" refers to Yahweh and emphasizes what he says. AT: "obey what he says" (See: Idiom and Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- voice, voices
- mercy, merciful
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:32-33

UDB:

32 "Now think about the past, about the time before you were born, about all the time since God first created people here on the earth. You could search everywhere, in heaven and on the earth. Has anything like this ever happened that is as great as what Yahweh did for us Israelite people? 33 Has any group ever remained alive after they heard a god speak to them from the middle of a fire, like we did?

ULB:

32 Ask now about the days that are past, which were before your time, since the day that God created man on the earth, ask from one end of heaven to the other, whether there has been anything so great as this, or has anything like it ever been heard? 33 Did ever a people hear the voice of God speaking out of the midst of the fire, as you have heard, and live?

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and the command "ask now" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Did ever a people hear the voice of God speaking out of the midst of the fire, as you have heard, and live?

Here the people of Israel are reminded of how Yahweh has spoken to them in an amazing way in the past. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "No other people besides you has heard God speak from the middle of the fire and lived." (See: Rhetorical Question)

hear the voice of God speaking

Here God is represented by his voice. AT: "hear God's voice as he spoke" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- God
- create, creates, created, creation, creator
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- voice, voices
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:34

UDB:

34 Certainly God has never before tried to take a huge group of people from one nation to another location, like he did for us when he brought us out of Egypt. We saw Yahweh our God use his great power to do miracles to show us who he is, and sent plagues, and did many other things that terrified people, and how he rescued us when the army of Egypt tried to attack us.

ULB:

34 Or has God ever attempted to go and take for himself a nation from the midst of another nation, by trials, by signs, and by wonders, and by war, and by a mighty hand, and by an outstretched arm, and by great terrors, as everything that Yahweh your God did for you in Egypt before your eyes?

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

by a mighty hand, and by an outstretched arm

Here "a mighty hand" and "an outstretched arm" are metaphors for Yahweh's power. AT: "by showing his mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

before your eyes

Here "eyes" refer to the whole person. AT: "in front of you" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- God
- nation, nations
- trial, trials
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:35-36

UDB:

[35] Yahweh showed all these things to you, in order that you would know that only he is truly God, and that there is no other God. [36] He allowed your ancestors to hear him speak from heaven in order that he could discipline them. Here on the earth he allowed them to see his great fire on Mount Sinai, and he spoke to them from the middle of the fire.

ULB:

[35] To you these things were shown, so that you might know that Yahweh is God, and that there is no one else besides him. [36] Out of heaven he made you to hear his voice, so that he might instruct you; on earth he made you see his great fire; you heard his words out of the midst of the fire.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

To you these things were shown

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh showed you these things" (See: Active or Passive)

he made you to hear ... made you see

"he made sure you heard ... made sure you saw"

made you ... you heard

Moses speaks as if the people to whom he was speaking were the people he had spoken to at Mount Sinai many years earlier. The people at Mount Sinai were actually the fathers of the people to whom he was speaking these words. AT: "made your fathers ... your fathers heard" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- voice, voices

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:37-38

UDB:

[37] Because he loved our ancestors, he chose you Israelites who are their descendants, and by his great power he brought your ancestors out of Egypt. [38] As they traveled, he expelled the people of nations that were greater and more powerful than they were, in order that they could capture their land and cause it to become yours, which is what is happening now.

ULB:

[37] Because he loved your fathers, he chose their descendants after them, and brought you out of Egypt with his presence, with his great power; [38] in order to drive out from before you nations greater and mightier than you, to bring you in, to give you their land as an inheritance, as today.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

your fathers

This refers to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Jacob's sons.

with his presence, with his great power

"with the great power that comes from his presence" or "with his great power"

translationWords

- love, loves, loving, loved
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- power, powers
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- nation, nations
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:39-40

UDB:

39 So today you should think about the fact that Yahweh is God, that he rules in heaven and also on the earth, and that there is no other god. 40 Obey all the rules and regulations that I am giving to you today, in order that things will go well for you and for your descendants, and that you will live a long time in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, for it to belong to you forever."

ULB:

39 Know therefore today, and lay it on your heart, that Yahweh is God in heaven above and on the earth beneath; there is no one else. 40 You will keep his statutes and his commandments that I command you today, that it may go well with you and with your children after you, and that you may prolong your days in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you forever."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

lay it on your heart

This is an idiom. AT: "remember it" (See: Idiom)

in heaven above and on the earth beneath

The two phrases "in heaven" and "on the earth" show two extremes and mean "everywhere." AT: "over everything" (See: Merism)

prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: "be able to live a long time" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- heart, hearts
- Yahweh

- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- statute, statutes
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:41-43

UDB:

41 Then Moses chose three cities that are on the east side of the Jordan River. 42 If someone accidentally killed another person, a person who had not been his enemy previously, he could escape to one of those cities. He would be safe in one of those cities because the people there would protect him. 43 For the tribe of Reuben, Moses chose the city of Bezer in the wilderness; for the tribe of Gad, he chose the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead. For the tribe of Manasseh, Moses chose the city of Golan in the region of Bashan.

ULB:

41 Then Moses selected three cities on the east side of the Jordan, 42 so that anyone might flee to one of them if he killed another person accidentally, without being his enemy previously. By fleeing to one of these cities, he might survive. 43 They were: Bezer in the wilderness, the plain country, for the Reubenites; Ramoth in Gilead, for the Gadites; and Golan in Bashan, for the Manassites.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses's speech, which began in Deuteronomy 1:6, has finished, and the writer continues the narrative that ended in Deuteronomy 1:5.

Bezer ... Ramoth ... Golan

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Moses
- Jordan River, Jordan
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Reuben
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Gad
- Bashan
- Manasseh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy

- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:44-46

UDB:

44 Moses gave God's laws to the Israelite people. 45 They included all the solemn commands, instructions and laws that Moses spoke to the people of Israel after they had come out of Egypt, 46 when they were in the valley east of the Jordan River. They were across from the town of Beth Peor, in the land that previously was ruled by Sihon, the king of the Amor people group, who lived in Heshbon. Moses and the other Israelites had defeated his army when they came out of Egypt.

ULB:

44 This is the law that Moses placed before the people of Israel; 45 these are the covenant decrees, laws, and other decrees that he spoke to the people of Israel when they came out of Egypt, 46 when they were east of the Jordan, in the valley opposite Beth Peor, in the land of Sihon, king of the Amorites, who had lived at Heshbon, whom Moses and the people of Israel had defeated when they came out of Egypt.

translationNotes

This is the law

This refers to the laws Moses will give in the following chapters.

Beth Peor

This is the name of a town in Moab near Mount Pisgah. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 3:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sihon ... Amorites ... Heshbon

"King Sihon ... Amorite people ... town of Heshbon." See how you translated these names in Deuteronomy 1:4.

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

- Jordan River, Jordan
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Amorite, Amorites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 4:47-49

UDB:

47 They captured Sihon's land and the land that Og, the king of the region of Bashan, had ruled. Those were the two kings who ruled the Amor people group in the area east of the Jordan River. 48 Their land extended from the city of Aroer in the south along the Arnon River, as far north as Mount Sirion, which most people call Mount Hermon. 49 It also included all the area in the plain east of the Jordan River valley, extending to the Sea of Arabah (known as the Dead Sea) and east to the slopes of Mount Pisgah.

ULB:

47 They took his land as a possession, and the land of Og king of Bashan—these, the two kings of the Amorites, who were beyond the Jordan toward the east. 48 This territory went from Aroer, on the edge of the Valley of the Arnon, to Mount Sion (or Mount Hermon), 49 and included all of the plain of the Jordan River valley, eastward beyond the Jordan, to the Sea of the Arabah, to the slopes of Mount Pisgah.

translationNotes

his land

King Sihon's land

Og king of Bashan

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:4.

beyond the Jordan toward the east ... eastward beyond the Jordan

This refers to the land across the Jordan River, to the east of Israel. Moses was east of the Jordan when he said this. AT: "from the side of the Jordan River toward the east ... eastward from the side of the Jordan River"

Aroer

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:36.

the Valley of the Arnon

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 2:24.

Mount Sion ... Mount Hermon

These are the names of mountains. See how you translated these names in Deuteronomy 3:8-9.

Sea of the Arabah ... Mount Pisgah

See how you translated these names in Deuteronomy 3:17.

translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Bashan
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Amorite, Amorites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Arabah

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 05 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each of the commandements in the list of Ten Commandments in 5:7-21. The ULB uses a separate paragraph for each commandment.

Special concepts in this chapter

Ten commandments

This chapter repeats the material of Exodus 20. It is known as the Ten Commandments.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors and idioms

Moses uses metaphors and idioms to instruct the people to follow the law of Moses. This is because it is very important to follow these laws. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, Metaphor and Idiom)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 05:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 5:1-3

UDB:

[1] Moses summoned all the people of Israel and said to them,

"You Israelite people, listen to all the rules and decrees that I am giving to you today. Learn them and be sure to obey them. [2] When we were at Mount Sinai, Yahweh our God made a covenant with us. [3] But this covenant was not only for our ancestors. He made it also for us, who are alive now.

ULB:

[1] Moses called to all Israel and said to them, "Listen, Israel, to the statutes and the decrees that I will speak in your ears today, that you may learn them and keep them. [2] Yahweh our God made a covenant with us at Horeb. [3] Yahweh did not make this covenant with our ancestors, but with us, all of us alive here today.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

called to all Israel

Here "all" is a generalization. Moses wanted everyone in Israel to hear and obey his words, but his voice was probably not so loud that everyone actually heard him. (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

that I will speak in your ears today

Here "ears" refers to the whole person. This metaphor emphasizes that the people know what Moses has said to them, so they cannot sin and then say they did not know they were sinning. AT: "that I will speak to you today" (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

Yahweh did not make this covenant with our ancestors

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh did not only make a covenant with those who were at Horeb; the covenant was also with the later generations of Israelites or 2) Yahweh did not make this covenant with their distant ancestors, such as, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; instead, this covenant began with the Israelites at Horeb.

translationWords

- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Yahweh
- God
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- Horeb
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:4-6

UDB:

[4] Yahweh spoke with us face to face on that mountain, from the middle of the fire. [5] On that day, I stood between your ancestors and Yahweh to tell them what he said, because they were afraid of the fire, and they did not want to climb up the mountain. This is what Yahweh said: [6] 'I am Yahweh your God, the one you worship. I am the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt. I am the one who freed you from being slaves there.

ULB:

[4] Yahweh spoke with you face to face on the mount out of the middle of the fire [5] (I stood between Yahweh and you at that time, to reveal to you his word; for you were afraid because of the fire, and you did not go up the mountain). Yahweh said,

[6] 'I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

face to face

Use your language's idiom for two people who are close to each other and looking at each other when they are speaking to each other. (See: Idiom)

on the mount

"on the mountain"

at that time

Moses is referring to an event that happened about 40 years earlier.

out of the house of slavery

Here the metonym "house of slavery" refers to Egypt where the people of Israel had been slaves. AT: "out of the place where you were slaves" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- word, words
- fear, fears, afraid
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:7-8

UDB:

[7] You must worship only me; you must not worship any other god.

ULB:

[7] You will have no other gods before me.

[8] You will not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water below.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people what Yahweh has commanded them. The phrases "you will" and "you will not" are commands. He speaks to the Israelites as if they were one person. (See: Forms of You)

You will have no other gods before me

"You must not worship any other gods but me"

that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water below

This can be made more explicit. AT: "that is in the earth beneath your feet, or that is in the water below the earth" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:9-10

UDB:

[9] You must not bow down to any idol and worship it, because I am Yahweh God, and I will not tolerate you doing that. I will punish anyone who does that, and their children, grandchildren, and great grandchildren. [10] But I will steadfastly love thousands of generations of those who love me and obey my commandments.

ULB:

[9] You will not bow down to them or serve them, for I, Yahweh your God, am a jealous God. I punish the ancestors' wickedness by bringing punishment on the children, to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, [10] and showing covenant faithfulness to thousands, to those who love me and keep my commandments.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You will not bow down to them or serve them

"You will not worship the carved figures or do as they command"

You will not

"Never"

I ... am a jealous God

"I ... want you to worship only me"

showing covenant faithfulness to thousands, to those who love me

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithfully" or "faithful." AT: "faithfully loving thousands, those who love me" or "being faithful to the covenant with thousands, with those who love me" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to thousands, to those who love me

Some translations read “to a thousand generations of those who love me.” The word “thousands” is a metonym for a number too many to count. AT: “forever, to those who love me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metonymy and Numbers)

translationWords

- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- Yahweh
- God
- jealous, jealousy
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- children, child
- generation
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- love, loves, loving, loved
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:11

UDB:

[11] Do not speak my name carelessly or for wrong purposes, because I am Yahweh God, the one whom you should worship, and I will certainly punish those who do that.

ULB:

[11] You will not take the name of Yahweh your God in vain, for Yahweh will not hold him guiltless that takes his name in vain.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You will not take the name of Yahweh

"You will not use the name of Yahweh"

You will not

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 5:09.

in vain

"carelessly" or "without proper respect" or "for wrong purposes"

Yahweh will not hold him guiltless

This can be stated in a positive form. AT: "Yahweh will consider him guilty" or "Yahweh will punish him" (See: Double Negatives)

translationWords

- name, names, named
- Yahweh
- God
- vain, vanity
- guilt, guilty

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:12-14

UDB:

[12] Do not forget that the seventh day of every week is for you to honor me specially, as I, Yahweh your God, am commanding you.

ULB:

[12] Observe the Sabbath day to keep it holy, as Yahweh your God commanded you. [13] For six days you will labor and do all your work; [14] but the seventh day is a Sabbath to Yahweh your God. On it you will not do any work—not you, nor your son, nor your daughter, nor your male servant, nor your female servant, nor your ox, nor your donkey, nor any of your cattle, nor any foreigner who is within your gates. This is so that your male servant and your female servant may rest as well as you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

to keep it holy

"to dedicate it to God"

do all your work

"do all your usual duties"

seventh day

"day 7." Here "seventh" is the ordinal number for seven. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

On it you will not do

"On that day never do"

within your gates

Here "gates" is a reference to the city itself. AT: "within your community" or "inside your city" or "living with you" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Sabbath
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
-
- donkey, mule
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:15

UDB:

15 Do not forget that you were slaves in Egypt, and that I, Yahweh your God, brought you out from there by my very great power. That is the reason that I am commanding that all of you must rest on the seventh day each week.

ULB:

15 You will call to mind that you were a servant in the land of Egypt, and Yahweh your God brought you out from there by a mighty hand and by an outstretched arm. Therefore Yahweh your God has commanded you to keep the Sabbath day.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You will call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "You must remember" (See: Idiom)

by a mighty hand and by an outstretched arm

Here "a mighty hand" and "an outstretched arm" are metaphors for Yahweh's power. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: "by showing his mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Yahweh
- God
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- power, powers

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Sabbath

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:16

UDB:

[16] Honor your fathers and your mothers, just like I, Yahweh your God, am commanding you, in order that you as a people group may live a long time in the land that I, Yahweh your God, will give you, and in order that things will go well for you there.

ULB:

[16] Honor your father and your mother, as Yahweh your God has commanded you to do, that you may live a long time in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and so that it may go well with you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- honor, honors
- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:17-20

UDB:

17 Do not murder anyone.

18 Do not commit adultery.

19 Do not steal anything.

ULB:

17 You will not murder.

18 You will not commit adultery.

19 You will not steal.

20 You will not give false witness against your neighbor.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You will not

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 5:09.

You will not commit adultery

"You will not sleep with anyone other than your spouse"

You will not give false witness against your neighbor

"You will not tell lies about someone"

translationWords

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses
- corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:21

UDB:

[21] Do not covet someone else's wife, someone else's house, someone else's fields, someone else's male slave or female slave, someone else's livestock, someone else's donkeys, or anything else that another person owns.'

ULB:

[21] You will not covet your neighbor's wife, you will not covet your neighbor's house, his field, or his male servant, or his female servant, his ox, or his donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You will not

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 5:09.

translationWords

- envy, covet
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
-
- donkey, mule

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:22

UDB:

[22] Those are the commandments that Yahweh spoke to your ancestors. When they were gathered there at the bottom of the mountain, he spoke with a very loud voice from the middle of the fire, and there were dark clouds surrounding the mountain. He spoke only those Ten Commandments, no more. Then he wrote them on two stone tablets and gave them to me.

ULB:

[22] These words Yahweh spoke in a loud voice to all your assembly on the mountain out of the middle of the fire, of the cloud, and of the thick darkness; he did not add any more words. He wrote them down on two tablets of stone and gave them to me.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel what Yahweh said.

translationWords

- word, words
- Yahweh
- voice, voices
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- darkness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:23-24

UDB:

[23] After your ancestors heard Yahweh's voice when he spoke to them out of the darkness, while there was a big fire burning on the mountain, their leaders and elders came to me, [24] and one of them said, 'Listen to us! Yahweh our God showed us that he is very great and glorious when we heard him speak from the fire. Today we have realized that it is possible for us human beings to continue to live even though God has spoken to us.

ULB:

[23] It came about, when you heard the voice out of the middle of the darkness, while the mountain was burning, that you came near to me—all your elders and the heads of your tribes. [24] You said, 'Look, Yahweh our God has shown us his glory and his greatness, and we have heard his voice out of the middle of the fire; we have seen today that when God speaks with people, they can live.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel what happened in the past.

heard the voice

The word "voice" is a metonym for the sound of the voice or for the person who was speaking. AT: "heard the sound of the voice" or "heard Yahweh speaking" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- voice, voices
- elder, elders
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Yahweh
- God
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:25-27

UDB:

[25] But we are afraid that we will die. We are afraid that this immense fire will burn us all up, if we go on hearing Yahweh's voice. [26] We are the only people on earth who have remained alive after hearing the all-powerful God speak to them from a fire! [27] So Moses, you go up the mountain and listen to everything that Yahweh our God says. Then come back and tell us everything that he has said, and we will listen to what he has said and obey it.'

ULB:

[25] But why should we die? For this great fire will consume us; if we hear the voice of Yahweh our God any longer, we will die. [26] For who besides us is there among all flesh who has heard the voice of the living God speak out of the middle of the fire and lived, as we have done? [27] As for you, you should go and listen to everything that Yahweh our God says; repeat to us everything that Yahweh our God says to you; we will listen to it and obey it.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the Israelites what the Israelites had said to Moses.

But why should we die?

They were afraid that they would die if Yahweh spoke to them. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "We are afraid that we will die." (See: Rhetorical Question)

For who besides us is there ... have done?

This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "There are no other people besides us ... have done." (See: Rhetorical Question)

all flesh

This represents all people or living things. AT: "all people" or "all living beings" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- voice, voices

- Yahweh
- God
- flesh
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:28-30

UDB:

[28] Yahweh heard your leaders say that, so when I went back up the mountain, Yahweh said to me, 'I have heard what your leaders have said, and what they have said is right. [29] I surely wish that they would always think like that and have an awesome respect for me and obey all my commandments, in order that things may go well for them and for their descendants forever.

[30] So go down and tell them to return to their tents.

ULB:

[28] Yahweh heard your words when you spoke to me. He said to me, 'I have heard the words of this people, what they said to you. What they said was good. [29] Oh, that there were such a heart in them, that they would honor me and always keep all my commandments, that it might go well with them and with their children forever! [30] Go say to them, "Return to your tents."

translationNotes

when you spoke to me

Here "me" refers to Moses.

Oh, that there were

If your language has an idiom that expresses a strong desire for something, you might want to use it here. AT: "I would be very happy if there were" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- word, words
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- heart, hearts
- honor, honors
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- tent, tents, tentmakers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy

- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:31

UDB:

31 But then you come back up here and stand near me, and I will give to you all the rules and decrees that I want them to obey. Then you can teach them to the people, in order that they will obey them when they are in the land that I am giving to them.'

ULB:

31 But as for you, stand here by me, and I will tell you all the commandments, the statutes, and the decrees that you will teach them, so that they may keep them in the land that I will give them to possess.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

you will teach them

"you will teach the people of Israel"

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 5:32-33

UDB:

[32] So I went back down to the people and said to them, 'Be sure that you do everything that Yahweh our God has commanded us to do. Do not disobey any of his laws. [33] Conduct your lives as Yahweh our God has commanded us to do, in order that you may live a long time, and in order that things will go well for you when you are living in the land that you will occupy.'"

ULB:

[32] You will keep, therefore, what Yahweh your God has commanded you; you will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left. [33] You will walk in all the ways that Yahweh your God has commanded you, so that you may live, and so that it may go well with you, and that you may prolong your days in the land that you will possess.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

You will keep

Moses is giving a command to the people of Israel.

you will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left

This compares a person disobeying God to a person turning off of the correct path. AT: "you will not disobey him in any way" or "you will do everything he says" (See: Metaphor)

prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:40. AT: "be able to live a long time" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

- walk, walks, walked, walking
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 06 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's blessings

Yahweh's continued blessing of the people of Israel is dependent upon the people's obedience to the law of Moses. (See: bless, blessed, blessing and law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

There are many metaphors in this chapter. These metaphors describe the greatness of the Promised Land and the wholehearted worship that is completely dedicated to Yahweh. (See: Metaphor and Promised Land)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 06:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 6:1-2

UDB:

[1] "These are the commandments and rules and decrees that Yahweh our God commanded me to teach to you. He wants you to obey them in the land that you are about to enter and occupy. [2] He wants you to honor him, and he wants you and your descendants to always obey all these rules and regulations that I am giving to you, in order that you may live for a long time.

ULB:

[1] Now these are the commandments, statutes, and decrees that Yahweh your God has commanded me to teach you, so that you might keep them in the land that you are going over the Jordan to possess; [2] so that you might honor Yahweh your God, so as to keep all his statutes and commandments that I am commanding you—you, your sons, and your sons' sons, all the days of your lives, so that your days may be prolonged.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues the speech to the people of Israel he began in Deuteronomy 5:1. Beginning in verse 2, he speaks to the people of Israel as if they were one person. (See: Forms of You)

might keep ... to keep

"might obey ... to obey"

going over the Jordan

"going to the other side of the Jordan River"

that your days may be prolonged

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. This can be stated in active form. This can be translated similarly to "prolong your days" in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: "that I may prolong your days" or "that I may cause you to live a long time" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed

- Yahweh
- God
- Jordan River, Jordan
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- honor, honors
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:3

UDB:

[3] So, you Israelite people, listen to them carefully and obey them. If you do that, things will go well with you, and you will become a very numerous nation when you are living in that very fertile land. That is what Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, promised would happen.

ULB:

[3] Therefore listen to them, Israel, and keep them, so that it may go well with you, so that you may greatly multiply, in a land flowing with milk and honey, as Yahweh, the God of your fathers, has promised you would do.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

listen to them

Here "listen" means to obey, and "them" refers to Yahweh's commandments. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "listen to Yahweh's commandments, statutes, and decrees" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

keep them

"obey them"

a land flowing with milk and honey

This is an idiom. AT: "a land where plenty of milk and honey flow" or "a land that is excellent for cattle and farming" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- honey, honeycomb
- Yahweh
- God
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:4-5

UDB:

[4] You Israelite people, listen! Only Yahweh is our God. [5] You must love him with all your inner being and with all that you feel and in every way that you can.

ULB:

[4] Listen, Israel: Yahweh our God is one. [5] You will love Yahweh your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your might.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Yahweh our God is one

"Our God Yahweh is the one and only God"

with all your heart, with all your soul

The idiom "with all ... heart" means "completely" and "with all ... soul" means "with all ... being." See how you translated these two phrases in Deuteronomy 4:29. (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- God
- love, loves, loving, loved
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:6-7

UDB:

[6] Never forget these commands that I am giving to you today. [7] Teach them to your children again and again. Talk about them all the time. When you are in your houses and when you are walking outside, talk about them also when you are lying down and when you wake up.

ULB:

[6] The words that I am commanding you today will be in your heart; [7] and you will diligently teach them to your children; you will talk about them when you sit in your house, when you walk on the road, when you lie down, and when you get up.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

I am commanding you

Moses is speaking God's commandments to the people of Israel.

will be in your heart

This is an idiom. AT: "you must always remember" (See: Idiom)

you will diligently teach ... you will talk

"I command you to diligently teach ... I command you to talk." The reader should understand these as commands.

translationWords

- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- heart, hearts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:8-9

UDB:

[8] Write them on tiny scrolls and fasten them to your arms, and write them on bands that you fasten to your foreheads to help you to remember them. [9] Write them on the doorposts of your houses and on your city gates.

ULB:

[8] You will tie them as a sign upon your hand, and they will serve as frontlets between your eyes. [9] You will write them on the doorposts of your house and on your gates.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

tie them

This is a metonym for "write these words on parchment, put the parchment in a pouch, and tie the pouch." This metonym in turn may be a metaphor for "obey these words so that it is as if they were physically there." AT: "tie these words" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

as a sign upon your hand

"as something to make you remember my laws"

they will serve as frontlets

This is a metonym for "write these words on parchment, put the parchment in a pouch, and tie the pouch to your head so it sits." This metonym in turn may be a metaphor for "obey these words so that it is as if they were physically there." AT: "my words will serve as frontlets"(See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

frontlets

ornaments a person wears on the forehead

You will write

This is a command.

translationWords

- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- doorpost
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:10-12

UDB:

[10] Yahweh our God solemnly promised to your ancestors Abraham and Isaac and Jacob that he would give you a land that already has in it large and prosperous cities that you did not build. [11] He said that the houses in those cities will already be full of many good things that someone else put there; you did not put them there. There will be wells that someone else dug. There will be vineyards and olive trees that someone else planted. So when Yahweh brings you into that land, and you have all that you want to eat, [12] be sure that you do not forget Yahweh, who rescued you from being slaves in Egypt and gave all these things to you.

ULB:

[10] When Yahweh your God brings you into the land that he swore to your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, that he would give you, with large and very good cities that you did not build, [11] and houses full of all kinds of good things that you did not make, cisterns that you did not dig, and vineyards and olive trees that you did not plant, you will eat and be satisfied— [12] then be careful so that you do not forget Yahweh, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

large and very good cities that you did not build

All these cities will belong to the people of Israel when they conquer the people in Canaan.

out of the house of bondage

Here the metonym "house of bondage" refers to Egypt, the place where the people of Israel had been slaves. AT: "out of the place where you were slaves" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- vineyard, vineyards
- olive, olives
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:13-15

UDB:

[13] You must honor Yahweh our God, and you must worship him alone. When you make a solemn oath to tell the truth or to do something, do it in his name. [14] You must not worship any other gods, the gods that the people groups who live in this land worship. [15] Yahweh our God, who lives among you, will not accept people who worship anyone or anything else. So if you worship any other god, Yahweh will be very angry with you, and he will destroy you completely.

ULB:

[13] You will honor Yahweh your God; him you will worship, and you will swear by his name. [14] You will not go after other gods, the gods of the peoples who are all around you— [15] for Yahweh your God in the midst of you is a jealous God—if you do, the anger of Yahweh your God will be kindled against you and he will destroy you from the surface of the earth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

You will honor Yahweh your God; him you will worship, and you will swear by his name

"It is Yahweh your God and no one else whom you will honor; it is he alone whom you will worship, and it is by his name and only his name that you will swear." Your language may have another way of emphasizing that Yahweh is telling the Israelites not to worship or serve any other god.

you will swear by his name

To swear by the name of Yahweh means to make Yahweh the basis or the power on which the oath is made. The metonym "his name" refers to Yahweh himself. AT: "you will swear and ask Yahweh to confirm it" or "when you swear you will speak his name" (See: Metonymy)

in the midst of you

"who lives among you"

the anger of Yahweh your God will be kindled against you

Moses compares Yahweh's anger to someone starting a fire to destroy things. This can be stated in active form. To kindle anger is a metaphor for becoming very angry. AT: "Yahweh your God will kindle his anger" or "Yahweh your God will become very angry" (See: Active or Passive and Metaphor)

destroy you from

"destroy you so that there is nothing left of you anywhere on"

translationWords

- honor, honors
- Yahweh
- God
- worship
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- name, names, named
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- jealous, jealousy
- anger, angered, angry
- earth, earthen, earthly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:16-17

UDB:

[16] Do not do sinful things to find out whether Yahweh will punish you or not, like your ancestors did at Massah. [17] Be sure that you always obey all the laws, the weighty instructions, and the regulations that he has given to you.

ULB:

[16] You will not test Yahweh your God as you tested him at Massah. [17] You will diligently keep the commandments of Yahweh your God, his solemn commands, and his statutes, that he has commanded you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

You will not test Yahweh

Here "test" means to challenge Yahweh and force him to prove himself.

Massah

This is the name of a place in the desert. The translator may add a footnote that says: "The name 'Massah' means 'testing.'" (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- test, tests, tested
- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:18-19

UDB:

[18] Do what Yahweh says is right and good. If you do that, things will go well with you. You will be able to enter and occupy the good land that Yahweh solemnly promised to give to our ancestors. [19] He will do that by driving out your enemies from that land, just as he promised to do.

ULB:

[18] You will do what is right and good in the sight of Yahweh, that it may go well with you, and that you may go in and possess the good land that Yahweh swore to your fathers, [19] to drive out all your enemies from before you, as Yahweh has said.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

You will do what is right and good in the sight of Yahweh

This idiom is a command and a blessing. If the Israelites obey Yahweh, they will receive blessings from Yahweh. AT: "Do what Yahweh says is right and good" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- good, goodness
- Yahweh
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:20-23

UDB:

[20] In the future, your children will ask you, 'Why did Yahweh our God command us to obey all these rules and decrees?' [21] Then you will tell them, 'Our ancestors were slaves of the king in Egypt, but Yahweh brought them out of Egypt by his great power. [22] They saw him do many kinds of miracles and terrifying things to the people of Egypt and to the king and his officials. [23] He rescued our ancestors from Egypt and brought them here to give them this land, just as he solemnly promised our ancestors that he would do.

ULB:

[20] When your son asks you in time to come, saying, 'What are the covenant decrees, the statutes, and the other decrees that Yahweh our God commanded you?' [21] then you will say to your son, 'We were Pharaoh's slaves in Egypt; Yahweh brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand, [22] and he displayed signs and wonders, great and severe, on Egypt, on Pharaoh, and on all his house, before our eyes; [23] and he brought us out from there, so that he might bring us in, to give us the land that he swore to our fathers.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

What are the covenant decrees ... commanded you

In this question the "covenant decrees" represent their meaning and purpose. AT: "What do the covenant decrees ... commanded mean to you" or "Why should you obey the covenant decrees ... commanded you" (See: Metonymy)

your son

This refers to the children of the adult people of Israel to whom Moses was speaking Yahweh's words.

with a mighty hand

Here "a mighty hand" refers to Yahweh's power. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: "with his mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

on all his house

Here the metonym “his house” refers to the people of Yahweh. AT: “on all of his people” (See: Metonymy)

before our eyes

Here the word “eyes” refers to the whole person. AT: “where we could see them” (See: Synecdoche)

might bring us in

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “might bring us into Canaan” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- son, sons
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed
- statute, statutes
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 6:24-25

UDB:

[24] And he commanded us to obey all these laws and to honor him, so that things would go well with us, and so that he would protect our nation and enable us to prosper, as he is doing now. [25] Yahweh our God will approve of us if we carefully obey everything that he has commanded us to do.'"

ULB:

[24] Yahweh commanded us to always keep all these statutes, to fear Yahweh our God for our good, so that he might keep us alive, as we are today. [25] If we keep all these commands before Yahweh our God, as he has commanded us, this will be our righteousness.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. He tells them what they should tell their children about Yahweh's commandments. (See: Forms of You)

before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh" or "where Yahweh can see us"

keep

"obey"

this will be our righteousness

The word "this" refers to keeping Yahweh's commands. This is a metonym for Yahweh considering them righteous. AT: "he will consider us righteous" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- fear, fears, afraid
- God

- good, goodness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 07 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"You must completely destroy them"

The people of Canaan were to be punished by Yahweh. Yahweh used Israel to punish these nations. If they were not completely destroyed, they would lead Israel into sin. Therefore, they were to be completely destroyed and be shown no mercy. (See: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning and mercy, merciful)

Abrahamic Covenant

This chapter references parts of the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham. It also emphasizes Yahweh's faithfulness to this covenant. (See: covenant, covenants, new covenant and faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 07:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 7:1

UDB:

[1] "Yahweh our God will bring you to the land that you will soon enter and occupy. As you advance, he will drive out from that land seven people groups that are more powerful and more numerous than you are. These are the Heth, the Girgash, the Amor, the Canaan, the Periz, the Hiv, and the Jebus people groups.

ULB:

[1] When Yahweh your God brings you into the land that you go to possess, he will drive out many nations before you—the Hittites, the Girgashites, the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites—seven nations greater and mightier than you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- nation, nations
- Hittite, Hittites
- Girgashites
- Amorite, Amorites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Perizzite
- Hivite, Hivites
- Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:2-3

UDB:

[2] When Yahweh our God enables you to defeat them, you must kill them all. You must make no agreement with them, and you must not act mercifully toward them. [3] You must not marry any of them. You must not allow your daughters to marry any of their sons, or allow your sons to marry any of their daughters.

ULB:

[2] It is Yahweh your God who gives them over to you when you defeat them, and then you must completely destroy them. You will make no covenant with them, and show them no mercy. [3] Neither will you arrange any marriages with them. You will not give your daughters to their sons, and you will not take their daughters for your sons.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

gives them over to you

Moses speaks of victory as if it were a physical object one person could give to another. AT: "enables you to defeat them" (See: Metaphor)

you defeat them

Here "them" refers to the seven nations from Deuteronomy 7:1.

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- mercy, merciful

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:4-5

UDB:

[4] If you did that, those people would persuade your children to stop worshiping Yahweh and to worship other gods. If that happens, Yahweh will be very angry with you and he will destroy you very quickly. [5] This is what you must do to those people: Tear down their altars, break apart the stone pillars that are dedicated to their gods, cut down the poles that they use when they worship the goddess Asherah, and burn their molded idols.

ULB:

[4] For they will turn away your sons from following me, so that they may worship other gods. So the anger of Yahweh will be kindled against you, and he will destroy you quickly. [5] This is how you will deal with them: You will break down their altars, dash their stone pillars in pieces, cut down their Asherah poles, and burn their cast idols.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

For they will

"If you allow your children to marry the people from the other nations, the people from the other nations will"

So the anger of Yahweh will be kindled against you

Moses compares Yahweh's anger to someone starting a fire. This emphasizes Yahweh's power to destroy what makes him angry. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh will kindle his anger against you" or "Then Yahweh will become very angry with you" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

against you

The word "you" refers to all the Israelites and so is plural. (See: Forms of You)

you will deal ... You will break ... dash ... cut ... burn

Moses is speaking to all the Israelites here, so these words are all plural. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- son, sons
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- anger, angered, angry
- Yahweh
- altar, altars
- column, columns, pillar, pillars
- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:6

UDB:

[6] You must do that because you are a group of people who belong only to Yahweh our God. He has chosen you from all the people groups in the world to be his own special people.

ULB:

[6] For you are a nation that is set apart to Yahweh your God. He has chosen you to be a people for him to possess, more than all the other peoples that are on the face of the earth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses tells the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

you are a nation that is set apart

Yahweh choosing the people of Israel to belong to him in a special way is spoken of as if Yahweh set them apart from all other nations. (See: Metaphor)

that are on the face of the earth

This is an idiom. AT: "that live on the earth" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- set apart
- Yahweh
- God
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- earth, earthen, earthly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:7-8

UDB:

[7] It was not because you were more numerous than any other people group that Yahweh chose you; you are one of the smallest people groups on the earth. [8] Instead, it is because Yahweh loved you and because he wanted to do what he solemnly promised to your ancestors. That is the reason that he rescued you by his great power from slavery in Egypt and from Pharaoh, the king of Egypt.

ULB:

[7] Yahweh did not set his love upon you or choose you because you were more in number than any people—for you were the fewest of all peoples— [8] but because he loves you, and he wished to keep the oath that he had sworn to your fathers. This is why Yahweh has brought you out with a mighty hand and redeemed you out of the house of bondage, from the hand of Pharaoh, king of Egypt.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

did not set his love upon you

This is an idiom. AT: "did not love you more than he loved others" (See: Idiom)

with a mighty hand

Here "a mighty hand" refers to Yahweh's power. These words also appear in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: "with his mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

redeemed you out of the house of bondage

Moses speaks of Yahweh rescuing the people of Israel from being slaves as if Yahweh had paid money to a slave owner. AT: "rescued you from being slaves" (See: Metaphor)

house of bondage

Here the metonym "house of bondage" refers to Egypt, the place where the people of Israel had been slaves. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 6:12. AT: "out of the place where you were slaves"

hand of Pharaoh

Here “hand” means “the control of.” AT: “control of Pharaoh” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- love, loves, loving, loved
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:9-11

UDB:

[9] So do not forget that Yahweh is our God. He is faithful to us; he keeps his covenant for a thousand generations of people who love him and who obey his commandments. [10] But as for those who hate him, he will pay them back; he will punish them and quickly destroy them.

[11] So you must be sure to obey all the commandments and rules and decrees that I am giving to you today.

ULB:

[9] Therefore know that Yahweh your God—he is God, the faithful God, who keeps covenants and faithfulness for a thousand generations with those who love him and keep his commandments, [10] but repays those who hate him to their face, to destroy them; he will not be lenient on whoever hates him; he will repay him to his face. [11] You will therefore keep the commandments, the statutes, and the decrees that I command you today, so that you will do them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

for a thousand generations

"for 1,000 generations" (See: Numbers)

repays those who hate him to their face

This idiom means "repays them quickly and openly so that they know God has punished them." (See: Idiom)

he will not be lenient on whoever hates him

The words "not be lenient" are an understatement to emphasize that Yahweh will severely punish. AT: "Yahweh will severely punish everyone who hates him" (See: Litotes)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- generation
- love, loves, loving, loved
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:12-13

UDB:

[12] If you pay attention to these decrees and always obey them, Yahweh our God will do what he has agreed to do for you, and he will faithfully love you, which is what he solemnly promised to your ancestors that he would do. [13] He will love you and bless you. He will enable you to have many children. He will bless your fields, with the result that you will have plenty of grain and grapes to make wine and plenty of olive oil. You will have many cattle and sheep. He will do all these things for you in the land that he promised to your ancestors that he would give to you.

ULB:

[12] If you listen to these decrees, and keep and do them, it will happen that Yahweh your God will keep with you the covenant and the faithfulness that he swore to your fathers. [13] He will love you, bless you, and multiply you; he will also bless the fruit of your body and the fruit of your ground, your grain, your new wine, and your oil, the multiplication of your cattle and the young of your flocks, in the land that he swore to your fathers to give you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words. He speaks as if the Israelites are one person in verse 12 and to all of them as a group in verse 13. (See: Forms of You)

multiply you

"increase the number of your people"

the fruit of your body

This is an idiom for "your children." (See: Idiom)

the fruit of your ground

This is an idiom for "your crops." (See: Idiom)

the multiplication of your cattle

"your cattle so they will become many"

translationWords

- decree, decrees, decreed
- Yahweh
- God
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- love, loves, loving, loved
- bless, blessed, blessing
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:14-15

UDB:

14 He will bless you more than he will bless any other people group. All of you will be able to have children. All of your livestock will be able to produce offspring. 15 And Yahweh will protect you from all illnesses. He will not make you to be sick with any of the dreadful diseases that our ancestors knew about in Egypt, but he will make all your enemies sick with them.

ULB:

14 You will be blessed more than all other peoples; there will not be a childless male or a barren female among you or among your cattle. 15 Yahweh will take away from you all sickness; none of the evil diseases of Egypt that you have known will he put on you, but he will put them on all those who hate you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

You will be blessed more than all other peoples

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will bless you more than I bless any other people" (See: Active or Passive)

there will not be a childless male or a barren female among you or among your cattle

Moses uses a negative statement to emphasize that they all will be able to have children. This may be stated in a positive form. AT: "All of you will be able to have children and your cattle will be able to reproduce" (See: Litotes)

among you ... your cattle

The words "you" and "your" are plural here. (See: Forms of You)

take away from you all sickness

"make sure that you do not become ill" or "keep you completely healthy"

none of the evil diseases ... will he put on you, but he will put them on all those who hate you

Moses speaks as if disease were a heavy object that Yahweh would put on top of people. AT: "he will not make you sick with any of the evil diseases ... but he will make your enemies sick with them" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- barren
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:16

UDB:

16 You must destroy all the people groups that Yahweh our God enables you to conquer. Do not act mercifully toward any of them. And do not worship their gods, because if you do that, it would be like falling into a trap from which you will never be able to escape.

ULB:

16 You will consume all the peoples whom Yahweh your God will give over to you, and your eye will not pity them. You will not worship their gods, for that will be a trap for you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

You will consume all the peoples

"I command you to completely destroy all the people groups"

your eye will not pity them

This is a command. Moses speaks as if what the eye sees were the eye itself. AT: "do not allow what you see to cause you to pity them" or "do not pity them because you see that what you are doing is hurting them" (See: Metonymy)

You will not worship

"never worship"

that will be a trap for you

If the people worship other gods, they will be like an animal caught in a hunter's trap, and they will be unable to escape. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

- Yahweh
- God
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- snare, snares, ensnare, ensnares, ensnared, entrap, trap, traps, trapped

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:17-19

UDB:

[17] Do not think to yourselves, 'These people groups are more numerous than we are. We will never be able to drive them out.' [18] Do not be afraid of them. Instead, think about what Yahweh our God did to the king of Egypt and to all the people whom he ruled. [19] Do not forget the terrible plagues that your ancestors saw him inflict on the people of Egypt, and the various kinds of miracles that God did in order to bring your ancestors out of Egypt. Yahweh our God will do the same kind of things to the people groups that you are afraid of now.

ULB:

[17] If you say in your heart, 'These nations are more numerous than I; how can I dispossess them?'— [18] do not be afraid of them; you will call to mind what Yahweh your God did to Pharaoh and to all Egypt; [19] the great sufferings that your eyes saw, the signs, the wonders, the mighty hand, and the outstretched arm by which Yahweh your God brought you out. Yahweh your God will do the same to all the peoples whom you fear.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

If you say in your heart ... do not be afraid

The people should not be afraid even if they notice that the nations are stronger than they are. AT: "Even if you say in your heart" (See: Idiom)

say in your heart

This is an idiom. AT: "think" (See: Idiom)

how can I dispossess them?

Moses uses a question to emphasize that the people may feel afraid of the other nations. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "I cannot defeat them" (See: Rhetorical Question)

you will call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "you must remember" (See: Idiom)

that your eyes saw

Here “eyes” represent the whole person. AT: “that you saw” (See: Synecdoche)

the mighty hand, and the outstretched arm

Here “a mighty hand” and “an outstretched arm” are metaphors for Yahweh’s power. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: “and the mighty power” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- nation, nations
- fear, fears, afraid
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- power, powers
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:20-22

UDB:

[20] Furthermore, he will cause them to become terrified, and he will destroy those who remain alive and run away to hide from you. [21] Do not be afraid of those people, because Yahweh our God will be with you. He is a great God; he is the one that people are afraid of. [22] He will gradually drive out those people groups. You should not try to drive all of them out at one time, because if you did that, the number of wild animals would quickly increase, and you would not be able to get rid of them.

ULB:

[20] Moreover, Yahweh your God will send the hornet among them, until those who are left and who hide themselves from you perish from your presence. [21] You will not be frightened at them, for Yahweh your God is among you, a great and fearsome God. [22] Yahweh your God will drive out those nations before you little by little. You will not defeat them all at once, or the wild animals would become very many around you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Moreover

"And also"

send the hornet

Possible meanings are 1) God will send actual flying insects that sting people and cause pain, or 2) God will cause the people to become terrified and want to run away.

perish from your presence

This is an idiom. AT: "die so you do not see them anymore" (See: Idiom)

You will not

"Never"

a great and fearsome God

“a great and awesome God” or “a great God who causes the people to fear”

little by little

“slowly”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:23-24

UDB:

[23] Instead, Yahweh will enable you to defeat your enemies one people group at a time. He will cause them to panic until they are destroyed. [24] He will enable you to defeat their kings. After you kill them, their names will be forgotten. No people group will be able to stop you; you will destroy all of them.

ULB:

[23] But Yahweh your God will give you victory over them when you meet them in battle; he will greatly confuse them until they are destroyed. [24] He will put their kings under your power, and you will make their name perish from under heaven. No one will be able to stand before you, until you have destroyed them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words as if the Israelites are one person. (See: Forms of You)

give you victory over

This is an idiom. AT: "enable you to defeat" (See: Idiom)

victory over them

"victory over the armies from the other nations"

he will greatly confuse them

"he will make them so they cannot think clearly"

until they are destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "until you have destroyed them" (See: Active or Passive)

you will make their name perish from under heaven

The Israelites will completely destroy all the people from those nations, and in the future no one will remember them. (See: Idiom)

stand before you

“stand against you” or “defend themselves against you”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- power, powers
- name, names, named
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 7:25-26

UDB:

[25] You must burn the carved figures that represent their gods. Do not desire to take the silver or gold decorations that are on those idols, because if you take them for yourselves, they will be like a trap to catch you. Yahweh hates every part of those idols. [26] You must not bring any of those disgusting idols into your houses, because if you do that, God will curse you like he curses them. You must hate and despise those idols, because they are things that Yahweh has cursed and he promises to destroy them."

ULB:

[25] You will burn the carved figures of their gods—do not covet the silver or the gold that covers them and take it for yourself, because if you do, you will become trapped by it—for it is an abomination to Yahweh your God. [26] You will not bring any abomination into your house and start to worship it. You will utterly detest and abhor it, for it is set apart for destruction.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the people of Israel Yahweh's words. In verse 25 he speaks to the group as a group, so the forms of "you" are plural, but in verse 26 he speaks as if the Israelites are one person, so the forms are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You will burn

This is a command.

their gods

"the gods of the other nations"

do not covet ... trapped by it

These words add to the instruction to burn the idols.

you will become trapped by it

Even taking the gold or silver on the idols could cause the people to start worshiping them. By doing this they would become like an animal caught by a trap. This can be stated in active form. AT: "it will become a trap to you" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

for it is an abomination to Yahweh your God

These words tell why Yahweh wants the people to burn the idols. “do this because Yahweh your God hates it very much”

You will utterly detest and abhor

The words “detest” and “abhor” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of hatred. AT: “You will completely hate” (See: Doublet)

for it is set apart for destruction

Yahweh cursing something and promising to destroy it is spoken of as if Yahweh were setting the object apart from everything else. This can be stated in active form. AT: “for Yahweh has set it apart for destruction” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- envy, covet
- silver
- gold, golden
- Yahweh
- God
- worship
- set apart

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 08 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Forgetting

This chapter recalls the great things that Yahweh has done for Israel and is about to do for them. This is so they do not forget him and they will continue to worship him. They must remember that Yahweh is the source of their blessings. (See: bless, blessed, blessing)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 08:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 8:1-2

UDB:

[1] "You must faithfully obey all the commandments that I am giving you today. If you do that, you will live a long time, you will become very numerous, and your people will occupy the land that Yahweh solemnly promised your ancestors that he would give to you. [2] And do not forget how Yahweh our God led us as we traveled through the desert during these past forty years. He caused you to have many problems, because he wanted to cause you to realize that you needed to trust him and not yourselves. And he wanted to test you, to find out what you intended to do, whether you would obey his commandments or not.

ULB:

[1] You must keep all the commands that I am giving you today, so that you may live and multiply, and go in and possess the land that Yahweh swore to your fathers. [2] You will call to mind all the ways that Yahweh your God has led you these forty years in the wilderness, in order that he might humble you, that he might test you to know what was in your heart, as to whether you would keep his commandments or not.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

You must keep ... you may live and multiply, and go in and possess ... your fathers

All instances of "you" and "your" and the verbs are plural. (See: Forms of You)

You will call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "You must remember" (See: Idiom)

forty years

"40 years" (See: Numbers)

he might humble you

"he might show you how weak and sinful you are"

to know

"to reveal" or "to show"

what was in your heart

The heart is a symbol of a person's character. AT: "what kind of people you are" or "how you would behave" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Promised Land
- Yahweh
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- God
- year, years
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- humble, humbles, humbled, humility
- test, tests, tested
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- heart, hearts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:3

UDB:

[3] So he caused you to have difficulties. He allowed you to become hungry. Then he gave you manna, food from heaven, food that you and your ancestors had never eaten before. He did that to teach you that people need food for their bodies, but they also need food for their spirits, which comes from paying attention to everything that Yahweh says.

ULB:

[3] He humbled you, and made you hunger, and fed you with manna, which you had not known and which your fathers had not known. He did that to make you know that it is not by bread alone that people live; rather, it is by everything that proceeds out of the mouth of Yahweh that people live.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. He continues to remind them of what they should "call to mind" (Deuteronomy 8:2). (See: Forms of You)

He humbled you

"Yahweh showed you how weak and sinful you are." See how "he might humble you" is translated in Deuteronomy 8:2.

fed you with manna

"gave you manna to eat"

it is not by bread alone that people live

Here "bread" represents all food. AT: "food is not the only thing people need so they can live" (See: Synecdoche)

it is by everything that proceeds out of the mouth of Yahweh that people live

Here "the mouth of Yahweh" is a metonym for the words that Yahweh says. AT: "people must obey the commands of Yahweh so they can live" or "people must do what Yahweh tells them to do so they can live" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- humble, humbles, humbled, humility
- manna
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- bread
- Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:4-6

UDB:

[4] During those forty years, our clothes did not wear out, and our feet did not swell from walking through the desert. [5] Do not forget that Yahweh our God corrects us and punishes us, like parents correct their children.

[6] So obey the commandments of Yahweh our God, and conduct your lives as he wants you to do, and honor him.

ULB:

[4] Your clothing did not wear out and fall off you, and your feet did not swell up during those forty years. [5] You will think about in your heart, how, as a man disciplines his son, so Yahweh your God disciplines you. [6] You will keep the commandments of Yahweh your God, so that you might walk in his ways and honor him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Your clothing ... forty years

This is the last item that they should "call to mind" (Deuteronomy 8:2).

forty years

"40 years" (See: Numbers)

You will think ... You will keep ... walk in his ways and honor him

This continues the list of commands that begins in Deuteronomy 8:1-2.

You will think about in your heart

Here the metonym "heart" represents the thoughts and understanding of a person. AT: "You will understand" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- year, years
- heart, hearts
- discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- honor, honors

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:7-8

UDB:

[7] He is about to bring you into a good land, which has streams which flow down from the hills and flow out of springs in the valleys. [8] It is a land on which wheat and barley grow, a land where there are fig trees and pomegranates, and a land where there are olive trees and honey.

ULB:

[7] For Yahweh your God is bringing you into a good land, a land of brooks of water, of fountains and springs, flowing out into valleys and among hills; [8] a land of wheat and barley, of vines, fig trees, and pomegranates; a land of olive trees and honey.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

a land of

“a land with” or “a land that has”

translationWords

- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- wheat
- barley
- vine, vines
- fig, figs
- pomegranate, pomegranates
- olive, olives
- honey, honeycomb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:9-10

UDB:

[9] It is a land where there will be plenty of food for you, where you will not lack anything, a land which has iron ore in its rocks and from which you can dig copper ore from its hills. [10] Every day you will eat until your stomachs are full, and you will thank Yahweh our God for the fertile land that he has given you.

ULB:

[9] It is a land in which you will eat bread without lack, and where you will not go without anything; a land whose stones are made of iron, and out of whose hills you may dig copper. [10] You will eat and be full, and you will bless Yahweh your God for the good land that he has given you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

a land in which you will eat bread without lack

This litotes can be translated positively. AT: “a land where there will be plenty of food for you” (See: Litotes)

where you will not go without anything

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “where you will have everything you need” (See: Double Negatives)

stones are made of iron

The stones are full of iron ore. Iron is a very hard metal useful for swords and plows.

dig copper

“mine copper.” Copper is a soft metal useful for making household utensils.

You will eat and be full

“You will have enough food to eat until you are full”

you will bless

"you will praise" or "you will give thanks to"

translationWords

- bread
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:11-12

UDB:

[11] But when that happens, be sure not to forget Yahweh our God by disobeying his commandments and rules and regulations that I am giving to you today. [12] Your stomachs will be full every day, and you will build good houses and live in them. But you might forget Yahweh's commandments.

ULB:

[11] Be careful that you do not forget Yahweh your God, and that you do not neglect his commandments, his ordinances, and his statutes that I am commanding you today, [12] otherwise, when you eat and are full, and when you build good houses and live in them, your heart will be lifted up.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

do not neglect his commandments

"do not stop obeying his commandments" or "continue to obey his commandments"

when you eat and are full

"when you have enough food to eat"

your heart will be lifted up

Here "heart" represents the inner person. To become prideful and no longer obey Yahweh is spoken of as if the person's heart is lifted up. AT: "you will become prideful and no longer obey Yahweh" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

translationWords

- ordinance, ordinances
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:13-14

UDB:

[13] Indeed, when the number of your cattle and sheep has greatly increased, and when you have accumulated a large amount of silver and gold, and the amount of all your other possessions has greatly increased, [14] be sure that you do not become proud and forget Yahweh our God, who rescued your ancestors from being slaves in Egypt and brought them out from there.

ULB:

[13] Be careful when your herds and flocks multiply and when your silver and gold increase, and all that you have is multiplied, [14] then your heart becomes lifted up and you forget Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

your herds and flocks

"your herds of cattle and flocks of sheep and goats"

multiply

"increase in number" or "become many"

all that you have is multiplied

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you have many more things" or "you have many more possessions" (See: Active or Passive)

your heart becomes lifted up

Here "heart" represents the inner person. To become prideful and no longer obey Yahweh is spoken of as if the person's heart is lifted up. See how you translated a similar phrase in Deuteronomy 8:12. AT: "you become prideful and no longer obey Yahweh" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

who brought you out

Moses begins to remind the Israelites of what they know about Yahweh. (See: Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding)

out of the house of bondage

This is a metaphor for the time they were slaves in Egypt. AT: “out from the place where you were slaves” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- silver
- gold, golden
- heart, hearts
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:15-17

UDB:

15 Do not forget that he led them while they traveled through that huge and terrible desert, where there were poisonous snakes and scorpions. And do not forget that where the ground was very dry and there was no water, he caused water to flow for them out of solid rock. 16 Do not forget that in that desert he gave your ancestors manna to eat, food that they had never eaten. He caused them to have, because he wanted to cause them to realize that they needed to trust him and not themselves. And he wanted to test them, to find out what they intended to do, in order that when those difficulties ended, he would do many good things for them. 17 Be sure that you do not think to yourselves, 'I have acquired all these things by my own power and ability.'

ULB:

15 Do not forget him who led you through the great and terrifying wilderness, with its fiery serpents and scorpions and thirsty ground where there was no water, who brought you water out of the rock of flint. 16 He fed you in the wilderness with manna that your ancestors had never known, so that he might humble you and test you, to do you good in the end, 17 but you may say in your heart, 'My power and the might of my hand acquired all this wealth.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

who led you ... in the end

Moses continues to remind the Israelites of what they know about Yahweh (Deuteronomy 8:14). (See: Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding)

who led ... who brought ... He fed

"Yahweh, who led ... Yahweh, who brought ... Yahweh fed"

fiery serpents

"poisonous snakes"

thirsty ground

This phrase describes the ground as being thirsty just like a person is thirsty when he needs water. AT: "dry ground" (See: Personification)

to do you good

"to help you" or "because it would be good for you"

but you may say in your heart

This is the third thing the people might do when their hearts "become lifted up" and they "forget Yahweh" (Deuteronomy 8:14). Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts. AT: "but you may think to yourself" (See: Metonymy)

My power and the might of my hand acquired all this wealth

Here "hand" refers to a man's power or ability. AT: "I got this wealth because I am so strong and powerful" or "I have acquired all these things by my own power and ability" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers
- power, powers
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 8:18-20

UDB:

[18] Do not forget that it is Yahweh our God who has enabled you to become rich. He does this because he faithfully does what he solemnly promised our ancestors that he would do.

[19] I solemnly warn you, that if you forget Yahweh our God and turn to other gods and start to bow down to them and worship them, he will certainly destroy you. [20] If you do not obey Yahweh our God, he will certainly destroy you just like he will destroy the people groups that you will fight against.

ULB:

[18] But you will call to mind Yahweh your God, for it is he who gives you the power to get wealth; that he may establish his covenant that he swore to your fathers, as it is today. [19] It will happen that, if you will forget Yahweh your God and walk after other gods, worship them, and reverence them, I testify against you today that you will surely perish. [20] Like the nations that Yahweh is making to perish before you, so will you perish, because you would not listen to the voice of Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

But you will call to mind

This idiom is a command. AT: “But remember” (See: Idiom)

that he may establish

Possible meanings are 1) “in this way he establishes” or 2) “in this way he is faithful to establish.”

that he may

“so he can”

establish

“fulfill” or “keep”

as it is today

“as he is doing now” or “as he is establishing his covenant now”

walk after other gods

Walking is a metaphor for obeying. AT: “serve other gods” (See: Metaphor)

against you ... you will ... before you ... you perish ... you would not ... your God

All these instances of “you” are plural. (See: Forms of You)

I testify against you

“I warn you” or “I tell you in front of witnesses”

you will surely perish

“you will certainly die”

before you

“in front of you”

would not listen to the voice of Yahweh

Here “the voice of Yahweh” means what Yahweh tells his people to do. AT: “would not obey Yahweh’s commandments” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- power, powers
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- worship
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- nation, nations
- voice, voices

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 09 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's victory

This chapter assures the Israelites that it is Yahweh who will empower them to conquer the Promised Land. The Israelites will not be strong enough on their own to conquer these other nations. This victory will be Yahweh's. The people did not earn this victory, but it is Yahweh's punishment of these sinful nations. (See: Promised Land and sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Israel's sin

Yahweh is about to punish the Canaanites for their sin. He also reminds Israel of their sin. This serves as a warning to the people of Israel. If they sin again, Yahweh will punish them too.

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 09:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 9:1-2

UDB:

[1] You people of Israel, listen to me! You will soon cross the Jordan River. In the land that you will enter, there are large cities that have very high walls around them that seem to extend up to the sky. There are people groups in that land that are more numerous and more powerful than you are. [2] Those people are very tall and strong. Some of them are giants who are descendants of Anak. You know about them, and you have heard people say that no one can defeat the descendants of Anak.

ULB:

[1] Hear, Israel; you are about to cross over the Jordan today, to go in to dispossess nations greater and mightier than yourself, and cities that are great and fortified up to heaven, [2] a people great and tall, the sons of the Anakim, whom you know, and of whom you have heard people say, 'Who can stand before the sons of Anak?'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Hear, Israel

The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. AT: "Listen, people of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

to dispossess

"to take the land from"

fortified up to heaven

This is an exaggeration that emphasizes how frightened the people were because the cities were so large and strong. See how you translated similar words in Deuteronomy 1:28. AT: "have walls so high it is like they reach up to the heavens" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

sons of the Anakim

Descendants of the Anak people who were very large and fierce. See how you translated similar words in Deuteronomy 1:28. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and How to Translate Names)

Who can stand before the sons of Anak?

This means that the sons of Anak were powerful and people were afraid of them. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "There is no one who can defend himself against the sons of Anak." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- nation, nations
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:3

UDB:

[3] I want you to know that Yahweh our God will go ahead of you. He will be like a raging fire. While you advance, he will defeat and destroy them. As a result, you will quickly be able to drive out some of them and kill the others, which is what Yahweh promised that you would do.

ULB:

[3] Know therefore today that Yahweh your God is he who goes over before you like a devouring fire; he will destroy them, and he will subdue them before you; so will you drive them out and make them to perish quickly, as Yahweh has said to you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

today

“now”

like a devouring fire

Yahweh is powerful and able to destroy the armies of the other nations. (See: Simile)

subdue them before you

“make them weak so you can control them”

translationWords

- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- Yahweh
- God
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:4

UDB:

4 After Yahweh our God has expelled them for you, do not say to yourselves, 'It is because we are righteous that Yahweh has enabled us to capture this land.' The truth is that it is because the people in that land are wicked that Yahweh will drive out them as you advance.

ULB:

4 Do not say in your heart, after Yahweh your God has thrust them out from before you, 'It was because of my righteousness that Yahweh has brought me in to possess this land,' for it was because of the wickedness of these nations that Yahweh is driving them out from before you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Do not say in your heart

Here "in your heart" means "in your thoughts." AT: "Do not think to yourselves" (See: Metonymy)

has thrust them out

"has driven the other peoples out"

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:5

UDB:

[5] I say again that it is not because you are righteous within yourselves or because you do things that are righteous that you will enter and capture that land. It is because those people groups are very wicked that Yahweh our God will expel them as you advance, and because he intends to do what he solemnly promised to your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would do.

ULB:

[5] It is not because of your righteousness or the uprightness of your heart that you are going in to possess their land, but it is because of the wickedness of these nations that your God is driving them out from before you, and so that he may make come true the word that he swore to your ancestors, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

the uprightness of your heart

This is an idiom. “because you always thought and desired the right things” (See: Idiom)

so that he may make come true the word

Here the metonym “the word” refers to what God has promised. AT: “so that he may fulfill the promise” (See: Metonymy)

your ancestors, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob

Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are the “ancestors” of whom Moses is speaking.

translationWords

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- heart, hearts
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- nation, nations
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out

- true, truth, truths
- word, words
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:6

UDB:

[6] I want you to know that it is not because you are righteous that Yahweh our God is giving you this good land. I say that because you are not righteous; you are a very stubborn people."

ULB:

[6] Know therefore, that Yahweh your God is not giving you this good land to possess because of your righteousness, for you are a stubborn people.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:7-8

UDB:

7 "Never forget what your ancestors did in the desert that caused Yahweh our God to become angry. From the day that we left Egypt until the day that we arrived here, you also have continually rebelled against him. 8 Even at Mount Sinai your ancestors caused Yahweh to become angry. Because he was very angry, he was ready to get rid of all of them.

ULB:

7 Remember and do not forget how you provoked Yahweh your God to anger in the wilderness; from the day that you left the land of Egypt until you came to this place, you have been rebellious against Yahweh. 8 Also at Horeb you provoked Yahweh to anger, and Yahweh was angry enough with you to destroy you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Remember and do not forget

Moses repeats the same command both positively and negatively to emphasize the importance of remembering. AT: "Be careful to remember" (See: Doublet)

how you provoked Yahweh

Here "you" refers to the Israelites that are present with Moses and also the Israelites of the previous generation. (See: Forms of You)

you came to this place, you have been rebellious ... you provoked ... with you to destroy you

All instances of "you" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

to this place

This refers to the Jordan River Valley.

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- Horeb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:9-10

UDB:

[9] When I climbed the mountain to receive from him the stone tablets on which he had written the Ten Commandments, I stayed there forty days and nights, and during that time I did not eat or drink anything. [10] Yahweh gave me the two stone tablets on which he had written the commandments with his own fingers. They were the words that he had spoken to your ancestors from the fire on that mountain, when they were gathered together at the bottom of the mountain.

ULB:

[9] When I went up the mountain to receive the tablets of stone, the tablets of the covenant that Yahweh made with you, I stayed on the mountain for forty days and forty nights; I neither ate bread nor drank water. [10] Yahweh gave to me the two tablets of stone written with his finger; on them was written everything just like all the words that Yahweh announced to you on the mountain out of the middle of the fire on the day of the assembly.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is reminding the people of Israel what happened in the past.

the tablets of stone, the tablets of the covenant that Yahweh made with you

Here the second phrase clarifies that "the tablets of stone" are the ones on which God wrote the Ten Commandments. (See: Parallelism)

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights" (See: Numbers)

on them was written everything just like all the words that Yahweh announced to you

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh wrote on them the same words he had said to you" (See: Active or Passive)

Yahweh announced ... out of the middle of the fire

It was as if Yahweh were a person standing in the middle of a fire and speaking with a loud voice.

on the day of the assembly

The abstract noun “assembly” can be expressed as the verb “gather together.” AT: “on the day when you Israelites all came and met together in one place” (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- bread
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:11-12

UDB:

[11] At the end of those forty days and nights, Yahweh gave me those two stone tablets on which he had written those commandments. [12] But then he said to me, 'Go down the mountain immediately, because the people whom you are leading, the people whom you led out of Egypt, have committed a terrible sin! They have very quickly done what I commanded them not to do. They have made for themselves a cast figure of a calf to worship.'

ULB:

[11] It happened at the end of those forty days and forty nights that Yahweh gave me the two tablets of stone, the tablets of the covenant. [12] Yahweh said to me, 'Arise, go down quickly from here, for your people, whom you brought out of Egypt, have corrupted themselves. They have quickly turned aside out of the path that I commanded them. They have made for themselves a cast figure.'

translationNotes

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights" (See: Numbers)

the two tablets of stone, the tablets of the covenant

The second phrase clarifies that "the two tablets of stone" are the ones on which God wrote the Ten Commandments. (See: Parallelism)

your people ... have corrupted themselves

"your people ... are doing what is wrong." See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:16.

They have quickly turned aside out of the path that I commanded them

Moses speaks as if obeying God's commands were walking along a path. AT: "They have already disobeyed my commands" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:13-14

UDB:

13 Then Yahweh said to me, 'I have been watching these people, and I see that they are very stubborn. 14 So do not try to stop me. I am going to destroy all of them, with the result that no one anywhere will remember their names. Then I will enable you to become the ancestor of a nation that will be more numerous and more powerful than they are.'

ULB:

13 Furthermore, Yahweh spoke to me and said, 'I have seen this people; they are a stubborn people.
14 Let me alone, so that I may destroy them and blot out their name from under heaven, and I will make of you a nation mightier and greater than they.'

translationNotes

blot out their name from under heaven

"make their name disappear completely" or "kill them all so no one will ever remember them." See how you translated a similar phrase in Deuteronomy 7:24.

translationWords

- stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness
- blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out
- name, names, named
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:15-16

UDB:

15 So I turned and went down the mountain, carrying in my hands the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. Fire was burning all over the mountain. 16 I looked, and I was shocked to see that your ancestors had committed a great sin against Yahweh. They very quickly had begun to do what Yahweh our God had commanded them not to do. They had requested Aaron to make for them a metal image of a calf to worship.

ULB:

15 So I turned around and came down the mountain, and the mountain was burning. The two tablets of the covenant were in my hands. 16 I looked, and behold, you had sinned against Yahweh your God. You had molded for yourselves a calf. You had quickly turned aside out of the path that Yahweh had commanded you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what happened in the past.

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Moses was surprised by what he saw.

molded for yourselves a calf

The Israelites of the earlier generation had asked Aaron to make a metal calf so they could worship it. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

You had quickly turned aside out of the path that Yahweh had commanded you

Moses speaks as if obeying God’s commands were walking along a path. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 9:12. AT: “You had quickly disobeyed what Yahweh had commanded you”

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

- Yahweh
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:17-18

UDB:

17 So while they were watching, I lifted up those two stone tablets and threw them on the ground, and they broke into pieces.

18 Then I prostrated myself on the ground in Yahweh's presence as I had done before, and I did not eat or drink anything for forty days and nights. I did that because your ancestors had sinned against Yahweh and caused him to become very angry.

ULB:

17 I took the two tablets and threw them out of my hands. I broke them before your eyes. 18 Again I lay facedown before Yahweh for forty days and forty nights; I neither ate bread nor drank water, because of all your sin that you had committed, in doing that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh, so as to provoke him to anger.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

I broke them before your eyes

Here "your eyes" is a synecdoche for the people of Israel. AT: "I broke them right in front of you" or "I broke them where you could see them" (See: Synecdoche)

lay facedown

"lay with my face on the ground." This is a way of showing that Yahweh was great and Moses was not.

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights" (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- bread
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- anger, angered, angry

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:19-20

UDB:

[19] I was afraid that because Yahweh was very angry with them, he would get rid of all of them. But again I prayed that he would not do that, and again he listened to me and answered my prayer. [20] Yahweh was also very angry with Aaron for making that golden calf and was ready to kill him. But at the same time I prayed for Aaron also, and Yahweh answered my prayer.

ULB:

[19] For I was afraid of the anger and hot displeasure with which Yahweh was angry enough against you to destroy you. But Yahweh listened to me that time also. [20] Yahweh was very angry with Aaron so as to destroy him; I prayed for Aaron also at the same time.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel what happened in the past.

I was afraid of the anger and hot displeasure with which Yahweh was angry enough against you to destroy you

The words “anger and hot displeasure” are a metonym for what Yahweh would do because he was angry and displeased. AT: “Yahweh was angry at you—he was extremely displeased with you—he was angry enough to destroy you, and so I was afraid of what he would do”

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- Aaron
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:21

UDB:

[21] Your ancestors had sinned by requesting Aaron to make a metal statue of a calf. So I took that statue and I melted it in a fire and crushed it and ground it into very tiny pieces. Then I threw those tiny pieces into the stream that flowed down the mountain.

ULB:

[21] I took your sin, the calf that you had made, and burned it, beat it, and ground it very small, until it was as fine as dust. I threw its dust into the stream that came down from the mountain.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

I took ... burned ... beat ... ground ... threw

Moses probably commanded other men to do the actual work. AT: "I had people take ... burn ... beat ... grind ... throw"

your sin, the calf that you had made

Here the gold calf itself referred to as their "sin." AT: "the calf, which you sinfully made" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:22-24

UDB:

[22] Your ancestors also caused Yahweh to become very angry by what they did at places that they named Taberah, Massah, and Kibroth Hattaavah.

[23] And when we were at Kadesh Barnea, Yahweh said to your ancestors, 'Go up and capture the land that I am about to give to you!' But they rebelled against him. They did not trust him, and they did not obey what he told them to do. [24] Your ancestors rebelled against Yahweh from the first day that I knew them, in Egypt, and you have been exactly the same as your ancestors.

ULB:

[22] At Taberah, at Massah, and at Kibroth Hattaavah, you provoked Yahweh to wrath. [23] When Yahweh sent you from Kadesh Barnea and said, 'Go up and take possession of the land that I have given you,' then you rebelled against the commandment of Yahweh your God, and you did not believe or listen to his voice. [24] You have been rebellious against Yahweh from the day that I knew you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

Taberah ... Massah ... Kibroth Hattaavah

These are names of places that the people of Israel went through while they were in the wilderness. (See: How to Translate Names)

Go up

They were on low land, and the land Yahweh had told them to take was in the hills, so they had to go uphill to get to it.

rebelled against the commandment

The word "commandment" is a metonym for Yahweh himself. AT: "rebelled against Yahweh; you did not obey the commandment" (See: Metonymy)

listen to his voice

Here "his voice" means what God had said. AT: "obey what he said" (See: Metonymy)

from the day that I knew you

"from the time I began to lead you." Some translations read "from the day that he knew you," the day that Yahweh first knew them.

translationWords

- wrath, fury
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief
- voice, voices
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:25-26

UDB:

[25] So, as I said, I lay on the ground in Yahweh's presence for forty days and nights, because Yahweh had said that he would destroy your ancestors. [26] And I prayed to Yahweh, saying, 'Lord Yahweh, these people belong to you; do not destroy them. They are people whom you rescued and brought out of Egypt by your very great power.

ULB:

[25] So I lay facedown before Yahweh those forty days and forty nights, because he had said that he would destroy you. [26] I prayed to Yahweh and said, 'O Lord Yahweh, do not destroy your people or your inheritance whom you have redeemed through your greatness, which you have brought out of Egypt with a mighty hand.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues reminding the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

lay facedown before Yahweh

"lay with my face on the ground." See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 9:18.

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights" (See: Numbers)

you have redeemed

Moses speaks as if Yahweh had rescued the Israelites by paying money to free them from slavery. AT: "you have rescued" (See: Metaphor)

through your greatness

The word "greatness" is a metonym for Yahweh's great power. AT: "through your great power" (See: Metonymy)

with a mighty hand

Here "a mighty hand" refers to Yahweh's power. See how you translated similar words in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: "with your mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 9:27-29

UDB:

[27] Do not forget what you promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Ignore how stubborn and wicked these people have been, and the sin that they have committed. [28] If you do not do that, and if you destroy them, the people of Egypt will hear about it and say that you were not able to bring them into the land that you promised to give to them. They will say that you took them into the desert only to kill them there because you hated them. [29] Do not forget that they are your people. You chose them to belong to you. You brought them out from Egypt by your very great power.'"

ULB:

[27] Call to mind your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; do not look at the stubbornness of this people, nor at their wickedness, nor at their sin, [28] so that the land from where you brought us should say, "Because Yahweh was not able to bring them into the land that he promised to them, and because he hated them, he has brought them out to kill them in the wilderness." [29] Yet they are your people and your inheritance, whom you brought out by your great strength and by the display of your power.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues praying to Yahweh so that he may not destroy the people of Israel.

Call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "Remember" (See: Idiom)

so that the land from where you brought us

The words "the land" are a metonym for the people of Egypt. AT: "so that the people of Egypt" (See: Metonymy)

should say

"can say"

by your great strength and by the display of your power

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh's power that he used to rescue his people. (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- power, powers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter.

This chapter focuses on retelling the great things Yahweh has done. It is a continuation of the material from the previous chapter. It is possible that this is a type of sermon or homily, where Moses is giving the people instructions.

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 10:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 10:1-2

UDB:

[1] "Then Yahweh said to me, 'Cut two stone tablets like the first ones. And make a wooden chest to put them in. Then bring the tablets up to me on this mountain. [2] I will write on those tablets the same words that I wrote on the first tablets, the ones that you broke. Then you can put them in the chest.'

ULB:

[1] At that time Yahweh said to me, 'Carve two tablets of stone like the first, and come up to me on the mountain, and make an ark of wood. [2] I will write on the tablets the words that were on the first tablets that you broke, and you will put them in the ark.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

At that time

"After I finished praying"

first

"previous." This refers to the first set of tablets that Moses had broken. AT: "first tablets" or "first ones" (See: Ellipsis and Ordinal Numbers)

the mountain

This refers to Mount Sinai.

translationWords

- Yahweh
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:3-4

UDB:

[3] So I made a chest. I used wood from an acacia tree to make it. Then I cut two tablets of stone like the first ones, and I went up the mountain carrying the tablets. [4] There Yahweh wrote on the tablets the same Ten Commandments that he had written on the first tablet. They are the commandments that he had spoken to your ancestors from the midst of the fire on the mountain, when they had gathered at the bottom of the mountain. Then Yahweh gave the tablets to me.

ULB:

[3] So I made an ark of acacia wood, and I carved two tablets of stone like the first, and I went up the mountain, having the two tablets in my hand. [4] He wrote on the tablets, like the first writing, the Ten Commandments which Yahweh had spoken to you on the mountain out of the middle of the fire on the day of the assembly; then Yahweh gave them to me.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

first

"previous." This refers to the first set of tablets that Moses had broken. AT: "first tablets" or "first ones" (See: Ellipsis and Ordinal Numbers)

went up the mountain

"went up Mount Sinai"

out of the middle of the fire

It was as if Yahweh were a person standing in the middle of a fire and speaking with a loud voice. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 9:10.

on the day of the assembly

The abstract noun "assembly" can be expressed as the verb "gather together." See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 9:10. AT: "on the day when you Israelites all came and met together in one place"

translationWords

- acacia
- Ten Commandments
- Yahweh
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:5

UDB:

[5] Carrying the tablets, I turned and went down the mountain. Then, just as he had commanded, I put them in the chest that I had made. And they are still there."

ULB:

[5] I turned and came down from the mountain, and put the tablets in the ark that I had made; there they are, as Yahweh commanded me."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

I turned

Here "I" refers to Moses.

came down from the mountain

"came down from Mount Sinai"

in the ark

"in the box" or "in the chest"

translationWords

- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:6-7

UDB:

[6] (Then, from the wells that belonged to the people of Jaakan, the Israelite people traveled to Moserah. There Aaron died and was buried, and his son Eleazar took his place and became the high priest. [7] From there, the Israelites traveled to Gudgodah, and from there to Jotbathah, which was a place that had many streams.

ULB:

[6] (The people of Israel journeyed from Beeroth Bene Jaakan to Moserah. There Aaron died, and there he was buried; Eleazar, his son, served in the priest's office in his place. [7] From there they journeyed to Gudgodah, and from Gudgodah to Jotbathah, a land of streams of water.

translationNotes

General Information:

The writer gives a short account of where the Israelites had traveled. (See: Background Information)

The people of Israel ... a land of streams of water

This gives background information about where the people of Israel traveled. It also covers Aaron's natural death in Moserah. (See: Background Information)

Beeroth Bene Jaakan to Moserah ... Gudgodah ... Jotbathah

These are names of different places the people of Israel went through while in the wilderness. (See: How to Translate Names)

Beeroth Bene Jaakan

Translator may add a footnote: "The name 'Beeroth Bene Jaakan' means 'the wells that belonged to the people of Jaakan.' "

there he was buried

This can be translated in active form. AT: "that is where they buried him" or "the Israelites buried him there" (See: Active or Passive)

Eleazar

This is the name of Aaron's son. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:8-9

UDB:

[8] At that time, Yahweh chose the tribe of Levi to carry the chest that contained the tablets on which were written the Ten Commandments, and to stand in Yahweh's presence in the sacred tent, to offer sacrifices, and to pray for Yahweh to bless the people. They are still doing those things at the present time. [9] That is the reason that the tribe of Levi did not receive any land like the other tribes did. What they received was the honor of being Yahweh's priests, which is what he said that they should do.)

ULB:

[8] At that time Yahweh chose the tribe of Levi to carry the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, to stand before Yahweh to serve him, and to bless people in his name, as today. [9] Therefore Levi has no portion nor inheritance of land with his brothers; Yahweh is his inheritance, as Yahweh your God spoke to him.)

translationNotes

General Information:

The writer gives background information about the tribe of Levi. (See: Background Information)

to stand before Yahweh to serve him

This is an idiom. "to offer the sacrifices that Yahweh requires" (See: Idiom)

in his name

Here "name" refers to authority. AT: "as representatives of Yahweh" (See: Metonymy)

as today

"as they are doing today"

no portion nor inheritance of land

The tribe of Levi did not receive a portion of the promised land when they arrived there. The full meaning of this statement may be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Yahweh is his inheritance

Yahweh speaks of the special relationship that Aaron and his descendants will have with him as if Yahweh were something that they will inherit. AT: “Yahweh is what they will have” or “Yahweh will allow them to serve him and he will provide for them through that service”

Yahweh your God

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word “your” here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

spoke to him

“spoke to the tribe of Levi”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- bless, blessed, blessing
- name, names, named
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- brother, brothers
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:10-11

UDB:

10 Moses continued to speak: "I stayed on the mountain forty days and nights, just like I did the first time. I prayed to Yahweh, and he answered my prayers again and said that he would not destroy your ancestors. 11 Then Yahweh said to me, 'Continue your journey, going in front of the people, to occupy the land that I solemnly promised your ancestors that I would give to you.'"

ULB:

10 "I stayed on the mountain as at the first time, forty days and forty nights. Yahweh listened to me that time also; Yahweh did not wish to destroy you. 11 Yahweh said to me, 'Arise, go before the people to lead them on their journey; they will go in and possess the land that I swore to their ancestors to give to them.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses resumes reminding the people of Israel about what happened in the past.

as at the first time

"first" is the ordinal number for one. Here it refers to the first time Moses went up Mount Sinai to receive the stone tablets from Yahweh. "as I did the first time" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights" (See: Numbers)

destroy you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "you" here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

possess the land

"take the land" or "take possession of the land"

their ancestors

This refers to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

to give to them

“that I would give to you, their descendants”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:12-13

UDB:

12 "Now, you Israelite people, I will tell you what Yahweh our God says that you do. He requires you to honor him, to conduct your lives as he wants you to, to love him, and to serve him with all that you desire and all that you feel, 13 and to obey all of his commandments which I am giving to you today, so they will help you.

ULB:

12 Now, Israel, what does Yahweh your God require of you, except to fear Yahweh your God, to walk in all his ways, to love him, and to worship Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul, 13 to keep the commandments of Yahweh, and his statutes, which I am commanding you today for your own good?

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Now, Israel

Here the metonym "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. AT: "Now, people of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

what does Yahweh your God require of you, except to fear ... for your own good?

Moses uses a question to teach the people of Israel. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "this is what Yahweh your God requires you to do: to fear ... for your own good." (See: Rhetorical Question)

to walk in all his ways

Moses speaks as if obeying Yahweh were walking on a path. AT: "to obey all his commands" (See: Metaphor)

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom "with all ... heart" means "completely" and "with all ... soul" means "with all ... being." See how you translated these two phrases in Deuteronomy 4:29. (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- God
- fear, fears, afraid
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- love, loves, loving, loved
- worship
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:14-15

UDB:

[14] Do not forget that Yahweh our God owns even the sky and everything that is in it. He also owns the earth and everything that is on it. [15] But although he owns all those things, Yahweh also loved your ancestors; from all the people groups on the earth he chose us, their descendants, and we are still his people.

ULB:

[14] Behold, to Yahweh your God belongs heaven and the heaven of heavens, the earth, with all that is in them. [15] Only Yahweh took pleasure in your fathers so as to love them, and he chose you, their descendants, after them, more than any of the other peoples, as he does today.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they are one person. (See: Forms of You)

Behold

The word “behold” emphasizes that what is said next is important. “Pay attention” or “Look” or “Listen”

heaven ... earth

These words show two extremes, and are combined to mean that all things everywhere belong to Yahweh. (See: Merism)

the heaven of heavens

This refers to the highest places in the heavens. Everything in the heavens belong to God.

chose you

Here the word “you” refers to all the Israelites and is plural. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- love, loves, loving, loved
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:16-17

UDB:

16 So you must change your inner beings and stop being stubborn. 17 Yahweh our God is greater than all gods, and he is greater than all rulers. He is very powerful, more than others, and he does not accept bribes.

ULB:

16 Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stubborn no longer. 17 For Yahweh your God, he is God of gods and Lord of masters, the great God, the mighty one and the fearsome one, who favors no one and takes no bribes.

translationNotes

Therefore

“Because of this”

circumcise the foreskin of your heart

The word “foreskin” refers to the fold of skin on a man’s private parts that is removed during circumcision. Here Moses is referring to a spiritual circumcision. This means the people must remove the sin from their lives. (See: Metaphor)

God of gods

“the supreme God” or “the only true God”

Lord of masters

“the supreme Lord” or “the greatest Lord”

the fearsome one

“the one who causes people to fear”

translationWords

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- heart, hearts
- stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

- Yahweh
- God
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:18-19

UDB:

[18] He makes sure that orphans and widows are treated fairly. He loves even foreigners who live among us Israelite people, and he gives them food and clothes. [19] So you must love those foreigners too, because you were once foreigners when you were living in Egypt.

ULB:

[18] He executes justice for the fatherless and widow, and he shows love for the foreigner by giving him food and clothing. [19] Therefore love the foreigner; for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

He executes justice for the fatherless

“Yahweh makes sure that people treat the fatherless justly”

fatherless

These are children whose parents have both died and do not have relatives to care for them.

widow

A true widow is a woman whose husband has died and has no children to care for her in her old age.

Therefore

“Because of this”

translationWords

- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- love, loves, loving, loved
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:20-21

UDB:

[20] Be sure to honor Yahweh our God and worship only him. Be faithful to him, and say that he should punish you if you do not do what you promise. [21] He is the one whom you must praise. He is our God, and we have seen the great and awesome things that he has done for us.

ULB:

[20] You will fear Yahweh your God; him will you worship. To him you must cling, and by his name will you swear. [21] He is your praise, and he is your God, who has done for you these great and fearsome things, which your eyes have seen.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

him will you worship

"he is the one you must worship"

To him you must cling

To have a good relationship with Yahweh and to completely rely on him is spoken of as if the person were clinging to Yahweh. AT: "You must rely on him" or "He is the one you must rely on" (See: Metaphor)

by his name will you swear

To swear by the name of Yahweh means to make Yahweh the basis or the power on which the oath is made. Here "name" represents Yahweh himself. See how you translated a similar phrase in Deuteronomy 6:13. AT: "you will swear and ask Yahweh to confirm it" or "when you swear you will speak his name" (See: Metonymy)

which your eyes have seen

Here "eyes" refers to the whole person. AT: "which you yourselves have seen" (See: Synecdoche)

He is your praise

Possible meanings are 1) “He is the one you must praise” or 2) “It is because you worship him that other peoples will praise you”

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- Yahweh
- God
- worship
- name, names, named
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 10:22

UDB:

22 When our ancestors, Jacob and his family, went down to Egypt, there were only seventy of them. But now Yahweh our God has caused us to be as numerous as the stars in the sky."

ULB:

22 Your fathers went down into Egypt as seventy persons; now Yahweh your God has made you as many as the stars of the heavens.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they are one man, so "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

went down into Egypt

"traveled south to Egypt" or "went to Egypt"

seventy persons

"70 persons" (See: Numbers)

as many as the stars of the heavens

This emphasizes the large number of Israelites that were with Moses. AT: "more than you can count" (See: Simile)

translationWords

- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Yahweh
- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 10 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 10 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Therefore

This chapter begins with the word “therefore,” which looks back to the instructions Moses gave in the previous two chapters.

Special concepts in this chapter

Eyewitnesses

The instruction that Moses gives and the retelling of the great things Yahweh has done for Israel are very important. This is because the generation entering into the Promised Land did not witness many of these events. (See:)

Covenant

This chapter is included in the covenant God made with Moses, even though it is not explicitly said. (See: covenant, covenants, new covenant and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 11:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 11:1

UDB:

[1] "Because of all that Yahweh your God has done for you, you must love and continually obey all his rules and decrees and commandments.

ULB:

[1] Therefore you will love Yahweh your God and always keep his instructions, his statutes, his decrees, and his commandments.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

always keep

"always obey"

translationWords

- love, loves, loving, loved
- Yahweh
- God
- instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:2-3

UDB:

[2] It was you and your ancestors, not your children, whom he punished because you disobeyed him, putting you through many difficulties to teach and train you. So starting today, continue to think about how his punishment, his mighty power, and his great strength to do whatever he wants to do to you. [3] Remember the many different miracles that he performed in Egypt, miracles that showed how powerful and great he is. Think about what he did to the king of Egypt and to all the land that he ruled.

ULB:

[2] Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known nor have they seen the punishment of Yahweh your God, his greatness, his mighty hand, or his outstretched arm, [3] the signs and deeds that he did in the midst of Egypt to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and to all his land.

translationNotes

who have not known nor have they seen

"who have not experienced"

his mighty hand, or his outstretched arm

Here "mighty hand" and "outstretched arm" are metaphors for Yahweh's power. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: "or his mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

in the midst of Egypt

"in Egypt"

to all his land

Here "land" represents the people. AT: "to all his people" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished
- Yahweh
- God

- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- power, powers
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:4-5

UDB:

[4] Your children did not see the army of Egypt, or their horses and their chariots destroyed by Yahweh's power. Your children did not see how Yahweh caused the Sea of Reeds to flood and sweep away the army of Egypt as they were coming after their ancestors. Your children did not understand that Yahweh continues to make Egypt's army weak even to this day. [5] Your children do not know how Yahweh took care of their ancestors in the desert before they all came to this place.

ULB:

[4] Neither did they see what he did to the army of Egypt, to their horses, or to their chariots, how he made the water of the Sea of Reeds overwhelm them as they pursued after you, and how Yahweh has destroyed them until today, [5] or what he did for you in the wilderness until you came to this place.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the adult Israelites who were old enough to see what God did in Egypt.

Neither did they see what he did

"Neither did your children see what Yahweh did"

the army of Egypt

"the Egyptian soldiers"

they pursued after you

Here "you" means the Israelites who were alive about 40 years earlier.

to this place

This means the plain of the Jordan River Valley where Moses is speaking to them before they cross over into Canaan.

translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- chariot, chariots, charioteers
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- Yahweh
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:6-7

UDB:

[6] Think about what he did to Dathan and Abiram, the two sons of Eliab from the tribe of Reuben. While all of your ancestors were watching, the earth split open, and they fell into the opening and disappeared, along with their families and their tents, their servants, and their animals. [7] You and your ancestors have seen all these miracles that Yahweh performed.

ULB:

[6] They had not seen what Yahweh had done to Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab son of Reuben, how the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up, their households, their tents, and every living thing that followed them, in the middle of all Israel. [7] But your eyes have seen all the great works of Yahweh that he did.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to remind the adults to teach their children God's mighty deeds.

Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab

Moses is referring to an event in the past when Dathan and Abiram rebelled against Moses and Aaron. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Dathan ... Abiram ... Eliab

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

son of Reuben

"descendant of Reuben"

earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up

Yahweh causing the land to split open so that the people fell in is spoken of as if the land had a mouth and the ability to swallow people. (See: Personification)

every living thing that followed them

This refers to their servants and animals.

in the middle of all Israel

This means all the people of Israel witnessed what happened to Dathan, Abiram, their families, and their possessions.

But your eyes have seen

Here “eyes” represents the whole person. AT: “But you have seen” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Reuben
- earth, earthen, earthly
- household, households
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:8-9

UDB:

[8] So obey all the commandments that I am giving you today, in order that you will be strong and able to cross the river and occupy the land that you are about to enter, [9] and in order that you will live for a long time in that land, a land that Yahweh solemnly promised your ancestors that he would give to them and to their descendants, a land that is very fertile.

ULB:

[8] Therefore keep all the commandments that I am commanding you today, that you may be strong, and go in and possess the land where you are going over to possess it, [9] and that you may prolong your days in the land that Yahweh swore to your fathers to give to them and to their descendants, a land flowing with milk and honey.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

possess the land

“take the land”

where you are going over to possess it

The phrase “are going over” is used because the people of Israel will have to cross the Jordan River to enter into Canaan.

prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: “be able to live a long time” (See: Metaphor)

a land flowing with milk and honey

This is an idiom. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 6:3. AT: “a land where plenty of milk and honey flow” or “a land that is excellent for cattle and farming” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Yahweh
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- honey, honeycomb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:10-12

UDB:

[10] The land that you are about to enter and occupy is not like the land of Egypt, where your ancestors lived. In Egypt, after they planted seeds, it was necessary for them to work hard to water the plants that grew. [11] But the land that you are about to enter is a land where there are many hills and valleys, where there is plenty of rain. [12] Yahweh takes care of that land. He watches over it every day, from the beginning of each year to the end of each year.

ULB:

[10] For the land, where you go in to possess it, is not like the land of Egypt, from where you came, where you sowed your seed and watered it with your foot, like a garden of herbs; [11] but the land, where you go over to possess it, is a land of hills and valleys, and drinks water of the rain of the heavens, [12] a land that Yahweh your God cares for; the eyes of Yahweh your God are always upon it, from the beginning of the year to the end of the year.

translationNotes

watered it with your foot

Possible meanings are 1) "foot" is a metonym that represents the hard work of walking to carry water to the fields. AT: "worked hard to water it" or 2) they would use their feet to turn a water wheel that supplied water to the fields. (See: Metonymy)

garden of herbs

"vegetable garden" or "garden of vegetables"

drinks water of the rain of the heavens

The land receiving and absorbing a lot of rain is spoken of as if the land were drinking the water. AT: "the rain from the sky gives it plenty of water" (See: Personification)

the eyes of Yahweh your God are always upon it

Here "eyes" represents attention and care. AT: "Yahweh your God is always watching over it" (See: Metonymy)

from the beginning of the year to the end of the year

Here the two extremes "beginning" and "end" are used together to mean the entire year. AT: "continuously throughout the entire year" (See: Merism)

translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing
- seed, semen
- water, waters, watered, watering
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- God
- year, years

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:13-15

UDB:

[13] Today I am commanding you to love Yahweh our God and to serve him with your entire inner beings. If you do that, [14] each year he will send rain on your land at the right times. As a result, you will have grain and grapes to make wine and olives to make olive oil. [15] And he will cause grass to grow in your fields for your livestock to eat. You will have all the food that you want.

ULB:

[13] It will happen, if you will listen diligently to my commandments that I command you today, to love Yahweh your God and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul, [14] that I will give the rain of your land in its season, the former rain and the latter rain, that you may gather in your grain, your new wine, and your oil. [15] I will give grass in your fields for your cattle, and you will eat and be full.

translationNotes

It will happen, if

This means that what Yahweh promises will happen if the Israelites obey his commands.

that I command

Here “I” refers to Moses.

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom “with all your heart” means “completely” and “with … soul” means “with all your being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:29. AT: “with all your being” or “with all your energy” (See: Idiom and Doublet)

I will give the rain of your land in its season

“I will cause it to rain on your land in the proper season”

I will give

Here “I” refers to Yahweh. This can be stated in the third person. AT: “Yahweh will give” or “He will give”

the former rain and the latter rain

This refers to rain at the beginning of the sowing season and rain for maturing the crops for harvest. AT: “the autumn rain and spring rain” or “the rain in the right seasons”

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- love, loves, loving, loved
- Yahweh
- God
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:16-17

UDB:

16 But I warn you, do not stop worshiping Yahweh our God; do not start to worship other gods, 17 because if you do that, Yahweh will become very angry with you. He will prevent any rain from falling. As a result, the crops will not grow, and you will soon die from hunger in the good land that Yahweh is about to give to you.

ULB:

16 Pay attention to yourselves so that your heart is not deceived, and you turn aside and worship other gods and bow down to them; 17 so that the anger of Yahweh is not kindled against you; and so that he does not shut up the heavens so that there will be no rain, and the land will not yield its fruit, and so that you perish quickly from off the good land that Yahweh is giving you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Pay attention to yourselves

"Be careful" or "Beware"

so that your heart is not deceived

Here "heart" represents a person's desires or thoughts. This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that your desires do not deceive you" or "so that you do not deceive yourself" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

you turn aside and worship other gods

Rejecting Yahweh and worshiping other gods is spoken of as if the person would physically turn and go in a different direction away from Yahweh. AT: "you start worshiping other gods" (See: Metaphor)

so that the anger of Yahweh is not kindled against you

God becoming angry is spoken of as if it were a fire that were starting. This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that Yahweh does not become angry with you" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

so that he does not shut up the heavens so that there will be no rain, and the land will not yield its fruit

God causing no rain to fall from the sky is spoken of as if he were closing the sky. AT: “so that he does not cause the rain to stop falling from the sky so that crops will not grow in the land” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- anger, angered, angry
- Yahweh
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:18-19

UDB:

[18] So, keep thinking about what Yahweh has commanded you. Write these words on tiny scrolls and fasten them to your arms, and write them on bands that you fasten to your foreheads to help you to remember them. [19] Teach them to your children again and again. Talk about them all the time: When you are in your houses and when you are walking outside; talk about them when you are lying down and when you are doing things.

ULB:

[18] Therefore lay up these words of mine in your heart and soul, bind them as a sign on your hand, and let them be as frontlets between your eyes. [19] You will teach them to your children and talk about them when you sit in your house, when you walk on the road, when you lie down, and when you get up.

translationNotes

lay up these words of mine in your heart and soul

A person always thinking about and considering what Moses commands is spoken of as if the heart and soul were a container and Moses's words were the content to fill the container. AT: "be very careful to remember these words that I am saying to you" (See: Metaphor)

these words of mine

"these commands that I have given you"

your heart and soul

Here "heart" and "soul" represent a person's mind or thoughts. (See: Metonymy)

bind them

"tie these words." This is a metonym that represents a person writing the words on a parchment, putting the parchment in a pouch, and tying the pouch. This metonymy in turn may be a metaphor meaning the people must be careful to obey Moses's commands. See how you translated similar phrases in Deuteronomy 6:8. (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

as a sign on your hand

"as something to make you remember my laws"

let them be as frontlets between your eyes

"let my words be as as frontlets between your eyes." This is a metonym that represents a person writing Moses' words on parchement, putting the parchement in a pouch, and tying the pouch so it sits between his eyes. This metonymy in turn may be a metaphor that means the person must be careful to obey all of Moses' commands. See how you translated similar phrases in Deuteronomy 6:8. (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

frontlets

ornaments a person wears on the forehead

when you sit in your house, when you walk on the road, when you lie down, and when you get up

Using the different places "in your house" and "on the road," and the opposites "when you lie down" and "get up," represent anywhere, anytime. The people of Israel were to discuss God's commandments and teach them to their children anytime and anywhere. (See: Merism)

translationWords

- word, words
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls
- bind, bond, bound
- sign, signs, proof, reminder

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:20-21

UDB:

[20] Write them on the doorposts and on the gates of your cities. [21] Do that in order that you and your children will live for such a very long time in the land that Yahweh promised to our ancestors that he would give to them. That land will belong to you and your descendants as long as there is a sky above the earth.

ULB:

[20] You will write them on the doorposts of your house and on your city gates, [21] that your days and the days of your children may be multiplied in the land that Yahweh swore to your ancestors to give them for as long as the heavens are above the earth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

You will write them on the doorposts of your house and on your city gates

See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 6:9.

that your days and the days of your children may be multiplied

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that Yahweh may cause you and your children to live a long time” (See: Active or Passive)

to your ancestors

This refers to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

to give them for as long as the heavens are above the earth

This compares how long the people could stay in the land to how long the sky will exist above the earth. This is a way of saying “forever.” AT: “to give them as a possession forever” or “to allow them to live there forever” (See: Simile)

translationWords

- doorpost
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- day, days
- multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication
- Yahweh
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:22-23

UDB:

[22] Faithfully continue to obey what I am commanding you to do—to love Yahweh our God, and to conduct your lives as he wants you to do, and to be faithful to him. [23] If you do that, Yahweh will drive out all the people groups in that land as you advance, people groups that are more numerous and more powerful than you are.

ULB:

[22] For if you diligently keep all these commandments that I am commanding you, so as to do them, to love Yahweh your God, to walk in all his ways, and to cling to him, [23] then Yahweh will drive out all these nations from before you, and you will dispossess nations larger and mightier than yourselves.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

For if you diligently keep all these commandments that I am commanding you, so as to do them

"For if you are careful to do everything that I have commanded you"

walk in all his ways

How Yahweh wants a person to live and behave is spoken of as if they are Yahweh's ways or roads. A person obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if he were walking on Yahweh's ways or roads. (See: Metaphor)

to cling to him

To have a good relationship with Yahweh and to completely rely on him is spoken of as if the person were clinging to Yahweh. AT: "to rely on him" or "to have a good relationship with him" Look at how similar words are translated in Deuteronomy 10:20. (See: Metaphor)

all these nations from before you, and you will dispossess nations

Here "nations" represent the people groups already living in Canaan. AT: "all of these people groups from before you, and you will take the land from people groups" (See: Metonymy)

larger and mightier than yourselves

Although Israel's army is smaller and weaker than the people groups living in Canaan, Yahweh will enable the people of Israel to defeat them.

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- love, loves, loving, loved
- Yahweh
- God
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- nation, nations
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:24-25

UDB:

[24] All the ground in that land on which you walk will be yours. Your territory will extend from the desert in the south to the Lebanon Mountains in the north, and from the Euphrates River in the east to the Mediterranean Sea in the west. [25] Yahweh our God will cause all the people in that land to be very afraid of you, which is what he promised, with the result that no people group will be able to stop you.

ULB:

[24] Every place where the sole of your foot will tread will be yours; from the wilderness to Lebanon, from the river, the Euphrates River, to the western sea will be your border. [25] No man will be able to stand before you. Yahweh your God will lay the fear of you and the terror of you upon all the land that you tread on, as he has said to you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Every place where the sole of your foot will tread

Here “the sole of your foot” represents the whole person. AT: “Every place you go” (See: Synecdoche)

from the river, the Euphrates River

“from the Euphrates River”

No man will be able to stand before you

The phrase “stand before you” is an idiom. AT: “No one will be able to stop you” or “No one will be able to oppose you”

Yahweh your God will lay the fear of you and the terror of you upon all the land that you tread on

Yahweh causing the people to be very afraid is spoken of as if fear and terror were an object that he will place on the people. AT: “Yahweh your God will cause the people in every place you go to be very afraid of you” (See: Metaphor)

the fear of you and the terror of you

The words “fear” and “terror” mean the same thing and emphasize the intensity of fear. AT: “a terrible fear of you” (See: Doublet)

upon all the land that you tread on

Here “the land” is a metonym for all the people in the land. AT: “upon all the people in every place you go” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Lebanon
- Euphrates River, the River
- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea
- fear, fears, afraid
- terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:26-28

UDB:

[26] Listen carefully: Today I am telling you that Yahweh will either bless you or he will curse you. [27] If you obey the commandments of Yahweh our God that I am giving to you today, he will bless you. [28] But if you do not obey them, and if you stop worshiping him and start worshiping other gods to whom you were never faithful before, he will curse you.

ULB:

[26] Look, I set before you today a blessing and a curse: [27] the blessing, if you obey the commandments of Yahweh your God that I command you today, [28] and the curse, if you do not obey the commandments of Yahweh your God, but turn aside from the way that I command you today, to go after other gods that you have not known.

translationNotes

General Information:

Here Moses summarizes the two options the people of Israel could choose. They could choose to obey and receive God's blessing or they could choose to disobey and receive God's punishment.

Look

"Pay attention"

I set before you today a blessing and a curse

Allowing the people to choose whether they want God to bless them or curse them is spoken of as if a blessing and a curse were objects that Moses is setting in front of them. AT: "Today you must choose whether God will bless you or curse you" (See: Metaphor)

the blessing, if you ... the curse, if you

The abstract nouns "blessings" and "curse" can be translated with verbs. AT: "God will bless you if you ... God will curse you if you" (See: Abstract Nouns)

but turn aside from the way that I command you today, to go after other gods

The commands of Yahweh that Moses is telling the people are spoken of as if they were God's way or road. To not obey God's commands is spoken of as if people physically were to turn in another direction away from Yahweh to follow other gods. AT: "but stop obeying what I command you today, in order to worship other gods" (See: Metaphor)

other gods that you have not known

This refers to the gods that other people groups worship. The Israelites know Yahweh because he has revealed himself to them and they have experienced his power.

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:29-30

UDB:

[29] And when Yahweh brings you into the land that you are about to enter and occupy, some of you must stand on top of Mount Gerizim and proclaim what will cause Yahweh to bless you, and the others must stand on top of Mount Ebal and proclaim what will cause Yahweh to curse you." [30] (Those two mountains are west of the Jordan River, west of the plain along the Jordan, in the land where the Canaanites live. They live close to the sacred trees near Gilgal.)

ULB:

[29] It will happen, when Yahweh your God brings you into the land which you go to possess, that you will set the blessing on Mount Gerizim, and the curse on Mount Ebal. [30] Are they not beyond the Jordan, west of the western road, in the land of the Canaanites who live in the Arabah, over against Gilgal, beside the oaks of Moreh?

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

you will set the blessing on Mount Gerizim, and the curse on Mount Ebal

The blessing and the curse are spoken of as if they were objects that someone will set on the mountains. AT: "some of you must stand on top of Mount Gerazim and proclaim what will cause Yahweh to bless you, and the others must stand on top of Mount Ebal and proclaim what will cause Yahweh to curse you" (See: Metaphor)

Mount Gerizim ... Mount Ebal

These are names of mountains on the west side of the Jordan River. (See: How to Translate Names)

Are they not beyond the Jordan ... Moreh?

The Israelites are on the eastern side of the Jordan River. Moses uses a question to remind the people where these mountains are located. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "As you know, they are beyond the Jordan ... Moreh." (See: Rhetorical Question)

beyond the Jordan

"on the west side of the Jordan River"

west of the western road

"in the west"

over against Gilgal

"near Gilgal" This may not be the same place as the city near Jericho. Moses may be referring to a place that is near Shechem. (See: How to Translate Names)

oaks of Moreh

These are sacred trees near Gilgal. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Arabah
- Gilgal
- oak, oaks

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 11:31-32

UDB:

[31] "You will soon cross the Jordan River to occupy the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you. When you enter that land and start to live there, [32] be sure to obey all the rules and decrees that I am giving to you today."

ULB:

[31] For you are to cross over the Jordan to go in to possess the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, and you will possess it and live in it. [32] You will keep all the statutes and the decrees that I set before you today.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

all the statutes and the decrees

These are the statutes and decrees Moses will give in Deuteronomy 12-26.

I set before you today

This does not mean these are new. Moses is reviewing the same statutes and decrees that he gave 40 years earlier.

I set before you

God's statutes and decrees, which Moses is telling the people, are spoken of as if they were objects that Moses is setting before the people. AT: "I am giving to you" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Covenant with Moses

This chapter is a continuation of the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. The reasons for these food restrictions are not always known.(See: covenant, covenants, new covenant and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Israel and Yahweh

In the ancient Near East, when nations conquered other nations, they often added the gods of the conquered nation into their collection of gods they worshiped. It was rare to worship only one God. Israel was to be known for worshiping Yahweh and Yahweh alone. (See: god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 12:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 12:1-2

UDB:

[1] "I will now tell you the rules and decrees that you must faithfully obey in the land that Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, is giving to you to occupy. You must obey these laws all the time that you are alive. [2] When you drive out those people groups whose land you will take, you must destroy all the places where they worshiped their gods, places on the tops of mountains and hills and beside large trees.

ULB:

[1] These are the statutes and the decrees that you will keep in the land that Yahweh, the God of your fathers, has given you to possess, all the days that you live on the earth. [2] You will surely destroy all the places where the nations that you will dispossess worshiped their gods, on the high mountains, on the hills, and under every green tree.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still talking to the people of Israel.

you will keep

"you must obey"

all the days that you live on the earth

The phrase "live on the earth" is an idiom that means as long as a person lives. AT: "for as long as you live" (See:Idiom)

You will surely destroy

"You must destroy"

the nations that you will dispossess

Here "nations" represents the people groups that live in Canaan. AT: "the people groups whose land you will take" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Promised Land
- Yahweh
- God
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- day, days
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- nation, nations
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:3-4

UDB:

[3] You must tear down their altars and smash their pillars. Burn the statues of their goddess Asherah and chop down their carved figures, in order that no one will ever worship them in those places again.

[4] Do not worship Yahweh like the people in Canaan worship their gods.

ULB:

[3] You must break down their altars, dash in pieces their stone pillars, and burn their Asherah poles. You must cut down the carved figures of their gods and destroy their name out of that place. [4] You will not worship Yahweh your God like that.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still talking to the people of Israel.

You must break down their altars

"you must pull apart the altars of those nations" or "you must destroy the altars of those nations"

dash in pieces

"break into pieces" or "shatter"

destroy their name

Here "their name" represents "the memory of them." AT: "destroy them so completely that no one will remember them" or "destroy anything that represents these false gods" (See: Metonymy)

that place

This refers to each place where the nations worshiped their gods.

You will not worship Yahweh your God like that

"You should not worship Yahweh your God like those nations worshiped their gods"

translationWords

- altar, altars
- column, columns, pillar, pillars
- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- name, names, named
- worship
- Yahweh
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:5-6

UDB:

5 Instead, you must go to the place that Yahweh will choose. It will be in the area where one of your tribes will live. That is where you must enter Yahweh's presence and worship him. 6 That is the place where you must bring your sacrifices that the priests will burn whole on the altar, and your other sacrifices that your yourselves present to me, your tithes, other offerings that you promise to give me, the firstborn animals from your cattle and sheep, or any other kind of offering.

ULB:

5 But to the place that Yahweh your God will choose out of all your tribes to put his name, that will be the place where he lives, and it is there that you will go. 6 It is there that you will bring your burnt offerings, your sacrifices, your tithes, and the offerings presented by your hand, your offerings for vows, your freewill offerings, and the firstborn of your herds and flocks.

translationNotes

the place that Yahweh your God will choose out of all your tribes to put his name

Here "his name" refers to God himself. Yahweh will choose one location where he will live and people will come to worship him there. (See: Metonymy)

it is there that you will go

They will go to worship where God decides.

the offerings presented by your hand

Here "hand" represents the whole person. AT: "the offerings that you present" (See: Synecdoche)

your offerings for vows, your freewill offerings

"your offerings to fulfill a vow, your voluntary offerings." These are types of offerings.

the firstborn of your herds and flocks

God requires that the people give him every firstborn male of their livestock.

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- name, names, named
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- vow, vows, vowed
- freewill offering, freewill offerings
- firstborn
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:7

UDB:

[7] There, in the presence of Yahweh our God, you and your families will eat the good things that you have worked to produce, and you will be happy, because he has blessed you very, very much.

ULB:

[7] It is there that you will eat before Yahweh your God and rejoice about everything that you have put your hand to, you and your households, where Yahweh your God has blessed you.

translationNotes

It is there

This refers to the place that Yahweh will choose for the children of Israel to worship.

rejoice about everything that you have put your hand to

Here "put your hand to" represents the whole person and work that he has done. AT: "rejoice about all the work you have done" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- household, households
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:8-9

UDB:

[8] When you are in that land, you must not do some of the things that we have been doing. Until now, you have all been worshiping Yahweh the way you want to, [9] because you have not yet arrived in the land which he will allow you to permanently possess, where you will be able to live peacefully.

ULB:

[8] You will not do all the things that we are doing here today; now everyone is doing whatever is right in his own eyes; [9] for you have not yet come to the rest, to the inheritance that Yahweh your God is giving you.

translationNotes

You will not do all the things that we are doing here today

"You will not do as we are doing here today." This means that they would worship in the promised land differently than the way they were worshiping at that moment.

now everyone is doing whatever is right in his own eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: "everyone is doing what he considers to be right" or "now everyone is doing what he judges to be right" (See: Metaphor)

to the rest

The abstract noun "the rest" can be stated as a verb. AT: "to the land where you will rest" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to the inheritance that Yahweh your God is giving you

The land that God is giving to the people of Israel is spoken of as if it were a possession that a father leaves as an inheritance for his children. AT: "to the land that Yahweh your God is giving to you as a permanent possession" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Yahweh
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:10-11

UDB:

10 But when you cross the Jordan River, you will start to live in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you. He will protect you from all your enemies that will surround you, and you will live peacefully.

11 Yahweh will choose one place where he wants you to worship him. That is the place to which you must bring all the offerings that I command you to bring: The sacrifices that the priests will burn whole on the altar, your other sacrifices, other offerings that you yourselves decide to present, your tithes, and all the special offerings that you will solemnly promise to give to Yahweh.

ULB:

10 But when you go over the Jordan and live in the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, and he will give you rest from all your enemies round about, so that you live in safety.
11 Then to the place where Yahweh your God will choose to cause his name to live there—there you will bring everything I command you: your burnt offerings, your sacrifices, your tithes, and the offerings presented by your hand, and all your choice offerings for vows that you will vow to Yahweh.

translationNotes

live in the land

This refers to the land of Canaan.

in the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit

God giving the land of Canaan to the people of Israel is spoken of as if he were a father giving an inheritance to his children. (See: Metaphor)

he will give you rest from all your enemies round about

“he will give you peace from all your enemies around you”

Then to the place where Yahweh your God will choose to cause his name to live there

Here “name” represents God himself. AT: “Then to the place where Yahweh your God will choose to live” (See: Metonymy)

the offerings presented by your hand

Here “hand” represents the whole person. AT: “the offerings that you present” (See: Synecdoche)

all your choice offerings for vows

“all your voluntary offerings to fulfill vows”

translationWords

- Jordan River, Jordan
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Yahweh
- God
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- name, names, named
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- vow, vows, vowed

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:12

UDB:

12 Rejoice there in the presence of Yahweh, along with your children, your male and female servants, and the descendants of Levi who live in your towns. Do not forget that the descendants of Levi will not have their own land, like you do.

ULB:

12 You will rejoice before Yahweh your God—you, your sons, your daughters, your male servants, your female servants, and the Levites who are within your gate, because he has no portion or inheritance among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

rejoice before Yahweh

"rejoice in the presence of Yahweh"

the Levites who are within your gate

Here "gates" is a reference to the city itself. AT: "the Levites who live inside your city" or "the Levites living with you" (See: Synecdoche)

because he has no portion or inheritance among you

The fact that Yahweh would not give any of the land to the Levites is spoken of as if a father were not giving them an inheritance. (See: Metaphor)

he has no portion

Here "he" refers to Levi. Levi represents all of his descendants. AT: "they have no portion" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:13-14

UDB:

13 Be sure that you do not offer burn animals as sacrifices anywhere you want to. 14 You must offer them only in the place that Yahweh will choose for you, in an area that belongs to one of your tribes. That is the only place where he wants you to offer sacrifices that the priests will burn whole on the altar, and to do the other things that I am commanding you to do when you worship him.

ULB:

13 Pay attention to yourself that you do not offer your burnt offerings at every place that you see;
14 but it is at the place that Yahweh will choose among one of your tribes that you will offer your burnt offerings, and there you will do everything that I command you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Pay attention to yourself

“Be careful”

every place that you see

“any place that pleases you” or “wherever you want”

but it is at the place that Yahweh will choose

The burnt offerings are to be made at the tabernacle. Yahweh himself would choose where the tabernacle would be located.

translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:15-16

UDB:

15 However, God will permit you to kill and eat the meat of your animals in the places where you live. As often as you want to, you may eat meat from the animals that Yahweh our God will bless you by giving them to you. Those who are at that time clean or unclean may all eat that meat, just like you would eat the meat of a deer or an antelope. 16 But you must not eat the blood of any animal; you must let the blood drain onto the ground before you cook the meat.

ULB:

15 However, you may kill and eat animals within all your gates, as you wish, receiving the blessing of Yahweh your God for all that he has given you; the unclean and the clean persons both may eat of it, animals such as the gazelle and the deer. 16 But you will not eat the blood; you will pour it out on the earth like water.

translationNotes

However, you may kill and eat animals within all your gates

The people could only kill animals as sacrifices in the place that Yahweh would choose. They could kill animals for food anywhere they wanted. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

within all your gates

Here “gates” represents the whole city. AT: “inside your city” or “at your homes” (See: Synecdoche)

the unclean ... persons

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

the clean persons

A person who is acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: Metaphor)

the gazelle and the deer

These are wild animals with long thin legs that can run quickly. AT: “the antelope and the deer” (See: Translate Unknowns)

But you will not eat the blood

The blood represents life and God did not allow the people to eat the blood along with the meat. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- bless, blessed, blessing
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- blood
- earth, earthen, earthly
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:17

UDB:

17 In the places where you live, you must not eat the things that you are offering to Yahweh: You must not eat the tithes of your grain or of your wine, or of your olive oil, or the firstborn of your cattle and sheep, or the offerings that you yourselves decide to present to Yahweh, or any other offerings.

ULB:

17 You may not eat within your gates from the tithe of your grain, your new wine, your oil, or the firstborn of your herd or flock; and you may not eat any of the meat you sacrifice along with any of your vows that you make, nor that of your freewill offerings, nor that of the offering you present with your hand.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses describes to the people all the special offerings and sacrifices that are to be made at the tabernacle.

within your gates

Here “gates” represents the whole city. AT: “inside your city” or “at your homes” (See: Synecdoche)

nor that of the offering you present with your hand

Here “hand” represents the whole person. AT: “nor that of any offering which you bring to Yahweh” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- firstborn
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- vow, vows, vowed
- freewill offering, freewill offerings

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:18-19

UDB:

18 Instead, you and your children and your male and female servants and the descendants of Levi who live in your towns must eat those things in the presence of Yahweh in the place that he chooses. And you should be happy about everything that you have done. 19 Be sure that you take care of the descendants of Levi all during the time that you live in your land.

ULB:

18 Instead, you will eat them before Yahweh your God in the place that Yahweh your God will choose—you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, and the Levite who is within your gates; you will rejoice before Yahweh your God about everything to which you put your hand. 19 Pay attention to yourself so that you do not forsake the Levite as long as you live on your land.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.

you will eat them

“you will eat your offerings”

before Yahweh

”in the presence of Yahweh

the Levite who is within your gates

Here “gate” represents the whole city AT: “any Levite who lives inside your city” (See: Synecdoche)

everything to which you put your hand

Here “put your hand to” represents the whole person and work that he has done. AT: “rejoice about all the work you have done” (See: Synecdoche)

Pay attention to yourself

“Be careful”

that you do not forsake

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “that you take good care of” (See: Double Negatives)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:20

UDB:

20 When Yahweh our God gives you much more land than you will have at first—and he has promised to do this, and when you say, 'I would like some meat to eat,' you are permitted to eat meat whenever you want to.

ULB:

20 When Yahweh your God enlarges your borders, as he has promised you, and you say, 'I will eat flesh,' because of your desire to eat meat, you may eat meat, as your soul desires.

translationNotes

enlarges your borders

"enlarges your territory" or "gives you even more land"

you say, 'I will eat flesh,' because of your desire to eat meat

This is a quotation within a quotation. This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "and you decide that you want to eat meat" (See:Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

as your soul desires

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. AT: "as you want" or "as you crave" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- promise, promises, promised
- soul, souls

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:21-22

UDB:

[21] If the place that Yahweh our God chooses to be the place for you to worship him is far from where you live, you are permitted to kill some of your cattle or sheep that Yahweh has given to you, and you may eat that meat in the town where you live, just like I have told you to do. [22] Those who are either clean or unclean at the time may eat that meat, just like you would eat the meat of a deer or an antelope.

ULB:

[21] If the place that Yahweh your God chooses to put his name is too far from you, then you will kill some of your herd and your flock that Yahweh has given you, as I have commanded you; you may eat within your gates, as your soul desires. [22] Like the gazelle and the deer are eaten, so you will eat of it; the unclean and the clean persons may eat of it alike.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

chooses to put his name

Here “name” refers to God himself. Yahweh would choose a place where he will live and the people will come to worship him. AT: “chooses to dwell” (See: Metonymy)

within your gates

Here “gates” represents the whole city.” AT: “inside your city” or “within your community” (See: Synecdoche)

as your soul desires

Here “soul” refers to the whole person. AT: “as you desire” (See: Synecdoche)

Like the gazelle and the deer are eaten

This can be translated in active form. AT: “Just like you eat the gazelle and the deer” (See: Active or Passive)

gazelle and the deer

These are wild animals with long thin legs that can run quickly. See how you translated these in Deuteronomy 12:15.

the unclean ... persons

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

the clean persons

A person who is acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- name, names, named
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:23-25

UDB:

[23] But be sure that you do not eat the blood of any animal, because it is the blood that sustains life in living beings. You must not eat the life along with the meat. [24] Do not eat the blood; instead, let it drain onto the ground. [25] If you obey this command and do what Yahweh says is right for you to do, things will go well for you and for your descendants.

ULB:

[23] Only be sure that you do not consume the blood, for the blood is the life; you will not eat the life with the meat. [24] You will not eat it; you will pour it out on the earth like water. [25] You will not eat it, so that it may go well with you, and with your children after you, when you will do what is right in the eyes of Yahweh.

translationNotes

the blood is the life

Here the way that blood sustains life is spoken of as if the blood were life itself. AT: “the blood sustains life” or “the blood causes animals and people to live” (See: Metaphor)

you will not eat the life with the meat

The word “life” here represents the blood that sustains life. AT: “You will not eat what sustains life with the meat” or “you will not eat the blood, which sustains life, with the meat” (See: Metonymy)

what is right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “what is right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- blood
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- water, waters, watered, watering
- Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:26-27

UDB:

[26] But the offerings that Yahweh has told you to set aside for him, and the other offerings that you yourselves decide to give, you must take to the place that he will choose. [27] There the priest will burn those offerings on Yahweh's altar. He will kill the animals, drain out the blood, and throw some of it onto the sides of the altar. And you may eat some of that meat.

ULB:

[26] But the things that belong to Yahweh that you have and the offerings for your vows—you will take these and go to the place that Yahweh chooses. [27] There you will offer your burnt offerings, the meat and the blood, on the altar of Yahweh your God; the blood of your sacrifices will be poured out on the altar of Yahweh your God, and you will eat the flesh.

translationNotes

offerings for your vows

"offerings to fulfill vows" or "vow offerings"

the blood of your sacrifices will be poured out

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the priest will pour out the blood of the sacrifice" (See: Active or Passive)

you will eat the flesh

God's law specifies which parts of the animal are for the burnt offering, which parts are for the priest and which parts are for the offerer to eat. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "you will eat some of the meat" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- vow, vows, vowed
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- blood
- altar, altars

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:28

UDB:

28 Faithfully obey all these things that I have commanded you. If you do that, things will go well forever for you and your descendants, because you will be doing what Yahweh our God says is right for you to do and what pleases him.

ULB:

28 Observe and listen to all these words that I command you, that it may go well with you and with your children after you forever, when you do what is good and right in the eyes of Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Observe and listen to all these words that I command you

"Carefully listen to and obey everything that I am commanding you"

that it may go well with you and with your children after you

Here "children" means all of their descendants. AT: "that you and your descendants may prosper" (See: Synecdoche)

when you do what is good and right

The words "good" and "right" have similar meanings and emphasize the importance of right behavior. AT: "when you do what is right" (See: Doublet)

what is good and right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: "what is good and right in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be good and right" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

- children, child
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- good, goodness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:29-30

UDB:

[29] When you enter the land that you will occupy, as you advance, Yahweh our God will destroy the people groups that live there. [30] After he does that, be sure that you do not worship the gods that they have been worshiping, because if you do that, it will be like a trap that will catch you. Do not ask anyone about those gods, saying, 'Tell me how they worshiped their gods, in order that I can worship Yahweh in the same way.'

ULB:

[29] When Yahweh your God cuts off the nations from before you, when you go in to dispossess them, and you dispossess them, and live in their land, [30] pay attention to yourself that you are not trapped into following them, after they are destroyed from before you—trapped into investigating their gods, into asking, 'How do these nations worship their gods? I will do the same.'

translationNotes

cuts off the nations

Yahweh destroying the people groups in Canaan is spoken of as if he were cutting them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: Metaphor)

the nations

Here "nations" represents the people living in Canaan. (See: Metonymy)

when you go in to dispossess them, and you dispossess them

"when you take everything from them"

pay attention to yourself

"be careful"

that you are not trapped into following them ... trapped into investigating their gods, into asking

A person learning about and worshiping other gods is spoken of as if they are caught in a hunter's trap. This can be stated in active form. AT: "that you do not act like them ... that you do try to learn about their gods, asking" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

not trapped into following them

The Israelites worshiping idols as the people groups of Canaan worship idols is spoken of as if the Israelites were following behind the other people groups. (See: Metaphor)

after they are destroyed from before you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “after Yahweh destroys them before you” (See: Active or Passive)

into asking, ‘How do these nations worship their gods? I will do the same.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “into asking about how those people groups worship their gods so that you can do the same.” (See:Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- nation, nations
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- worship

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 12:31-32

UDB:

[31] Do not try to worship Yahweh our God like they have worshiped their gods, because when they worship them, they do disgusting things, things that Yahweh hates. The worst thing that they do is that they sacrifice their own children and burn them on their altars.

[32] Be sure to do everything that I have commanded you to do. Do not add anything to these commands, and do not take anything away from them.

ULB:

[31] You must not worship Yahweh your God in that way, for everything that is an abomination to Yahweh, things that he hates—they have done these with their gods; they even burn their sons and their daughters in fire for their gods.

[32] Whatever I command you, observe it. Do not add to it or take away from it.

translationNotes

Do not add to it or take away from it

They are not to create more laws nor are they to ignore laws that God has given them.

translationWords

- abomination, abominations, abominable
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping other gods

The people were required to listen to Yahweh's prophets unless they were encouraging the people to worship other gods. The punishment for anyone leading the people to worship other gods was death. These instructions were to keep Israel's worship of Yahweh pure. (See: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry and pure, purify, purification)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 13:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 13:1-3

UDB:

[1] Possibly there will be people among you who say that they are prophets. They may say that they are able to interpret the meaning of dreams or perform various kinds of miracles. [2] They will say those things in order to induce you to worship gods that you have never known about before. But even if what they predict happens, [3] do not pay attention to what they say. Yahweh our God will be testing you to find out if you love him with all your inner being.

ULB:

[1] If there arises among you a prophet or a dreamer of dreams, and if he gives you a sign or a wonder, [2] and if the sign or the wonder comes about, of which he spoke to you and said, 'Let us go after other gods, that you have not known, and let us worship them,' [3] do not listen to the words of that prophet, or to that dreamer of dreams; for Yahweh your God is testing you to know whether you love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

If there arises among you

"If there appears among you" or "If someone among you claims to be"

a dreamer of dreams

This is someone who receives messages from God through dreams.

a sign or a wonder

These two words have similar meanings and refer to various miracles. (See: Doublet)

comes about

"takes place" or "happens"

of which he spoke to you and said, 'Let us go after other gods, that you have not known, and let us worship them,'

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. AT: "and he tells you to serve and worship other gods which you have not known," (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Let us go after other gods

Worshiping other gods is spoken of as if they were going after or following other gods. AT: "Let us follow other gods" (See: Metaphor)

go after other gods, that you have not known

The phrase "gods, that you have not known" refers to the gods that other people groups worship. The Israelites know Yahweh because he has revealed himself to them and they have experienced his power.

do not listen to the words of that prophet, or to that dreamer of dreams

"do not listen to what that prophet say nor to what the dreamer of dreams says"

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom "with all your heart" means "completely" and "with ... soul" means "with all your being." These two phrases have similar meaning. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:29. AT: "with all your being" or "with all your energy" (See: Idiom and Doublet)

translationWords

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- dream
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- worship
- word, words
- Yahweh
- God
- test, tests, tested
- love, loves, loving, loved
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:4-5

UDB:

[4] You must conduct your lives as Yahweh our God wants you to, and you must honor him, do what he tells you to do, and trust in him.

[5] But you must execute anyone who falsely says that he is a prophet, or someone who falsely says that he can interpret dreams, or who tells you to rebel against Yahweh our God, who rescued your ancestors from being slaves in Egypt. People like that are only wanting to cause you to stop living as Yahweh has commanded you to do. Execute them to get rid of this evil among you.

ULB:

[4] You will walk after Yahweh your God, honor him, keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and you will worship him and cling to him. [5] That prophet or that dreamer of dreams will be put to death, because he has spoken rebellion against Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, and who redeemed you out of the house of bondage. That prophet wants to draw you out of the way in which Yahweh your God commanded you to walk. So put away the evil from among you.

translationNotes

You will walk after Yahweh your God

Obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if the people were walking after or following Yahweh. AT: “You will obey Yahweh” (See: Metaphor)

obey his voice

Here “voice” represents what Yahweh says. AT: “obey what he says” (See: Metonymy)

cling to him

To have a good relationship with Yahweh and to completely rely on him is spoken of as if the person were clinging to Yahweh. AT: “rely on him” (See: Metaphor)

will be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must kill” (See: Active or Passive)

he has spoken rebellion

The abstract noun “rebellion” can be stated as a verb. AT: “he has tried to make you rebel” (See: Abstract Nouns)

who redeemed you out of the house of bondage

Yahweh rescuing the people of Israel from being slaves in Egypt is spoken of as if Yahweh paid money to redeem his people out of slavery. AT: "who rescued you out of the place where you were slaves" (See: Metaphor)

the house of bondage

Here "house of bondage" represents Egypt where the people of Yahweh had been slaves. AT: "Egypt where you were slaves" (See: Metonymy)

draw you out of the way in which Yahweh your God commanded you to walk

How God wants a person to live or behave is spoken of as if it were a way or road on which God wants his people to walk. A person trying to cause someone else to stop obeying God is spoken of as if the person were trying to get the other person to stop walking on God's way or road. AT: "make you disobey what Yahweh your God commanded" (See: Metaphor)

So put away the evil from among you

Here "the evil" refers to the evil person or the evil behavior. This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. AT: "So you must remove from among the people of Israel the person who does this evil thing" or "So you must kill this evil person" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

translationWords

- walk, walks, walked, walking
- honor, honors
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices
- worship
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy

- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:6-7

UDB:

[6] It does not matter if even your brother or your daughter or your wife or some close friend secretly urges you and says 'Let us worship other gods, gods that neither you nor your ancestors have never known about.' [7] Some of them may encourage you to worship gods that people groups that live near you worship, or gods that groups who live far away worship.

ULB:

[6] Suppose that your brother, the son of your mother, or your son, or your daughter, or the wife of your bosom, or your friend who is to you like your own soul, secretly entices you and says, 'Let us go and worship other gods that you have not known, neither you nor your ancestors— [7] any of the gods of the peoples that are round about you, near to you, or far off from you, from the one end of the earth to the other end of the earth.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

wife of your bosom

A bosom is a person's chest. This is a idiom that he holds close to his chest, which means he loves and cherishes her. AT: "wife you love" or "wife you dearly embrace" (See: Idiom)

friend who is to you like your own soul

Here "soul" represents the person's life. This means the person cares for his friend as much as he cares for his own life. AT: "your dearest friend" or "a friend you love as much as you love yourself" (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

secretly entices you and says, 'Let us go and worship ... other end of the earth.'

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. AT: "secretly tries to convince you to go and worship ... other end of the earth." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

that are round about you

"that are around you"

from the one end of the earth to the other end of the earth

Here the reference to the two extremes of the earth means "everywhere on earth." AT: "throughout the entire earth" (See: Merism)

translationWords

- soul, souls
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- earth, earthen, earthly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:8-9

UDB:

[8] Do not do what they suggest. Do not even listen to them. Do not act mercifully toward them, and do not keep secret what they have done. [9] Execute them! You be the first one to throw stones at them to kill them; then everyone else must throw stones at them, too.

ULB:

[8] You must not give in to him or listen to him, and you must not permit your eye to pity him, and you must not spare him or conceal him. [9] Instead, you will surely kill him; your hand will be the first on him to put him to death, and afterwards the hand of all the people.

translationNotes

You must not give in to him

“Do not agree to what he wants”

you must not permit your eye to pity him

Here “your eye” refers to the whole person. AT: “you msut not look at him with pity” or “you must not show him mercy” (See: Synecdoche)

you must not spare him or conceal him

“you must not show him mercy or hide from others what he has done”

your hand will be the first on him to put him to death

This means that he was to throw the first stone at the guilty person. The word “hand” represents the whole person. AT: “you must be the first to strike him to kill him” (See: Synecdoche)

the hand of all the people

Here “hand” represents the whole person. AT: “the other people will join you” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:10-11

UDB:

10 Kill such people by throwing stones at them, because they are trying to cause you to stop worshiping Yahweh our God, who rescued your ancestors from being slaves in Egypt. 11 When they are executed, all the Israelite people will hear what happened, and they will become afraid, and none of them will do such an evil thing again.

ULB:

10 You will stone him to death with stones, because he has tried to draw you away from Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. 11 All Israel will hear and fear, and will not continue to do this kind of wickedness among you.

translationNotes

he has tried to draw you away from Yahweh

"to turn you away from Yahweh." A person trying to cause someone else to stop obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if the person were trying to cause someone to physically turn around and leave Yahweh. AT: "he has tried to make you disobey Yahweh" (See: Metaphor)

out of the house of bondage

Here "house of bondage" represents Egypt where the people of Yahweh had been slaves. AT: "out from the place where you were slaves" (See: Metonymy)

All Israel will hear and fear

It is implied that when the people hear about the person who was executed, they will be afraid to act like he did. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- stone, stones, stoning
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound
- Israel, Israelites
- fear, fears, afraid
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:12-14

UDB:

[12] When you are living in one of the towns in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, you may hear [13] that some worthless people among you are deceiving the people of their town, saying, 'Let us go and worship other gods.' [14] Examine the facts about it thoroughly. Suppose you find out that it is true that such a disgraceful thing has happened.

ULB:

[12] If you hear anyone say about one of your cities, that Yahweh your God gives you to live in: [13] Some wicked fellows have gone out from among you and have drawn away the inhabitants of their city and said, 'Let us go and worship other gods that you have not known.' [14] Then you will examine the evidence, make search, and investigate it thoroughly. When you discover that it is true and certain that such an abominable thing has been done among you, then you will take action.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Some wicked fellows have gone out from among you

The phrase "from among you" means that these wicked men were Israelites who lived in their communities.

have drawn away the inhabitants of their city and said, 'Let us go and worship other gods that you have not known.'

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. AT: "have persuaded those who live in their city to go and worship other gods that they have not known." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

have drawn away the inhabitants of their city

A person causing someone else to stop obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if the person has caused the other person to physically turn and leave Yahweh. (See: Metaphor)

examine the evidence, make search, and investigate it thoroughly

All of these phrases mean basically the same thing. Moses is emphasizing that they must carefully find out what truly happened at the city. (See: Doublet)

that such an abominable thing has been done among you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the people of the city have done such a terrible thing” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- true, truth, truths

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:15-16

UDB:

15 Then kill all the people in that town. And kill all their livestock, too. Destroy the town completely.
16 Gather all the possessions that belonged to the people who lived there and pile them up in the city plaza. Then burn the town and everything in it, as though it were an offering to Yahweh that was completely burned on the altar. The ruins must stay there forever; the town must never be rebuilt.

ULB:

15 You will surely attack the inhabitants of that city with the edge of the sword, completely destroy it and all the people who are in it, along with its livestock, with the edge of the sword. 16 You will gather all the spoil from it into the middle of its street and will burn the city, as well as all its spoil—for Yahweh your God. The city will be a heap of ruins forever; it must never be built again.

translationNotes

with the edge of the sword

Here “edge” represents the whole sword. AT: “with your swords” (See: Synecdoche)

all the spoil

“all the plunder.” This refers to the possessions and treasures that an army collects after winning a battle.

heap of ruins

“pile of ruins”

it must never be built again

This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one must ever rebuild the city” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- sword, swords, swordsmen
- livestock
- ruin, ruins, ruined
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 13:17-18

UDB:

[17] You must not take for yourselves anything that Yahweh has said must be destroyed, because if you do what I say, Yahweh will stop being angry with you, and he will act mercifully toward you. And he will cause you to have many children, which is what he promised our ancestors that he would do. [18] Yahweh our God will do all those things if you do what he is telling you to do, and if you obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today and do what Yahweh says is right for you to do.

ULB:

[17] None of those things set apart for destruction must stick in your hand. This must be the case, so that Yahweh will turn from the fierceness of his anger, show you mercy, have compassion on you, and make you increase in numbers, as he has sworn to your fathers. [18] He will do this because you are listening to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all his commandments that I am commanding you today, to do that which is right in the eyes of Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

None of those things set apart for destruction must stick in your hand

Yahweh cursing something and promising to destroy it is spoken of as if Yahweh were setting the object apart from other things. This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must not keep any of the things God has commanded you to destroy" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

must stick in your hand

This is a way of saying a person keeps something. AT: "must you keep" (See: Idiom)

Yahweh will turn from the fierceness of his anger

Yahweh no longer being angry is spoken of as his anger were an object and Yahweh physically turns away from it. AT: "Yahweh will stop being angry" (See: Metaphor)

to your fathers

Here "fathers" means ancestors or forefathers.

you are listening to the voice of Yahweh

Here "voice" represents what Yahweh says. AT: "you are obeying what Yahweh says" (See: Metonymy)

that which is right in the eyes of Yahweh your God

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “that which is right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “that which Yahweh your God considers to be right” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- anger, angered, angry
- mercy, merciful
- compassion, compassionate
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- voice, voices
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Law of Moses

This chapter is part of the law of Moses, which is part of the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Clean animals

There are animals which the law considered to be clean and unclean. The people were not allowed to eat the unclean animals. Scholars are uncertain about the reasons for the animals to be considered to be clean or unclean. The result of these food restrictions was a nation that was different than the nations surrounding it. (See: clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean and)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 14:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 14:1-2

UDB:

[1] We are people who belong to Yahweh our God. So when people die, do not show that you are grieving by gashing yourselves or by shaving the hair on your foreheads like the other people groups do. [2] We belong to Yahweh alone. Yahweh chose us from all the other people groups on the earth to be his special people.

ULB:

[1] You are the people of Yahweh your God. Do not cut yourselves, nor shave any part of your face for the dead. [2] For you are a nation that is set apart to Yahweh your God, and Yahweh has chosen you to be a people for his own possession, more than all peoples that are on the surface of the earth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

You are the people ... you are a nation ... has chosen you

All occurrences of "you" refer to the people of Israel. Moses was included as a part of the people. AT: "We are the people ... we are a nation ... has chosen us"

Do not cut yourselves, nor shave any part of your face for the dead

These were ways the people groups living in Canaan showed that they were grieving over people who had died. Moses is telling the people of Israel not to act like them. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Symbolic Action and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

nor shave any part of your face

"nor shave the front of your head"

For you are a nation ... surface of the earth

See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 7:6.

you are a nation that is set apart to Yahweh your God

Yahweh choosing the people of Israel to belong to him in a special way is spoken of as if Yahweh set them apart from all other nations. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh your God has set you apart from other nations" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Yahweh has chosen you to be a people for his own possession

This means basically the same thing as the first part of the sentence. They both mean that the people of Israel belong to Yahweh in a special way. (See: Parallelism)

a people for his own possession

"a people for his treasured possession" or "his people"

more than all peoples that are on the surface of the earth

"out of all the people groups in the world"

translationWords

- people of God, my people
- Yahweh
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- set apart
- God
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- earth, earthen, earthly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:3-5

UDB:

[3] Do not eat anything that Yahweh detests. [4] The animals whose meat you are permitted to eat are cattle, sheep, goats, [5] all kinds of deer, gazelles, wild goats, and mountain sheep.

ULB:

[3] You must not eat any abominable thing. [4] These are the animals that you may eat: the ox, the sheep, and the goat, [5] the deer, the gazelle, the roebuck, the wild goat, and ibex, and the antelope, and the mountain sheep.

translationNotes

You must not eat any abominable thing

The people of Israel were not supposed to eat anything that God said was unfit for eating.

the deer, the gazelle, the roebuck

These are all types of deer. If your language does not have a word for each animal it can be translated as “all kinds of deer.”

the gazelle

This is wild animal with long thin legs that can run quickly. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 12:15.

the roebuck

a type of deer (See: Translate Unknowns)

ibex, and the antelope

Both of these are types of antelope. If your language does not have a word for each animal it can be translated as “all kinds of antelope.”

ibex

a type of antelope (See: Translate Unknowns)

translationWords

-
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- deer, doe, does, fawns, roebuck, roebucks

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:6-7

UDB:

[6] Those are animals that have split hooves and that also chew the cud. [7] But there are other animals that chew the cud that you must not eat. Those are camels, rabbits, and rock badgers. They chew the cud, but their hooves are not split. So they are not acceptable for you to eat.

ULB:

[6] You may eat any animals that parts the hoof, that is, that has the hoof divided in two, and that chews the cud. [7] Nevertheless, you must not eat some animals that chew the cud or that have the hoof divided in two: the camel, the rabbit, and the rock badger; because they chew the cud but do not part the hoof, they are unclean to you.

translationNotes

that parts the hoof

"that have split hooves." This is a hoof that is split into two parts instead of being one whole.

chews the cud

This means the animal brings its food up from its stomach and chews it again.

rabbit

This is a small animal with long ears that usually lives in holes in the ground. (See: Translate Unknowns)

rock badger

This is a small animal that lives in rocky places. (See: Translate Unknowns)

they are unclean to you

Something Yahweh says is unfit for his people to eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- hoof, hoofs, hooves
- camel, camels
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:8

UDB:

[8] Do not eat pigs. They are unacceptable for you to eat; their hooves are split, but they do not chew the cud. Do not eat the meat of those animals; do not even touch their dead bodies.

ULB:

[8] The pig is unclean to you as well because he parts the hoof but does not chew the cud; he is unclean to you. Do not eat pig meat, and do not touch their carcasses.

translationNotes

The pig is unclean to you

Something Yahweh says is unfit for his people to eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- pig, pigs, pork, swine

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:9-10

UDB:

[9] You are permitted to eat any fish that has scales and fins. [10] But anything else that lives in the water that does not have scales and fins, you must not eat, because they must be unacceptable to you.

ULB:

[9] Of these things that are in water you may eat: whatever has fins and scales; [10] but whatever has no fins and scales you must not eat; they are unclean to you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Of these things that are in water you may eat

“You may eat these kinds of animals that live in the water”

fins

the thin, flat part which the fish uses to move through the water

scales

the small plates that cover the body of the fish

they are unclean to you

Something Yahweh says is unfit for his people to eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- water, waters, watered, watering
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:11-13

UDB:

[11] You are permitted to eat the flesh of any bird that is acceptable to Yahweh. [12] But eagles, vultures, osprey, [13] buzzards, and all kinds of kites you may not eat.

ULB:

[11] All clean birds you may eat. [12] But these are the birds that you must not eat: the eagle, the vulture, the osprey, [13] the red kite and black kite, any kind of falcon.

translationNotes

All clean birds

An animal that God says is fit for his people to eat is spoken of as if the animal were physically clean. (See: Metaphor)

eagle ... vulture ... osprey ... red kite ... black kite ... falcon

These are birds that are either awake at night or feed on small animals and dead animals. (See: Translate Unknowns)

translationWords

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- eagle, eagles
- kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:14-17

UDB:

[14] You are not permitted to eat all kinds of crows and ravens, [15] and the ostrich, and the night hawk, the sea gull, no kind of hawk, [16] the little owl, the great owl, the white owl, [17] pelicans, vultures that eat dead animals, cormorants.

ULB:

[14] You must not eat any kind of raven, [15] and the ostrich, and the night hawk, the sea gull, any kind of hawk, [16] the little owl, the great owl, the white owl, [17] the pelican, the carrion vulture, the cormorant.

translationNotes

raven ... cormorant

These are all types of birds that are either awake at night or feed on small animals and dead animals. (See: Translate Unknowns)

translationWords

- kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:18-20

UDB:

[18] And you are not permitted to each the stork, any kind of heron, the hoopoe, and the bat you must not eat.

[19] All insects with wings and which swarm are unacceptable to Yahweh; do not eat them. [20] But other insects with wings are acceptable to eat.

ULB:

[18] You must not eat the stork, any kind of heron, the hoopoe, and the bat. [19] All winged, swarming things are unclean to you; they must not be eaten. [20] You may eat all clean flying things.

translationNotes

stork ... heron, the hoopoe

These are types of birds that eat small animals and lizards. (See: Translate Unknowns)

the bat

animal with wings and furry body which is awake mainly at night and eats insects and rodents

All winged, swarming things

This means all flying insects that move in large groups.

are unclean to you

Animals that God says are unfit for his people to eat are spoken of as if the animals are physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

they must not be eaten

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must not eat them” (See: Active or Passive)

all clean flying things

Animals that God says are fit for his people to eat are spoken of as if the animals are physically clean. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:21

UDB:

[21] Do not eat any animal that has died naturally. You may allow foreigners who live among you to eat those things, or you may sell them to other foreigners. But you belong to Yahweh our God; those who belong to him are not permitted to eat the flesh of animals whose blood has not been drained out.

You must not cook a young sheep or goat in its mother's milk."

ULB:

[21] You must not eat of anything that dies of itself; you may give it to the foreigner who is within your towns, that he may eat it; or you may sell it to a foreigner. For you are a nation that is set apart to Yahweh your God. You must not boil a young goat in its mother's milk.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

anything that dies of itself

This means an animal that dies a natural death.

For you are a nation that is set apart to Yahweh your God

Yahweh choosing the people of Israel to belong to him in a special way is spoken of as if Yahweh set them apart from all other nations. This can be stated in active form. AT: "For Yahweh your God has set you apart from other nations" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- set apart
- Yahweh
- God
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:22-23

UDB:

[22] "Once each year you must set apart a tenth of all the crops that are produced in your fields. [23] Take them to the place that Yahweh our God will choose for you to worship him. There you must eat the tenth of your grain, your wine, your olive oil, and the meat of the firstborn male animals of your cattle and your sheep. Do this in order that you may learn to always honor Yahweh, the one who has blessed you by giving you these things.

ULB:

[22] You must surely tithe all the yield of your seed, that which comes out from the field year after year. [23] You must eat before Yahweh your God, in the place that he will choose as his sanctuary, the tithe of your grain, of your new wine, and of your oil, and the firstborn of your herd and your flock; that you may learn to always honor Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

tithe all the yield of your seed

This means they are to give one part out of every ten equal parts from their crops.

year after year

"every year"

before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh"

translationWords

- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- seed, semen
- year, years
- sanctuary
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- firstborn
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- honor, honors

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:24-25

UDB:

[24] If the place that Yahweh has chosen for you to worship him is very far from your home, with the result that you are not able to take there the tithes of your crops with which Yahweh has blessed you, do this: [25] Sell the tenth of your crops, wrap the money carefully in a cloth, and take it with you to the place of worship that Yahweh has chosen.

ULB:

[24] If the journey is too long for you so that you are not able to carry it, because the place that Yahweh your God will choose as his sanctuary is too far from you, then, when Yahweh God blesses you, [25] you will convert the offering into money, tie up the money in your hand, and go to the place that Yahweh your God will choose.

translationNotes

carry it

Here “it” refers to the tithe of crops and livestock.

you will convert the offering into money

“you will sell your offering for money”

tie up the money in your hand, and go

“put the money in a bag and take it with you”

translationWords

- sanctuary
- bless, blessed, blessing
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:26-27

UDB:

[26] There, with that money, you may buy whatever you want to—beef or lamb or wine or fermented drinks. And there, in the presence of Yahweh, you and your families should eat and drink those things and be happy. [27] But be sure to not neglect to help the descendants of Levi who live in your towns, because they will not own any land.

ULB:

[26] There you will spend the money for whatever you desire: for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for strong drink, or for whatever you desire; you will eat there before Yahweh your God, and you will rejoice, you and your household. [27] The Levite who is within your gates—do not forsake him, for he has no portion nor inheritance with you.

translationNotes

for whatever you desire

“for whatever you want”

before Yahweh

“in the presence of Yahweh”

The Levite who is within your gates

Here “gate” represents the entire city or town. AT: “Any Levite who lives in your towns” (See: Synecdoche)

do not forsake him

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “make sure to give some of your tithe to the Levite” (See: Double Negatives)

for he has no portion nor inheritance with you

The tribe of Levi did not receive a portion of land as their inheritance. Their share of the inheritance was the honor of serving Yahweh as his priests. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

no portion nor inheritance with you

God not giving land to the Levites is spoken of as if he were not giving them an inheritance. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

-
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- strong drink, strong drinks
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- household, households
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 14:28-29

UDB:

[28] At the end of every three years, bring a tithe of all your crops that have been produced in that year and store it in your towns. [29] That food will be for the descendants of Levi, because they will not have their own land, and for the foreigners who live among you, and for orphans and widows who live in your towns. They are permitted to come to where the food is stored and take what they need. Do that in order that Yahweh our God will bless you in everything that you do.

ULB:

[28] At the end of every three years you will present all the tithe of your produce in the same year, and you will store it up within your gates; [29] and the Levite, because he has no portion nor inheritance with you, and the foreigner, and the fatherless, and the widow who are within your gates, will come and eat and be satisfied. Do this so that Yahweh your God may bless you in all the work of your hand that you do.

translationNotes

every three years you will present all the tithe of your produce

Once every 3 years the Israelites were to store their tithes within their own towns so that it would be used to provide for the Levites, orphans, widows and foreigners. (See: Numbers)

within your gates

Here “gates” represents the entire city or town. AT: “inside your city” (See: Synecdoche)

because he has no portion nor inheritance with you

God not giving any land to the Levites is spoken of as if he were not giving them an inheritance. (See: Metaphor)

fatherless

These are children whose parents have both died and do not have relatives to care for them.

widow

This is a woman whose husband has died and has no children to care for her in her old age.

in all the work of your hand that you do

Here “hand” represents the whole person. This refers to the work that someone does. AT: “in all the work you do” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- year, years
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- Yahweh
- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Forgiveness of Debt

This chapter gives instructions about the necessity to regularly forgive debt among their fellow countryman. This prevented people from being trapped by their poverty.

Justice

As Yahweh's chosen nation, there must be justice in Israel. This chapter gives commands that encouraged justice by protecting the poor, servants and slaves. (See: chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect and just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 15:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 15:1-3

UDB:

[1] At the end of every seven years, you must cancel all debts. [2] Do it like this: Each of you who has lent money to a fellow Israelite must cancel that debt. You must not insist that he pay it back. You must do that because Yahweh has declared that the debts must be canceled every seven years. [3] During that year you may require foreigners who live among you to pay what they owe you, but you must not demand that from any fellow Israelite.

ULB:

[1] At the end of every seven years, you must cancel debts. [2] This is the manner of the release: Every creditor will cancel that which he has lent to his neighbor; he will not demand it from his neighbor or his brother because Yahweh's cancellation of debts has been proclaimed. [3] From a foreigner you may demand it; but whatever of yours is with your brother your hand must release.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

seven years

"7 years" (See: Numbers)

you must cancel debts

"forgive every thing which people still owe you"

This is the manner of the release

"This is how to cancel the debts"

creditor

a person who lends money to other people

his neighbor or his brother

The words "neighbor" and "brother" share similar meanings and emphasize the close relationship that they have with their fellow Israelites. AT: "his fellow Israelite" (See: Doublet)

because Yahweh's cancellation of debts has been proclaimed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "because Yahweh has required that you cancel debts" (See: Active or Passive)

your hand must release

This is an idiom. AT: "you must not demand it back" or "you must not require repayment" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- year, years
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- brother, brothers
- proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:4-6

UDB:

4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. 6 Yahweh our God will bless you like he has promised to do, and you will be able to lend money to people of other people groups, but you will not need to borrow from any of them. You will control the finances of many people groups, but they will not control your finances.

ULB:

4 However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), 5 if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. 6 For Yahweh your God will bless you, as he promised you; you will lend to many nations, but you will not borrow; you will rule over many nations, but they will not rule over you.

translationNotes

no poor

The nominal adjective “poor” can be stated as an adjective. AT: “no poor people” or “no one who is poor” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

the land that he gives

This refers to the land of Canaan.

he gives you as an inheritance to possess

The land that Yahweh is giving to his people is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that Yahweh is giving them. (See: Metaphor)

if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God

Here the metonym “voice of Yahweh” refers to what Yahweh himself says. AT: “if only you are careful to obey what Yahweh your God says” (See: Metonymy)

you will lend ... you will not borrow

The word “money” is understood. You can make the full meaning of this statement clear. AT: “you will lend money ... you will not borrow money” (See: Ellipsis)

to many nations ... over many nations

Here "nations" represents the people. AT: "to the people of many nations ... over the people of many nations" (See: Metonymy)

you will rule over many nations, but they will not rule over you

Here "rule over" means to be financially superior. This means basically the same thing as the previous part of the sentence. (See: Parallelism)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- bless, blessed, blessing
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- voice, voices
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- promise, promises, promised
- nation, nations
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:7-8

UDB:

[7] In the towns that Yahweh our God is giving to you, if there are any Israelites who are poor, do not be selfish and refuse to help them. [8] Instead, be generous and lend them the money that they need.

ULB:

[7] If there is a poor man among you, one of your brothers, within any of your gates in your land that Yahweh your God is giving you, you must not harden your heart nor shut your hand from your poor brother; [8] but you must surely open your hand to him and surely lend him sufficient for his need.

translationNotes

If there is a poor man

Here “man” means a person in general. AT: “If there is a poor person”

one of your brothers

“one of your fellow Israelites”

within any of your gates

Here “gates” represents the entire city or town. AT: “within any of your towns” (See: Synecdoche)

you must not harden your heart

Being stubborn is spoken of as if the person hardened their heart. AT: “you must not be stubborn” (See: Metaphor)

nor shut your hand from your poor brother

A person who refuses to provide for a poor person is spoken of as if he were shutting his hand so that the poor person cannot get anything from him. AT: “nor refuse to help your fellow Israelite who is poor” (See: Metaphor)

but you must surely open your hand to him

A person who helps a poor person is spoken of as if he were opening his hand to him. AT: “but you must surely help him” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness
- heart, hearts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:9-10

UDB:

[9] Be sure that you do not say to yourself, 'The year when debts will be canceled is near, so I do not want to lend anyone any money now, because he will not need to pay it back when that year comes.' It would be evil to even think that. If you act in an unfriendly way toward a needy fellow Israelite, and give him nothing, he will cry out to Yahweh against you, and Yahweh will say that you have sinned by not helping that person. [10] Give freely to poor people and give generously. If you do that, Yahweh will bless you in everything that you do.

ULB:

[9] Be careful not to have a wicked thought in your heart, saying, 'The seventh year, the year of release, is near,' so that you will not be stingy in regard to your poor brother and give him nothing; he might cry out to Yahweh about you, and it would be sin for you. [10] You must surely give to him, and your heart must not be sorry when you give to him, because in return for this Yahweh your God will bless you in all your work and in all that you put your hand to.

translationNotes

not to have a wicked thought in your heart, saying

Here "heart" represents a person's mind. AT: "not to think a wicked thought" (See: Metonymy)

The seventh year, the year of release, is near

It is implied that because the year of release will happen soon, the person thinking this will be reluctant to help a poor person since it is likely that the poor person will not have to pay him back. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The seventh year

The word "seventh" is the ordinal number for seven. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

the year of release

"the year to cancel debts"

is near

Something that will happen soon is spoken of as if it were physically near. AT: "will happen soon" (See: Metaphor)

so that you will not be stingy in regard to your poor brother and give him nothing

“so that you are not stubborn and refuse to give anything to your fellow Israelite”

cry out to Yahweh

“shout to Yahweh for help”

it would be sin for you

“Yahweh will consider what you have done to be sinful”

your heart must not be sorry

Here “heart” represents the whole person. AT: “you should not regret it” or “you should be happy” (See: Synecdoche and Litotes)

in all that you put your hand to

Here “put your hand to” represents the whole person and work that he has done. AT: “in all that you do” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart, hearts
- cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- bless, blessed, blessing
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:11

UDB:

11 There will always be some poor people in your land, so I command you to give generously to poor people, to your fellow Israelites.

ULB:

11 For the poor will never cease to exist in the land; therefore I command you and say, 'You must surely open your hand to your brother, to your needy, and to your poor in your land.'

translationNotes

For the poor will never cease to exist in the land

This can be stated in positive form. AT: "For there will always be poor people in the land" (See: Double Negatives)

For the poor

The nominal adjective "the poor" can be stated as an adjective. AT: "For poor people" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

I command you and say, 'You must surely open your hand ... in your land.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "I command you to open your hand ... in your land" (See:Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

open your hand to your brother, to your needy, and to your poor

A person who is willing to help someone else is spoken of as if his hand were open. AT: "help your fellow Israelite, those who are needy, and those who are poor" (See: Metaphor)

your brother, to your needy, and to your poor

The words "needy" and "poor" mean basically the same thing and emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. AT: "help your fellow Israelites who cannot help themselves" (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- brother, brothers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:12-14

UDB:

[12] If any of your fellow Israelite men or women sell themselves to one of you to become your slave, you must free them after they have worked for you for six years. When the seventh year comes, you must free them. [13] When you free them, do not allow them to go empty-handed. [14] Instead, give to them generously from the things with which Yahweh has blessed you—sheep, grain, and wine.

ULB:

[12] If your brother, a Hebrew man, or a Hebrew woman, is sold to you and serves you for six years, then in the seventh year you must let him go free from you. [13] When you let him go free from you, you must not let him go empty-handed. [14] You must liberally provide for him out of your flock, out of your threshing floor, and out of your winepress. As Yahweh your God has blessed you, you must give to him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

If your brother

Here “brother” means an Israelite in general, whether a male or female. AT: “If a fellow Israelite” or “If a fellow Hebrew” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

is sold to you

If a person could not repay their debts, they sometimes sold themselves into slavery to pay what they owed. This can be stated in active form. AT: “sell themselves to you” (See: Active or Passive)

six years

“6 years” (See: Numbers)

seventh year

“year 7.” This “seventh” is the ordinal number for seven. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

you must not let him go empty-handed

A person who has no possessions to provide for himself or his family is spoken of as if his hands were empty. AT: “you must not let him leave without having anything to provide for himself and his family” (See: Metaphor)

liberally provide for him

“generously give to him”

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- Hebrew, Hebrews
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- year, years
- free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing
- winepress
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:15-17

UDB:

15 Do not forget that your ancestors were once slaves in Egypt and that Yahweh our God freed them. That is the reason that I am now commanding you to do this.

16 But one of your slaves may say, 'I do not want to leave you.' Perhaps he loves you and your family because you have treated him well. 17 If he says that, take him to the door of your house and, while he is standing against the doorway, pierce one of his earlobes with an awl. That will indicate that he will be your slave for the rest of his life. Do the same thing to any female slave who does not want to leave you.

ULB:

15 You must remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt, and that Yahweh your God redeemed you; therefore I am commanding you today to do this. 16 It will happen that if he says to you, 'I will not go away from you,' because he loves you and your house, and because he is well off with you, 17 then you must take an awl and thrust it through his ear to a door, and he will be your servant for life. You must do the same with your female servant.

translationNotes

remember that you were a slave

Here "you" includes their ancestors that were slaves for many years. AT: "remember that your people were once slaves" (See: Forms of You)

that Yahweh your God redeemed you

Yahweh rescuing the people of Israel from being slaves in Egypt is spoken of as if Yahweh paid money to redeem his people from slavery. (See: Metaphor)

if he says to you, 'I will not go away from you,'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "if he says to you that he will not go away from you," (See:Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

your house

Here "house" represents the person's family. (See: Metonymy)

then you must take an awl and thrust it through his ear to a door

“then you will place his head near a wooden door frame in your house, and then put the point of the awl through his earlobe into the wood”

awl

a sharp, pointed tool used to make a hole (See: Translate Unknowns)

for life

“until the end of his life” or “until he dies”

translationWords

- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- love, loves, loving, loved
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:18

UDB:

[18] Do not complain when you are required to free your slaves. Keep in mind that they served you for six years, and that you paid them only half as much as you pay the servants that you hire. If you free them, Yahweh our God will bless you in everything that you do.

ULB:

[18] It must not seem difficult for you to let him go free from you, because he has served you for six years and given twice the value of a hired person. Yahweh your God will bless you in all that you do.

translationNotes

It must not seem difficult for you to let him go free from you

This means that they are not resent it when they let someone go free. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Be pleased when you let him go free” (See: Litotes)

given twice the value of a hired person

This means the owner only had to pay have the amount for this slave to work than he would for a person he hired to do a job.

a hired person

This is a person who works for pay.

translationWords

- free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- year, years
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:19-21

UDB:

[19] Set aside for the honor of Yahweh our God the firstborn male animals from your cattle and sheep. Do not force them to do any work for you, and do not shear the wool of the firstborn animals. [20] You and your family must kill them and eat their meat in the presence of Yahweh at the place that he chooses for you to worship him. [21] But if the animals have any defects, if they are lame or blind, or if they have any other serious defect, you must not sacrifice them to Yahweh our God.

ULB:

[19] All the firstborn males in your herd and your flock you must set apart to Yahweh your God. You will do no work with the firstborn of your herd, nor shear the firstborn of your flock. [20] You must eat the firstborn before Yahweh your God year by year in the place that Yahweh will choose, you and your household. [21] If it has any blemish—for example, if it is lame or blind, or has any blemish whatever—you must not sacrifice it to Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

shear

to cut off wool or hair

before Yahweh

“in the presence of Yahweh”

year by year

“each year” or “every year”

lame

crippled or physically disabled

translationWords

- firstborn
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- set apart
- Yahweh
- God
- year, years
- household, households
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 15:22-23

UDB:

[22] You may kill and eat the meat of those animals in your towns. Those who have done things that cause them to become unacceptable to God and those who have not done such things are permitted to eat that meat, just like anyone is permitted to eat the meat of a gazelle or a deer. [23] But you must not eat any of the blood; you must drain all the blood on the ground when you kill those animals.

ULB:

[22] You will eat it within your gates; the unclean and the clean persons alike must eat it, as you would eat a gazelle or a deer. [23] Only you must not eat its blood; you must pour its blood out on the ground like water.

translationNotes

within your gates

Here “gates” represents the city or town. AT: “within your community” or “inside your city” (See: Synecdoche)

the unclean ... persons

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

the clean persons

A person who is acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: Metaphor)

a gazelle or a deer

These are wild animals with long thin legs that can run quickly. See how you translated these in Deuteronomy 12:15.

you must not eat its blood

“you must not consume its blood.” Yahweh did not allow Israelites to consume blood because the blood represented life. (See: Deuteronomy 12:23)

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- blood

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 15 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Festivals

This chapter retells the specific commands about how to celebrate the Passover. This recalled the Passover in Egypt, which was an important event in the formation of the nation of Israel. There are several other important festivals described in this chapter. (See: Passover)

Life in Israel

As Yahweh's chosen nation, there must be justice in Israel. Also, Yahweh must be the only God in Israel. He alone is to be worshiped. (See: chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect and just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 16:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 16:1-2

UDB:

[1] Each year honor Yahweh our God by celebrating the Passover Festival in the month of Aviv in early spring. It was on a night in that month that Yahweh rescued your ancestors from Egypt. [2] In order to celebrate that festival, go to the place that Yahweh will choose for you to worship him, and offer there one young animal from your cattle or your sheep to be the Passover sacrifice.

ULB:

[1] Observe the month of Abib, and keep the Passover to Yahweh your God, for in the month of Aviv Yahweh your God brought you out of Egypt by night. [2] You will sacrifice the Passover to Yahweh your God with some of the flock and the herd in the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

month of Aviv

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names)

keep the Passover

It is implied by "keep the Passover" that they would celebrate and eat the Passover meal. AT: "celebrate the Passover meal" or "eat the Passover meal" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

You will sacrifice the Passover

Here "Passover" represents the animal that is sacrificed for the Passover celebration. AT: For the Passover you will offer a sacrifice" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Passover
- Yahweh
- God

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- sanctuary

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:3-4

UDB:

[3] When you eat the Passover meal, the bread that you eat must not have yeast in it. You must eat this kind of bread, which will be called the bread of suffering, for seven days. This is to help you to remember all during the time that you are alive that when your ancestors left Egypt, where they were suffering because they were slaves, they left very quickly. They did not have time to put in yeast and wait for the dough to swell up. [4] During that festival, which will last for seven days, you must not have any yeast in any house in your land. Furthermore, the meat of the animal that you sacrifice on the evening of the first day of the Passover Festival must be eaten during that night; do not allow any of it to remain until the next day.

ULB:

[3] You will eat no leavened bread with it; seven days will you eat unleavened bread with it, the bread of affliction; for you came out of the land of Egypt in haste. Do this all the days of your life so that you may call to mind the day when you came out of the land of Egypt. [4] No yeast must be seen among you within all your borders during seven days; nor must any of the meat that you sacrifice in the evening on the first day remain until the morning.

translationNotes

with it

Here “it” refers to the animal they will sacrifice and eat.

seven days

“7 days” (See: Numbers)

the bread of affliction

This was the name of the unleavened bread. The full meaning can be stated explicitly. AT: “this bread will remind you of how much you suffered while in Egypt” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

out of the land of Egypt in haste

The people had to leave Egypt so quickly that they did not have enough time to make bread with yeast in it. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “out of the land of Egypt in such hurry you did not have time to make bread with yeast in it” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Do this all the days of your life

"Do this as long as you live"

call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "remember" (See: Idiom)

No yeast must be seen among you

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must not have any yeast among you" (See: Active or Passive)

within all your borders

"inside all your territory" or "in all your land"

first day

This "first" is the ordinal number for one. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

translationWords

- unleavened bread
- day, days
- bread
- afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:5

UDB:

5-6 To honor Yahweh our God, you must offer the Passover sacrifice only at the place that he chooses for you to worship him; do not offer that sacrifice in any other town in the land that Yahweh is giving to you. Offer that sacrifice when the sun is setting, at the same time of day that your ancestors started to leave Egypt.

ULB:

5 You may not sacrifice the Passover within any of your city gates that Yahweh your God is giving you. 6 Instead, sacrifice at the place that Yahweh your God will choose as his sanctuary. There you will perform the sacrifice of the Passover in the evening at the going down of the sun, at the time of year that you came out of Egypt.

translationNotes

You may not sacrifice the Passover

Here “Passover” represents the animal that will be sacrificed. AT: “For the Passover you may not sacrifice the animal” (See: Metonymy)

within any of your city gates

Here “gates” represents the cities or towns. AT: “within any of your towns” (See: Synecdoche)

at the going down of the sun

“at sunset”

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- sanctuary

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:7-8

UDB:

[7] Boil the meat and eat it at the place of worship that Yahweh our God chooses. The next morning, you may return to your tents. [8] Each day for six days the bread that you eat must have no yeast in it. On the seventh day, you must all gather to worship Yahweh our God. It will be a day of rest, you must not do any work on that day.

ULB:

[7] You must roast it and eat it at the place that Yahweh your God will choose; in the morning you will turn and go to your tents. [8] For six days you will eat unleavened bread; on the seventh day there will be a solemn assembly for Yahweh your God; on that day you must do no work.

translationNotes

You must roast it

"You must cook it"

six days

"6 days" (See: Numbers)

seventh day

"seventh" is the ordinal number for seven. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

solemn assembly

"special gathering"

translationWords

- tent, tents, tentmakers
- day, days
- unleavened bread
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:9-10

UDB:

[9] Each year, from the day that you start to harvest your grain, count seven weeks. [10] Then, to honor Yahweh our God, celebrate the Festival of Pentecost. Do that by bringing to him an offering of grain. Yahweh has blessed you by causing it to grow in your fields during that year. If you had a big harvest, bring a big offering. If you had a small harvest, bring a small offering.

ULB:

[9] You will count seven weeks for yourselves; from the time you begin to put the sickle to the standing grain you must start counting seven weeks. [10] You must keep the Festival of Weeks for Yahweh your God with the contribution of a freewill offering from your hand that you will give, according as Yahweh your God has blessed you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

count seven weeks

“count 7 weeks” (See: Numbers)

from the time you begin to put the sickle to the standing grain

The phrase “put the sickle to the standing grain” is a way of referring to the beginning of harvest time. AT: “from the time that you begin harvesting the grain” (See: Idiom)

sickle

a tool with a curved blade used for cutting grass, grain, and vines (See: Translate Unknowns)

with the contribution of a freewill offering from your hand that you will give

Here “hand” represents the whole person. AT: “and you will give your free will offering” (See: Synecdoche)

according as Yahweh your God has blessed you

“according to the harvest which Yahweh your God has given you” This means that the people will base how much they offer on how much they harvested that year.

translationWords

- week, weeks
- grain, grains, grainfields
- Pentecost, Festival of Weeks
- Yahweh
- God
- freewill offering, freewill offerings
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:11-12

UDB:

[11] Each married couple should be joyful in the presence of Yahweh. Their children, their servants, the descendants of Levi who are in that town, and the foreigners, orphans, and widows who are living among you, should also be joyful. Bring those offerings to the place of worship that Yahweh will choose.

[12] When you celebrate these festivals by obeying these commands, remember that your ancestors were slaves in Egypt.

ULB:

[11] You will rejoice before Yahweh your God—you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, the Levite who is within your city gates, and the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow who are among you, at the place that Yahweh your God will choose for his sanctuary. [12] You will call to mind that you were a slave in Egypt; you must observe and do these statutes.

translationNotes

your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, the Levite

These do not refer to a specific person. It means these types of people in general. AT: “your sons, your daughters, your male servants, your females servants, any Levite” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

within your city gates

Here “gates” represents cities or towns. AT: “within your towns” (See: Synecdoche)

the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow

This refers to these types of people in general. AT: “all foreigners, orphans, and widows” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

fatherless

These are children whose parents have both died and do not have relatives to care for them.

widow

This means a woman whose husband has died and has no children to care for her in her old age.

call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: “remember” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- sanctuary
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:13-14

UDB:

[13] Each year, after you have threshed all your grain and pressed the juice from all your grapes, you must celebrate the Festival of Shelters for seven days. [14] Each married couple along with their children, their servants, the descendants of Levi who are in that town, and the foreigners, orphans, and widows who are living among you, should be joyful in the presence of Yahweh.

ULB:

[13] You must keep the Festival of Shelters for seven days after you have gathered in the harvest from your threshing floor and from your winepress. [14] You will rejoice during your festival—you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, the Levite, and the foreigner, and the fatherless and the widow who are within your gates.

translationNotes

Festival of Shelters

Other names for this festival are “Feast of Tabernacles,” “Festival of Booths,” and “Feast of the Ingathering.” During harvest time, farmers would set up temporary shelters in the field. This festival took place after the last harvest of the year.

seven days

“7 days” (See: Numbers)

within your gates

Here the word “gates” represents cities or towns. AT: “within your towns” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- festival, festivals
- day, days
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing
- winepress
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:15

UDB:

15 Honor Yahweh our God by celebrating this festival for seven days in the place that he chooses for you to worship him. You should all be joyful, because Yahweh will have blessed your harvest and all the other work that you have done.

ULB:

15 For seven days you must observe the festival for Yahweh your God at the place that Yahweh will choose, because Yahweh your God will bless you in all your harvest and all the work of your hands, and you must be completely joyful.

translationNotes

the festival

"the Festival of Shelters"

all the work of your hands

Here "hands" represents the whole person. AT: "all the work you do" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:16-17

UDB:

16 So, each year all of you Israelite men must gather to worship Yahweh our God at the place that he will choose, to celebrate three festivals: The Festival of Bread with no Yeast, the Festival of Pentecost, and the Festival of Shelters. No one should come before Yahweh without an offering. Each of you men must bring an offering for Yahweh to these festivals. 17 The offerings should be in proportion to the blessings that Yahweh has given you during that year.

ULB:

16 Three times in a year all your males must appear before Yahweh your God at the place that he will choose: at the Festival of Unleavened Bread, at the Festival of Weeks, and at the Festival of Shelters. No one will appear before Yahweh empty-handed; 17 instead, every man will give as he is able, that you might know the blessing that Yahweh your God has given to you.

translationNotes

all your males must appear before Yahweh

Females were allowed, but Yahweh did not require that they come. The men could represent their whole families.

must appear before Yahweh

“must come and stand in the presence of Yahweh”

No one will appear before Yahweh empty-handed

“They will not come before Yahweh without an offering” These two negative phrases together have a positive meaning. AT: “Every person who comes before Yahweh must bring an offering” (See: Litotes)

translationWords

- year, years
- Yahweh
- God
- unleavened bread
- Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:18-20

UDB:

[18] Appoint judges and other officials throughout your tribes, in all the towns in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you. They must judge people fairly. [19] They must not judge unjustly. They must not favor one person more than another. The judges must not accept bribes, because if a judge accepts a bribe, even if he is wise and honest, it will be very difficult for him to judge fairly; he will do what the person who gave him the bribe wants him to do and declare that the innocent people must be punished. [20] You must be completely fair and just, in order that you may live long enough to occupy the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you.

ULB:

[18] You must make judges and officers within all your city gates that Yahweh your God is giving you; they will be taken from each of your tribes, and they must judge the people with righteous judgment. [19] You must not take justice away by force; you must not show partiality nor take a bribe, for a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise and perverts the words of the righteous. [20] You must follow after justice, after justice alone, so that you may live and inherit the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

You must make judges

“You must appoint judges” or “You must choose judges”

within all your city gates

Here “gates” represents a city or town. AT: “within all your towns” (See: Synecdoche)

they will be taken

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you will choose them” (See: Active or Passive)

judge the people with righteous judgment

“judge the people fairly”

You must not take justice away by force

Moses speaks of justice as if it were a physical object that a strong person can violently pull away from a weak person. This can be stated in positive form. Your language might have one word that means "use force to take away." AT: "You must not be unfair when you judge" or "You must make just decisions" (See: Metaphor and Double Negatives)

You must not

Here "You" refers to those who will be appointed as judges and officers. (See: Forms of You)

for a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise and perverts the words of the righteous

Taking a bribe is spoken of as if the bribe were corrupting the people. AT: "for even a wise man who accepts a bribe will become blind, and even a righteous man who accepts a bribe will tell lies" (See: Metaphor)

a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise

A wise person who accepts a bribe so that he does not speak against something evil is spoken of as if he becomes blind. (See: Metaphor)

the wise

The nominal adjective "the wise" can be translated as an adjective. AT: "a wise person" or "wise people" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

perverts the words of the righteous

The nominal adjective "righteous" can be translated as an adjective. AT: "causes a righteous person to lie" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

follow after justice, after justice alone

justice is spoken of as a person who is walking. A person who is doing what is fair and just is spoken of as if he was following close behindjustice. AT: "do only what is fair" (See: Metaphor)

inherit the land that Yahweh your God is giving you

Receiving the land that God is giving to the people is spoken of as if the people are inheriting the land from God. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- judge, judges
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- partial, be partial, partiality
- bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery
- wise, wisdom
- word, words
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 16:21-22

UDB:

[21] When you make an altar to worship Yahweh our God, do not put next to it any wooden pole that represents the goddess Asherah. [22] And do not set up any stone pillar to worship any idol, because Yahweh hates them.

ULB:

[21] You must not set up for yourselves an Asherah, any sort of pole, beside the altar of Yahweh your God that you will make for yourself. [22] Neither must you set up for yourself any sacred stone pillar, which Yahweh your God hates.

translationNotes

You must not

Here "You" refers to all the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

any sacred stone pillar, which Yahweh your God hates

The phrase "which Yahweh your God hates" is giving more information about the sacred stone pillar. AT: "any sacred stone pillar because Yahweh your God hates them" (See: Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding)

sacred stone pillar

This refers to pillars that are idols used to worship false gods.

translationWords

- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths
- altar, altars
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- column, columns, pillar, pillars

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Witnesses

In the ancient Near East, it was common for a person to be punished by the testimony of a single person, especially if this was an important person. The rules in this chapter give protection to people, especially the poor by requiring multiple witnesses. This allowed justice to be done. (See: and just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

King

Israel was not to have a king because Yahweh was their king. Knowing the sinfulness of the people, Yahweh anticipated that one day Israel would have a king. Therefore, this passage gives commands about their king prophetically. They were not allowed to collect chariots because they were a sign of earthly power and the king was to trust in Yahweh. (See: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, sign, signs, proof, reminder, trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 17:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 17:1

UDB:

[1] Do not sacrifice to Yahweh our God any cattle or sheep or goats that have any defects, because Yahweh detests that kind of gift.

ULB:

[1] You must not sacrifice to Yahweh your God an ox or a sheep in which is any blemish or anything bad, for that would be an abomination to Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

in which is any blemish

"that has a blemish" or "that has something wrong with it." The animal is to appear healthy without any deformity.

that would be an abomination to Yahweh

"that would be disgusting to Yahweh"

translationWords

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- Yahweh
- God
-
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- abomination, abominations, abominable

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:2-4

UDB:

[2] When you are living in any of the towns in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, suppose some man or woman sins by disobeying the covenant that Yahweh has made with you. [3] Suppose that person has worshiped and bowed down to other gods, or the sun, or the moon, or the stars. [4] If someone tells you that some person has been doing that, you must investigate it thoroughly to see whether this detestable thing has happened in Israel.

ULB:

[2] If there is found among you, within any of your city gates that Yahweh your God is giving you, any man or woman who does what is evil in the sight of Yahweh your God and transgresses his covenant, [3] anyone who has gone and worshiped other gods and bowed down to them, either the sun, the moon, or any of the host of heaven—nothing that I have commanded— [4] and if you are told about this, or if you have heard of it, then you must make a careful investigation. If it is true and certain that such an abomination has been done in Israel, this is what you should do.

translationNotes

If there is found

This may be stated in active form. AT: “If you find someone” or “If there is anyone” (See: Active or Passive)

within any of your city gates

Here “city gates” represents cities or towns. AT: “living in one of your cities” (See: Synecdoche)

what is evil in the sight of Yahweh your God

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. AT: “something that Yahweh your God thinks is evil” (See: Metonymy)

transgresses his covenant

“disobeys his covenant”

any of the host of heaven

“any of the stars”

nothing that I have commanded

"which I have not commanded anyone to do"

if you are told about this

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if someone tells you about this disobedient act" (See: Active or Passive)

you must make a careful investigation

The abstract noun "investigation" can be stated as a verb. AT: "you must carefully investigate what happened" (See: Abstract Nouns)

such an abomination has been done in Israel

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone has done such a horrible thing in Israel" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- transgress, transgresses, transgression
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- abomination, abominations, abominable
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:5-7

UDB:

[5] If it has happened, then you must take outside the town the man or woman who has done it. Then you must kill that person by throwing stones at him or her. [6] But you are allowed to execute such people only if at least two witnesses testify that they saw them doing that. They must not be executed if there is only one witness. [7] The witnesses should throw stones at the guilty person. Then the other people should throw stones until person dies. By doing that, you will get rid of this evil practice from among you.

ULB:

[5] You must bring that man or woman, who has done this evil thing, to your city gates, that very man or woman, and you must stone that person to death. [6] At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, will he who must die be put to death; but at the mouth of only one witness he must not be put to death. [7] The hand of the witnesses must be the first to put him to death, and afterward the hand of all the people; and you will remove the evil from among you.

translationNotes

At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, will he who must die be put to death

Here “the mouth” represents the testimony of a witness. This can be translated in active form. AT: “If two or three witnesses speak against the person, then you must execute him” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive and Numbers)

but at the mouth of only one witness he must not be put to death

Here “the mouth” represents the testimony of a witness. This can be translated in active form. AT: “but if only one person speaks against him, then you must not execute him” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

The hand of the witnesses must be the first to put him to death, and afterward the hand of all the people

Here “hand” represents the entire group of witnesses. AT: “The witnesses themselves must be the first ones to throw stones. Then all the people will execute the person by throwing stones at him” (See: Synecdoche)

you will remove the evil from among you

The nominal adjective “the evil” can be stated as an adjective. AT: “you must remove from among the Israelites this person who does this evil thing” or “you must execute this evil person” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

translationWords

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- stone, stones, stoning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:8-9

UDB:

[8] Sometimes it will be very difficult for a judge to decide what really happened. He might be trying to decide whether, when someone injured or killed another person, that person did it accidentally or deliberately. Or he might be trying to decide if some person is taking another person to court unfairly. If in any town it is very difficult to know what really happened, and if the judge cannot decide it, you should go to the place that Yahweh our God has chosen for you to worship him. [9] There you should present the case to the descendants of Levi who are priests, and to the judge who is serving at that time, and they should decide what should be done.

ULB:

[8] If a matter arises that is too hard for you to judge—perhaps a question of murder or accidental death, of one person's right and another person's right, or a question of one kind of harm done, or another kind of matter, matters of controversy within your city gates—then you must go up to the place that Yahweh your God will choose as his sanctuary. [9] You must go to the priests, the descendants of Levi, and to the judge who will be serving at that time; you will seek their advice, and they will give you the verdict.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

If a matter arises

"If there is a matter" or "If there is a situation"

one person's right and another person's right

A "right" is a person's legal authority to do something or to possess something.

within your city gates

Here "city gates" represents cities or towns. AT: "within your towns" (See: Synecdoche)

you will seek their advice

The abstract noun "advice" can be stated as a verb. AT: "you will ask them to advise you" (See: Abstract Nouns)

they will give you the verdict

The abstract noun “verdict” can be stated as a verb. AT: “they will decide on the matter” (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- sanctuary
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- judge, judges
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:10-11

UDB:

[10] After they make their decision, you must do what they tell you to do. [11] Accept what they have decided, and do what they say that you should do. Do not try to change in any way what they have decided.

ULB:

[10] You must follow the law given to you at the place Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary. You will be careful to do everything that they direct you to do. [11] Follow the law they teach you, and do according to the decisions they give you. Do not turn aside from what they tell you, to the right hand or to the left.

translationNotes

You must follow the law given to you

A person obeying what the priests and judge decide is spoken of as if the person were physically following behind the law. This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must obey what the judge and priests decide about the matter" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Do not turn aside from what they tell you, to the right hand or to the left

A person not doing exactly what the judge and priests say is spoken of as if he were turning off the correct path. This can be stated in positive form. AT: "Do not disobey anything they tell you" or "Do everything they say" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- sanctuary
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:12-13

UDB:

12 You must execute anyone who proudly disobeys the judge or the priest who stands there in the presence of Yahweh and decides what should be done. By doing that, you will get rid of this evil practice from among you. 13 Then after that person is executed, all the people will hear about it, and they will be afraid, and none of them will act that way anymore.

ULB:

12 Anyone who acts arrogantly, in not listening to the priest who is standing to serve before Yahweh your God, or in not listening to the judge—that man will die; you will put away the evil from Israel. 13 All the people must hear and fear, and act arrogantly no more.

translationNotes

in not listening to the priest ... or in not listening to the judge

"and does not obey the priest ... or does not obey the judge"

you will put away the evil from Israel

The nominal adjective "the evil" can be translated as an adjective. AT: "you must remove from among the Israelites the person who does this evil thing" or "you must execute this evil person" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

All the people must hear and fear, and act arrogantly no more

It is implied that when the people hear about the person who was executed for acting arrogantly, they will be afraid and not act arrogantly themselves. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:14-15

UDB:

14 I know that after you have occupied the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, and you are living there, you will say, 'We should have a king to rule over us, like the kings that other nations around us have.' 15 Yahweh our God will permit you to have a king, but be sure that you appoint someone whom he has chosen. That man must be an Israelite; you must not appoint someone who is a foreigner to be your king.

ULB:

14 When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it, and then you say, 'I will set a king over myself, like all the nations that are round about me,' 15 then you must surely set as king over yourself someone whom Yahweh your God will choose. You must set as king over yourself someone from among your brothers. You may not put a foreigner, who is not your brother, over yourself.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

When you have come to the land

The word "come to" can be translated as "gone to" or "entered." (See: Go and Come)

then you say, 'I will set a king over myself, like all the nations that are round about me,'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "then you decide that you want a king just like the peoples of the nations that surround you have kings," (See: Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

I will set a king over myself ... round about me

Moses has the people speaking as if they were one person. It may be more natural to translate this with plural pronouns. AT: "We will set over ourselves ... round about us" (See: Pronouns)

set a king over myself

Giving someone the authority to rule as king in Israel is spoken of as if the people were setting the person in a place above them. (See: Metaphor)

all the nations that are round about me

“all the surrounding nations”

all the nations

Here “nations” represent the people who live in the nations. (See: Metonymy)

someone from among your brothers

“one of your fellow Israelites”

a foreigner, who is not your brother, over yourself

Both of these phrases mean the same thing. They both refer to a person who is not an Israelite. Yahweh is emphasizing that the people of Israel should not let a foreigner rule over them. AT: “a foreigner over yourself” or “a non-Israelite over yourself” (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- nation, nations
- brother, brothers
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:16-17

UDB:

16 After he becomes the king, he should not acquire a large number of horses for himself. He should not send people to Egypt to buy horses for him, because Yahweh said to you, 'Never return to Egypt for anything!' 17 And he must not have a lot of wives, because if he did that, they would turn him away from worshiping only Yahweh. And he must not acquire a lot of silver and gold.

ULB:

16 But he must not multiply horses for himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt so that he may multiply horses, for Yahweh had said to you, 'You will never return that way again.' 17 He must not take many wives for himself, so that his heart does not turn away. He must not accumulate large amounts of silver and gold.

translationNotes

for Yahweh had said to you, 'You will never return that way again.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "for Yahweh had said that you must never return to Egypt again." (See: Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

so that his heart does not turn away

Here "heart" refers to the whole person. An Israelite king who marries foreign wives and starts to worship their false gods is spoken of as if his heart were to turn away from Yahweh. AT: "so that they do not cause him to stop honoring Yahweh and start worshiping false gods" (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

translationWords

- multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- heart, hearts
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- silver
- gold, golden

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:18-19

UDB:

[18] When he becomes your king, he must appoint someone to copy these laws. He must copy them from the scroll that is kept by the priests descended from Levi. [19] He must keep this new scroll near him and read from it every day of his life, in order that he may learn to have an awesome respect for Yahweh, and to faithfully obey all the rules and regulations that are written in these laws.

ULB:

[18] When he sits on the throne of his kingdom, he must write for himself in a scroll a copy of this law, from the law that is before the priests, who are Levites. [19] The scroll must be with him, and he must read in it all the days of his life, so that he may learn to honor Yahweh his God, so as to keep all the words of this law and these statutes, to observe them.

translationNotes

When he sits on the throne of his kingdom

Here “throne” represents the person’s power and authority as king. To sit on the throne means to become king. AT: “When he becomes king” (See: Metonymy)

he must write for himself in a scroll a copy of this law

Possible meanings are 1) “he must personally write in a scroll a copy of this law for himself” or 2) “he must appoint someone to write in a scroll a copy of this law for him”

from the law that is before the priests, who are Levites

“from the copy of the law that the Levitical priests keep”

so as to keep all the words of this law and these statutes, to observe them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the king must obey all of God’s law. (See: Parallelism)

translationWords

- throne, thrones, enthroned
- kingdom, kingdoms
- scroll, scrolls
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- honor, honors
- Yahweh
- God
- word, words
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 17:20

UDB:

[20] If he does that, he will not think that he is more important than his fellow Israelites, and he will completely obey Yahweh's commands. As a result, he and his descendants will rule as kings in Israel for many years."

ULB:

[20] He must do this so that his heart is not lifted up above his brothers, and so that he does not turn away from the commandments, to the right hand or to the left; for the purpose that he may prolong his days in his kingdom, he and his children, among Israel.

translationNotes

so that his heart is not lifted up above his brothers

Here "his heart" refers to the whole person. A king becoming arrogant is spoken of as if his heart were lifted up. AT: "so that he does not become arrogant" or "so that he does not think he is better than his fellow Israelites" (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

so that he does not turn away from the commandments, to the right hand or to the left

A king disobeying God's commands is spoken of as if a person were to turn off the correct path. This can be stated in positive form. AT: "so that he does not disobey any of the commandments" or "so that he obeys all of the commandments" (See: Metaphor and Litotes)

prolong his days

Long days is a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated a similar phrase "prolong your days" in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: "be able to live a long time" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- brother, brothers
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Levites

As Yahweh's chosen priests, the priest were to trust in Yahweh to provide for them. He provided for them through the rest of the Israelites. Yahweh was their inheritance. (See: chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect, priest, priests, priesthood, trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness and inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir)

Messiah

This chapter is one of the first prophecies about the promised, coming messiah. (See: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, promise, promises, promised and Christ, Messiah)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 18:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 18:1-2

UDB:

[1] "The priests, who are all from the tribe of Levi, will not receive any land in Israel. Instead, they will receive some of the food that other people offer to be burned on the altar to be sacrificed to Yahweh and some of the other sacrifices that will be offered to Yahweh. [2] They will not be allotted any land like the other tribes will be. What they will receive is the honor of being Yahweh's priests, which is what he said that they should have.

ULB:

[1] The priests, who are Levites, and all the tribe of Levi, will have no portion nor inheritance with Israel; they must eat the offerings of Yahweh made by fire as their inheritance. [2] They must have no inheritance among their brothers; Yahweh is their inheritance, as he said to them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the people what Yahweh wants them to do.

will have no portion nor inheritance with Israel

The Levites not receiving any land from Yahweh is spoken of as if they would not receive an inheritance. AT: "will not possess any of the people's land" or "will not receive any of the land that the Israelites will possess" (See: Metaphor)

no portion

"no part" or "no share"

among their brothers

"among the other tribes of Israel" or "among the other Israelites"

Yahweh is their inheritance

Moses speaks of the great honor that Aaron and his descendants will have by serving Yahweh as priests as if Yahweh were something that they will inherit. See how you translated a similar phrase in Deuteronomy 10:9. AT: "instead, they will have Yahweh" or "instead, Yahweh will allow them to serve him and he will provide for them through that service" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- Yahweh
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- brother, brothers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:3-5

UDB:

[3] When the people bring an ox or a sheep to be sacrificed, they must give to the priests the shoulder, the cheeks, and the stomach of those animals. [4] You must also give to them the first part of the grain that you harvest, and the first part of the wine that you make, and the first part of the olive oil that you make, and the first part of the wool that you shear from your sheep. [5] You must do this because Yahweh our God has chosen the tribe of Levi from all of your tribes, in order that it would be ones from that tribe who would always be the priests who would serve him.

ULB:

[3] This is the share given to the priests, given to them from the people who offer a sacrifice, whether it be an oxen or a sheep: the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the inner parts. [4] The firstfruits of your grain, of your new wine, and of your oil, and the first of the fleece of your sheep, you must give him. [5] For Yahweh your God has chosen him out of all your tribes to stand to serve in the name of Yahweh, him and his sons forever.

translationNotes

the inner parts

This is the stomach and intestines.

you must give him

“you must give to the priest”

has chosen him

Here “him” represents all the Levites. (See: Metonymy)

to stand to serve in the name of Yahweh

Here “the name of Yahweh” stands for Yahweh himself and his authority. AT: “to be his special servants” or “to serve as a representative of Yahweh” (See: Metonymy)

him and his sons forever

Here “him” represents all the Levites. AT: “the Levites and their descendants forever” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
-
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- firstfruits
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- Yahweh
- God
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- name, names, named
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:6-8

UDB:

[6] If any man from the tribe of Levi who has been living in one of the towns in Israel wants to come from there to the place of worship that Yahweh has chosen, and to start living there, [7] he is permitted to serve Yahweh there as a priest, just like the other men from the tribe of Levi who have been serving there. [8] He must be given the same amount of food that the other priests receive. He is permitted to keep the money that his relatives receive for selling some of their possessions and send to him.

ULB:

[6] If a Levite comes from any of your towns out of all Israel from where he is living, and desires with all his soul to come to the place Yahweh will choose, [7] then he must serve in the name of Yahweh his God as all his brothers the Levites do, who stand there before Yahweh. [8] They must have similar portions to eat, besides of what comes of the sale of his family's inheritance.

translationNotes

desires with all his soul

This is an idiom. AT: "strongly desires" or "really wants" (See: Idiom)

then he must serve in the name of Yahweh his God

Here "name" represents Yahweh and his authority. AT: "then he must serve Yahweh his God as a priest" (See: Metonymy)

who stand there before Yahweh

"who serve in the sanctuary in the presence of Yahweh"

his family's inheritance

This is what the priest would inherit from his father.

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Israel, Israelites
- soul, souls
- Yahweh

- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- name, names, named

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:9-11

UDB:

[9] When you enter the land that Yahweh our God is giving you, you must not imitate the disgusting things that the people groups who are there now do. [10] You must not sacrifice any of your children by burning them on your altars. Do not try to use supernatural power to discover what will happen in the future. Do not try to use magic to find out what will happen in the future. Do not interpret omens to find out what will happen. Do not practice sorcery. Do not put spells on people. [11] Do not try to talk with spirits of dead people. Do not do magic.

ULB:

[9] When you have come into the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, you must not learn to observe the abominations of those nations. [10] There must not be found among you anyone who sacrifices his son or his daughter in the fire, anyone who uses divination or tells fortunes, or reads signs found in a cup, or engages in witchcraft, [11] any charmer, anyone who conjurs up spirits, or one who casts spells, or who talks with spirits of the dead.

translationNotes

When you have come

Here “come” can be translated as “gone” or “entered.” (See: Go and Come)

you must not learn to observe the abominations of those nations

God hates the religious activities of the people in the surrounding nations. He considers them to be terribly evil. Here “nations” represents the people. AT: “you must not do the terrible things that the people of the other nations do” (See: Metonymy)

There must not be found among you anyone

This can be stated in active form. AT: “There must not be anyone among you” (See: Active or Passive)

anyone who uses divination ... who talks with spirits

These are different people who practice magic. God has forbidden every kind of magic. If you do not have a word for all of these types of people, it can be stated more generally. AT: “anyone who uses magic to try to find out what will happen in the future, to cast spells, or to talk to the spirits of dead people”

reads signs found in a cup

One who reads the shapes and figures in a cup and who predicts future events from what they can see

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- abomination, abominations, abominable
- nation, nations
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- spirit, spirits, spiritual

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:12-14

UDB:

[12] Yahweh hates people who do any of those disgusting things. And as you advance through that land, he is going to drive out the people groups because they do those disgusting things. [13] But you must always be faithful to Yahweh and avoid doing any of those disgusting things.

[14] The people groups that you are about to expel from the land that you will occupy consult soothsayers and those who practice divination. But as for you, Yahweh our God does not allow you to do that.

ULB:

[12] For whoever does these things is an abomination to Yahweh; it is because of these abominations that Yahweh your God is driving them out from before you. [13] You must be blameless before Yahweh your God. [14] For these nations that you will dispossess listen to those who practice sorcery and divination; but as for you, Yahweh your God has not allowed you to do so.

translationNotes

driving them out

Here “them” refers to the people already living in Canaan.

For these nations

Here “nations” stands for the people groups that live in Canaan. AT: “For these people groups” (See: Metonymy)

dispossess

“displace” or “drive out”

translationWords

- God
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- blameless
- nation, nations
- sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:15-16

UDB:

15 Some day he will send from among you a prophet like me. He will tell you what will happen in the future, and you must obey him. 16 On the day that your ancestors were gathered at the bottom of Mount Sinai, they pleaded with me saying, 'We do not want Yahweh to speak to us again, and we do not want to see this huge fire that is burning on the mountain!' Your ancestors said that because they were afraid that they would die if Yahweh spoke to them again.

ULB:

15 Yahweh your God will raise up for you a prophet from among you, one of your brothers, like me. You must listen to him. 16 This is what you asked from Yahweh your God at Horeb on the day of the assembly, saying, 'Let us not hear again the voice of Yahweh our God, nor see this great fire anymore, or we will die.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Yahweh your God will raise up for you a prophet

Yahweh appointing a person to be a prophet is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift the person up. (See: Metaphor)

one of your brothers

"one of your fellow Israelites"

This is what you asked

Here "you" refers to the Israelites at Mount Horeb about 40 years earlier.

at Horeb on the day of the assembly

"on the day you gathered together at Horeb"

on the day of the assembly, saying, 'Let us not hear again the voice of Yahweh our God, nor see this great fire anymore, or we will die.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "on the day of the assembly when you said that you did not want to hear the voice of Yahweh our God, nor see his great fire anymore, because you were afraid that you would die." (See:Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Let us not hear again the voice of Yahweh our God

Here Yahweh is represented by his "voice" to emphasize what he says. AT: "Let us not hear Yahweh our God speak again" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- brother, brothers
- Horeb
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- voice, voices
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:17-19

UDB:

[17] Then Yahweh said to me, 'What they have said is true. [18] So I will send from among them a prophet like you. I will tell him what to say, and then he will tell people everything that I tell him to say. [19] He will speak for me. And I will punish anyone who does not heed what he says.

ULB:

[17] Yahweh said to me, 'What they have said is good. [18] I will raise up a prophet for them from among their brothers, just like you. I will put my words in his mouth, and he will speak to them all that I command him. [19] It will happen that if anyone does not listen to the words of mine that he speaks in my name, I will require it of him.

translationNotes

I will raise up a prophet for them

Yahweh appointing a person to be a prophet is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift the person up. (See: Metaphor)

from among their brothers

"from among their fellow Israelites"

I will put my words in his mouth

Yahweh telling the prophet what to say is spoken of as if Yahweh would put words in the prophet's mouth. (See: Metaphor)

speak to them

"speak to the people of Israel"

does not listen to the words of mine that he speaks in my name

Here "my name" represents Yahweh and his authority. AT: "does not listen to him when he speaks my message" (See: Metonymy)

require it of him

"I will hold him responsible" or "I will punish him." Here "him" refers to the person who does not listen to the prophet.

translationWords

- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- name, names, named

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:20-21

UDB:

[20] But if any person says that he is a prophet and dares to speak a message which he falsely says comes from me but which I did not tell him to speak, or anyone who speaks a message that he says other gods have revealed to him, he must be executed for doing that.'

[21] But perhaps you will say to yourself, 'How can we know if a message that someone tells us does not come from Yahweh?'

ULB:

[20] But the prophet who speaks a word arrogantly in my name, a word that I have not commanded him to speak, or who speaks in the name of other gods, that very prophet must die.' [21] This is what you must say in your heart: 'How will we recognize a message that Yahweh has not spoken?'

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking.

who speaks a word arrogantly

"who dares to speak a message" or "who is arrogant enough to speak a message"

in my name

Here "my name" refers to Yahweh himself and his authority. AT: "for me" or "with my authority" (See: Metonymy)

a word that I have not commanded

Here "word" represents a message. AT: "a message that I have not commanded" (See: Metonymy)

who speaks in the name of other gods

Here "name" represents the gods themselves or their authority. This means the prophet claims that false gods told him to speak a certain message. (See: Metonymy)

This is what you must say in your heart

Here "heart" represents the thoughts of a person. AT: "You ask yourself" or "You must say to yourself" (See: Metonymy)

How will we recognize a message that Yahweh has not spoken?

"How will we know if the message that the prophet speaks is from Yahweh?" Here "we" refers to the people of Israel.

translationWords

- arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance
- name, names, named
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- heart, hearts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 18:22

UDB:

[22] The answer is that when someone speaks a message about what will happen in the future, a message that he says was revealed by Yahweh, if what he says does not happen, you will know that the message did not come from Yahweh. That person has wrongly claimed that it was revealed to him by Yahweh. So you do not need to be afraid of anything that he says.

ULB:

[22] You will recognize a message that Yahweh has spoken when a prophet speaks in the name of Yahweh. If that thing does not occur nor happen, then that is something that Yahweh has not spoken and the prophet has spoken it arrogantly, and you must not be afraid of him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking.

a prophet speaks in the name of Yahweh

Here "name of Yahweh" refers to Yahweh himself and his authority. AT: "a prophet claims to speak for me" or "a prophet claims to speak with my authority" (See: Metonymy)

the prophet has spoken it arrogantly

"the prophet has spoken this message without my authority"

translationWords

- name, names, named
- Yahweh
- arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice

Another way justice would be maintained in Israel was by avoiding revenge killings. This chapter describes the establishment of special cities to protect those fleeing from revenge killings. (See: just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification and avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance)

Witnesses

In the ancient Near East, it was common for a person to be punished by the testimony of a single person, especially if this was an important person. The rules in this chapter give protection to people, especially the poor by requiring multiple witnesses. This allowed justice to be done. (See:)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Law of retaliation

The chapter describes a famous law, often called the "law of retaliation." It is said, an "eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot." This does not mean a person who causes another person to lose their eye must have their own eye removed as punishment. This law is not about making all things equal. Instead, it is about limiting the punishment or the ability of a person to retaliate. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 19:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 19:1-2

UDB:

[1] After Yahweh our God has destroyed the people groups from the land that he is giving to you, and after you have driven them out from their cities and you start to live in their houses, [2-3] you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe.

ULB:

[1] When Yahweh your God cuts off the nations, those whose land Yahweh your God is giving you, and when you come after them and live in their cities and houses, [2] you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. [3] You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

When Yahweh your God cuts off the nations

Yahweh destroying the people who live in Canaan is spoken of as if he were cutting them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: Metaphor)

the nations

This represents the people groups that live in Canaan. (See: Metonymy)

those whose land Yahweh your God is giving you

“those nations who were living in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you”

come after them

“take the land from those nations” or “possess the land after those nations are gone”

select three cities

“choose 3 cities” (See: Numbers)

You must build a road

They were to build roads so that it would be easy for people to travel to these cities. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

divide the borders of your land into three parts

It is implied that one of the cities they choose must be in each part of the land. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit

Yahweh giving the land to the people of Israel is spoken of as if the people are inheriting the land. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- nation, nations
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:4-5

UDB:

[4] This is the rule about someone who has killed another person. If someone accidentally kills another person who was not his enemy, he may escape to one of those cities and be safe. [5] For example, if two men go into the forest to cut some wood, if the axe head comes off the handle while one of them is chopping down a tree and the ax head strikes and kills the other man, the man who was using the ax will be allowed to run to one of those cities and be safe there, because the people of that city will protect him.

ULB:

[4] This is the law for the one who kills another and who flees there to live—anyone who kills his neighbor unintentionally, and did not previously hate him. [5] For example, if a man goes into the forest with his neighbor to cut wood, and his chops with the ax to cut down a tree, and the ax head slips off of the handle and strikes his neighbor and kills him—then that man must flee to one of these cities and save his life.

translationNotes

This is the law

“These are the instructions” or “These are the directions”

for the one who kills another

The word “person” is understood. AT: “for a person who kills another person” (See: Ellipsis)

who flees there

“and who escapes to one of these cities” or “who runs to one of these cities”

to live

“to save his own life.” The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “so the family of the man who died does not kill him to get revenge” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

anyone who kills his neighbor unintentionally

Here “neighbor” means any person in general. AT: “any person who kills another person by accident”

and did not previously hate him

"but did not hate his neighbor before he killed him." This implies there was no cause for him to kill his neighbor purposely. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

For example, if a man goes into the forest ... to cut wood

The author gives a hypothetical situation where a person accidentally kills another person. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

the ax head slips off of the handle

The iron part of the ax comes off the wooden handle.

strikes his neighbor and kills him

This means the head of the ax hits and kills the neighbor.

to one of these cities and save his life

It is implied that the family of the dead man may try to get revenge. The man who killed him can flee to one of these cities, and the people there would protect him. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- ax, axes
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:6-7

UDB:

[6] Because he accidentally killed someone, and because the man was not his enemy, he can try to run to one of those cities. If there were only one city, it may be a long distance to that city. Then if the relative of the man who was killed to get revenge, is very angry, he may be able to catch the other person before he arrives at that city. [7] Therefore, I give you this command, that you select three cities for this purpose.

ULB:

[6] Otherwise the avenger of blood might go after the one who took a life, and in the heat of his anger overtake him, if the distance is too great, strike him and kill him, even though that man did not deserve to die, since he had not hated his neighbor in the past. [7] Therefore I command you to select three cities for yourself.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

the avenger of blood

Here “blood” represents the person who was killed. An “avenger of blood” is a close relative of the person who was killed. This relative is responsible for punishing the murderer. (See: Metonymy)

the one who took a life

This is an idiom. AT: “the one who killed the other person” (See: Idiom)

in the heat of his anger

Someone being very angry is spoken of as if anger were something that could become hot. AT: “and being very angry” (See: Metaphor)

strike him and kill him

“And the blood avenger strikes and kills the one who had killed the other person”

though that man did not deserve to die, since he had not hated his neighbor in the past

“though that man did not deserve to die since he accidentally killed the other person and was not his enemy, and he had not planned to hurt the man”

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:8-10

UDB:

[8-9] If you do everything that I am today commanding you to do, and if you love Yahweh our God, and if you conduct your lives as he wants you to do, Yahweh our God will give you much more land than you will have when you first occupy it, which is what he promised to do. He will give you all the land which he promised your ancestors that he would give to you. When he gives you that land, you must select three more cities to which people may escape. [10] Do this in order that people who are innocent will not die, and you will not be guilty for allowing them to be executed, in the land that Yahweh is giving to you.

ULB:

[8] If Yahweh your God enlarges your borders, as he has sworn to your ancestors to do, and gives you all the land that he promised to give to your ancestors; [9] if you keep all these commandments to do them, which I am commanding you today—commandments to love Yahweh your God and to always walk in his ways, then you must add three more cities for yourself, besides these three. [10] Do this so that innocent blood is not shed in the midst of the land that Yahweh your God is giving you for as an inheritance, so that no bloodguilt may be on you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

enlarges your borders

“gives you more land to possess”

as he has sworn to your ancestors to do

“like he promised your ancestors that he would do”

if you keep all these commandments to do them

“if you obey all these commandments”

to always walk in his ways

How God wants a person to live or behave is spoken of as if it were Yahweh’s way or road. A person who obeys Yahweh is spoken of as if he were walking on Yahweh’s way or road. AT: “to always obey him” (See: Metaphor)

then you must add three more cities for yourself

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “then you must choose three more cities for a person to escape to if he accidentally kills someone” (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

besides these three

“in addition to the three cities you already established” (See: Numbers)

Do this so that innocent blood is not shed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Do this so that family members do not kill an innocent person” (See: Active or Passive)

innocent blood is not shed

Here “blood” represents a person’s life. To shed blood means to kill a person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one kills an innocent person” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

in the midst of the land

“in the land” or “in the territory”

Yahweh your God is giving you for as an inheritance

The land that Yahweh is giving the people of Israel is spoken of as if it were an inheritance. (See: Metaphor)

so that no bloodguilt may be on you

The people of Israel being guilty for a person dying because they did not build a city where he would be safe from the “blood avenger” is spoken of as if the guilt of his death is on them. (See: Metaphor)

bloodguilt

Here “blood” represents a life and “bloodguilt” refers to the guilt someone has for killing an innocent person. (See: Metonymy)

may be on you

This means that if a family member kills an innocent person, then all the people of Israel will be guilty for letting that happen.

translationWords

- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- promise, promises, promised
- love, loves, loving, loved
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- innocent
- blood
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:11-13

UDB:

[11] But suppose someone hates his enemy and hides and waits for that person to come along the road. Then when he passes by, suddenly he attacks him and murders him. If the attacker flees to one of those cities to be protected there, [12] the elders of the city where the murdered man lived must not protect the attacker. They must send someone to the city to which the other man escaped, and bring him to to get revenge, so that he may execute that man. [13] You must not pity those who murder other people! Instead, you must execute them, in order that the people in the land of Israel will not be punished for murdering innocent people, and in order that things will go well for you.

ULB:

[11] But if anyone hates his neighbor, lies in wait for him, rises up against him, and mortally wounds him so that he dies, and if he then flees into one of these cities— [12] then the elders of his city must send and bring him back from there, and turn him over into the hand of the responsible relative, so that he may die. [13] Your eye must not pity him; instead, you must eradicate the bloodguilt from Israel, that it may go well with you.

translationNotes

his neighbor

Here “neighbor” means any person in general.

lies in wait for him

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “hides and waits in order to kill him” or “plans to kill him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

rises up against him

This is an idiom. AT: “attacks him” (See: Idiom)

mortally wounds him so that he dies

“hurts him so that he dies” or “and kills him”

must send and bring him back from there

“must send someone to get him and bring him back from the city that he escaped to”

turn him over

This is an idiom. AT: “give him over” (See: Idiom)

into the hand of the responsible relative

Here “the hand” represents the authority of someone. AT: “to the authority of the responsible relative” or “to the responsible relative” (See: Metonymy)

the responsible relative

This is the relative of the person who was killed. This relative is responsible for punishing the murderer.

he may die

“the murderer may die” or “the responsible relative may execute the murderer”

Your eye must not pity him

Here “your eye” represents the whole person. AT: “Do not show him mercy” or “Do not feel sorry for him” (See: Synecdoche)

you must eradicate the bloodguilt from Israel

Here “bloodguilt” represents the guilt for murdering an innocent person. AT: “you must execute the murderer so that the people of Israel will not be guilty for the death of an innocent person” (See: Metonymy)

from Israel

Here “Israel” refers to the people of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- elder, elders
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:14

UDB:

14 When you are living in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, do not move the markers of your neighbors' property boundaries that were placed there long ago.

ULB:

14 You must not remove your neighbor's landmark that they set in place a long time ago, in your inheritance that you will inherit, in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

You must not remove your neighbor's landmark

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "You must not take land away from your neighbor by moving the markers on the borders of his land" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they set in place

"that your ancestors placed"

a long time ago

Moses means that when the people have lived in the land for a long time, they should not move the borders that their ancestors made when they first took the land.

in your inheritance that you will inherit, in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess

Yahweh giving the land to the people of Israel is spoken of as if they were inheriting the land. AT: "in the land that Yahweh your God is giving to you to possess" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:15-16

UDB:

15 If someone is accused of committing a crime, one person who says, 'I saw him do it' is not enough to find him guilty. There must be at least two people who say, 'We saw him do it.' If there is only one witness, the judge must not believe that what he says is true.

16 Or suppose that someone tries to do wrong to another person by falsely accusing him.

ULB:

15 One sole witness must not rise up against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin, in any matter that he sins; at the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, must any matter be confirmed. 16 Suppose that an unrighteous witness rises up against any man to testify against him of wrongdoing.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

One sole witness

"A single witness" or "Only one witness"

must not rise up against a man

Here "rise up" means to stand up in court and speak against someone to a judge. AT: "must not speak to the judges about something bad that a man did" (See: Idiom)

in any matter that he sins

"anytime that a man does something bad"

at the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses

Here "mouth" represents what the witnesses say. It is implied that there must be at least two or three witnesses. AT: "at the testimony of at least two or three people" or "based on what at least two or three people say happened" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

must any matter be confirmed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "will you confirm that the man is guilty" (See: Active or Passive)

Suppose that

"When" or "If"

an unrighteous witness

"a witness who intends to harm someone else"

rises up against any man to testify against him of wrongdoing

Here "rise up" means to stand up in court and speak against someone to a judge. AT: "tells the judge that a man sinned in order to get the man in trouble" or "tells the judge that a man sinned, so the judge will punish him" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- iniquity, iniquities
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- confirm, confirms, confirmed, confirmation
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:17-19

UDB:

[17] Then both of them must go to the place where the people worship, to talk to the priests and judges who are serving at that time. [18] The judges must investigate the case carefully. If the judges determine that one of them has accused the other falsely, [19] that person must be punished in the same way that the other one would have been punished if the judges had decided that he was guilty. By punishing such people, you will get rid of this evil practice from among you.

ULB:

[17] Then both men, the ones between whom the controversy exists, must stand before Yahweh, before the priests and the judges who serve in those days. [18] The judges must make diligent inquiries; see, if the witness is a false witness and has testified falsely against his brother, [19] then must you do to him, as he had wished to do to his brother; and you will remove the evil from among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

the ones between whom the controversy exists

“the ones who disagree with one another”

must stand before Yahweh, before the priests and the judges

This means the two persons must go to the sanctuary where Yahweh’s presence dwells. At the sanctuary are priests and judges who have the authority to make legal decisions for Yahweh. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

stand before Yahweh, before the priests and the judges

The phrase “stand before” is an idiom. It means to go to someone with authority and let him make a legal decision about a matter. (See: Idiom)

The judges must make diligent inquiries

“The judges must work very hard to determine what happened”

then must you do to him, as he had wished to do to his brother

"then you must punish the false witness in the same way as he wanted you to punish the other man"

you will remove the evil from among you

The nominal adjective "the evil" can be stated as an adjective. AT: "you will remove the evil practice from among you" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- day, days
- inquire, inquires, inquired, inquiries
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- brother, brothers
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 19:20-21

UDB:

[20] And when that person is punished, everyone will hear what has happened, and they will be afraid, and no one will dare to act that way anymore. [21] You must not pity people who are punished like that. The rule should be that a person who has murdered someone else must be executed; one of a person's eyes must be gouged out if he has gouged out someone else's eye, one tooth of a person who has knocked out the tooth of another person must be knocked out; one hand of a person who has cut off the hand of another person must likewise be cut off; one foot of a person who has cut off the foot of another person must also be cut off.

ULB:

[20] Then those who remain will hear and fear, and will from then on commit no longer any such evil among you. [21] Your eyes must not pity; life will pay for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.

translationNotes

Then those who remain

"When you punish the false witness, the rest of the people"

will hear and fear

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "will hear about the punishment and be afraid of getting punished" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

commit no longer any such evil

"never again do something evil like that"

Your eyes must not pity

Here "eyes" refer to the whole person. AT: "You must not pity him" or "You must not show him mercy" (See: Synecdoche)

life will pay for life ... foot for foot

Here the phrases are shortened because the meaning is understood. It means the people must punish a person in the same way that he harmed another person. (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's protection

Israel was not to worry about the power and strength of other nations. Instead, they were to trust in the power of Yahweh. He is the source of their military strength and protection. This is why a priest leads them into battle, rather than a military commander. (See: trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness and priest, priests, priesthood)

Holy war

Israel's conquering of the Promised Land was unique in history. It was a type of holy war and had special rules. This war was really Yahweh's punishment against the sin of the Canaanite people. If the people were not completely destroyed, they would cause Israel to sin. (See: Promised Land, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred and sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

"What man is there"

This phrase is used several times to introduce a rhetorical question. The questions are intended to tell the readers that Yahweh only wants soldiers who are completely dedicated to fighting for him. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Excused from fighting

In ancient Israel, men were excused from fighting in battle for several different reasons. Some of these reasons are mentioned in this chapter. Apparently, needing to establish a new house, the need to harvest a field and cowardice were possible excuses. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 20:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 20:1

UDB:

[1] When your soldiers go to fight your enemies, and you see that they have many horses and chariots and that their army is much bigger than yours, do not be afraid of them, because Yahweh our God, who brought your ancestors safely out of Egypt, will be with you.

ULB:

[1] When you march out to battle against your enemies, and see horses, chariots, and a people more numerous than you, you must not be afraid of them; for Yahweh your God is with you, he who brought you up out of the land of Egypt.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

When you march out to battle against your enemies

"When you go out to fight in a war against your enemies"

see horses, chariots

People considered an army with many horses and chariots to be very strong. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he who brought you up out of the land of Egypt

Yahweh brought the people from Egypt to Canaan. It was common to use the word "up" to refer to traveling from Egypt to Canaan. AT: "Yahweh who led you out from the land of Egypt"

translationWords

- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- chariot, chariots, charioteers
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Yahweh
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:2-4

UDB:

[2] When you are ready to start the battle, the high priest must stand in front of the troops. [3] He must say to them, 'You Israelite men, listen to me! Today you are going to fight against your enemies. Do not be timid or afraid, [4] because Yahweh our God will go with you. He will fight your enemies for you, and he will enable you to defeat them.'

ULB:

[2] When you are about to enter into battle, the priest must approach and speak to the people. [3] He must say to them, 'Listen, Israel, you are going to battle against your enemies. Do not let your hearts faint. Do not fear or tremble. Do not be afraid of them. [4] For Yahweh your God is the one who is going with you to fight for you against your enemies and to save you.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

speak to the people

"speak to the soldiers of Israel"

Do not let your hearts faint. Do not fear or tremble. Do not be afraid of them

These four expressions all mean the same thing and strongly emphasize that they are not to be afraid. If your language does not have four ways to express this concept, you may use less than four. (See: Parallelism)

Do not let your hearts faint

Here "hearts" represents people's courage. For a heart to faint is an idiom that means "Do not be afraid." (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

Yahweh your God is the one who is going with you to fight for you against your enemies

Yahweh defeating the enemies of the people of Israel is spoken of as if Yahweh were a warrior who would fight along with the people of Israel. (See: Metaphor)

to save you

"to give you victory"

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Israel, Israelites
- heart, hearts
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:5

UDB:

[5] Then the army officers must say to the troops, 'If anyone among you has just built a new house and has not dedicated it to God, he should go home and dedicate the house. If he does not do that, if he dies in the battle, someone else will dedicate the house and live in it.

ULB:

[5] The officers must speak to the people and say, 'What man is there who has built a new house and has not dedicated it? Let him go and return to his house, so that he does not die in battle and another man dedicates it.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses says what the army officers must say to the people of Israel before a battle.

The officers must speak

One of the officers' jobs was to decide who could leave the army. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

What man is there ... Let him go and return to his house

"If any soldier here has built a new house and has not dedicated it, he should go back to his house"

so that he does not die in battle and another man dedicates it

The officer is describing a situation that could possibly happen to a soldier. AT: "so that, if he dies in battle, another man will not dedicate his house instead of him" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

translationWords

- dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:6-7

UDB:

[6] If anyone among you has planted a vineyard and has not yet harvested any grapes from it, he should go home. If he stays here and dies in the battle, someone else will harvest the grapes and enjoy the wine made from them. [7] If anyone among you has become engaged to marry a woman but has not married her yet, he should go home. If he stays here and dies in the battle, someone else will marry her.'

ULB:

[6] Is there anyone who has planted a vineyard and has not enjoyed its fruit? Let him go home, so he will not die in battle and another man enjoy its fruit. [7] What man is there who is engaged to marry a woman but has not yet married her? Let him go home so that he does not die in battle and another man marries her.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues describing situations that allow a man to leave the military.

Is there anyone who has planted ... Let him go home

"If any soldier here has a new vineyard, but has not yet harvested its grapes, he should go back to his house"

so he will not die in battle and another man enjoy its fruit

The officer is describing a situation that could possibly happen to a soldier. AT: "so that, if he dies in battle, another man will not harvest its fruit instead of him" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

What man is there who is engaged to marry a woman ... Let him go home

"If any soldier here has promised to marry a woman, but has not yet married her, he should go back to his house"

so that he does not die in battle and another man marries her

The officer is describing a situation that could possibly happen to a soldier. AT: "so that, if he dies in battle, another man does not marry her instead of him" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

translationWords

- vineyard, vineyards
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:8-9

UDB:

[8] Then the officers must also say, 'If anyone among you is afraid or timid, he should go home, in order that he does not cause his fellow soldiers to also stop being courageous.' [9] When the officers have finished speaking to the troops, they must appoint commanders over them.

ULB:

[8] The officers must speak further to the people and say, 'What man is there who is fearful or faint-hearted? Let him go and return to his house, so that his brother's heart does not melt like his own heart.' [9] When the officers have finished speaking to the people, they must appoint commanders over them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues describing situations that allow a man to leave the military.

What man is there who is fearful or fainthearted? Let him go and return to his house

"If any soldier here is afraid and not brave, he should go back to his house"

fearful or fainthearted

Both of these words mean basically the same thing. AT: "afraid to fight in battle" (See: Doublet)

his brother's heart does not melt like his own heart

This is an idiom. AT: "another Israelite does not become afraid like he is afraid" (See: Idiom)

brother's heart ... his own heart

Here "heart" represents a person's courage. (See: Metonymy)

they must appoint commanders over them

"the officers must appoint people to be commanders and to lead the people of Israel"

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- heart, hearts
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- commander, commanders

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:10-11

UDB:

10 When you go up to a city that is far away to attack it, first tell the people there that if they surrender, you will not attack them. 11 If they open the gates of the city and surrender, they will all become your slaves to work for you.

ULB:

10 When you march up to attack a city, make those people an offer of peace. 11 If they accept your offer and open their gates to you, all the people who are found in it must become forced labor for you and must serve you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

When you march up to attack a city

Here "city" represents the people. AT: "When you go to attack the people of a city" (See: Metonymy)

make those people an offer of peace

"give the people in the city a chance to surrender"

open their gates to you

Here "gates" refers to the city gates. The phrase "open their gates to you" represents the people surrendering and allowing the Israelites to enter their city. AT: "let you enter their city peacefully" (See: Metonymy)

all the people who are found in it

This can be stated in active form. AT: "all the people in the city" (See: Active or Passive)

must become forced labor for you

"must become your slaves"

translationWords

- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:12-13

UDB:

[12] But if they refuse to surrender peacefully and decide instead to fight against you, your troops must surround the city and break through the walls. [13] Then, when Yahweh our God enables you to capture the city, you must kill all the men in the city.

ULB:

[12] But if it makes no offer of peace to you, but instead makes war against you, then you must besiege it, [13] and when Yahweh your God gives you victory and puts them under your control, you must kill every man in the town.

translationNotes

But if it makes no offer of peace

Here “it” refers to the city which represents the people. AT: “But if the people of the city do not surrender” or “But if the people of the city do not accept your offer of peace” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:14-15

UDB:

14 But you are allowed to take for yourselves the women, the children, the livestock, and everything else that you want to take from the city. You will be allowed to enjoy all the things that belonged to your enemies, the things that Yahweh our God has given to you. 15 You should do that in all the cities that are far from the land in which you will settle.

ULB:

14 But the women, the little ones, the cattle, and everything that is in the city, and all its spoil, you will take as booty for yourself. You will consume the booty of your enemies, whom Yahweh your God has given to you. 15 You must act in this way toward all the cities that are very far from you, cities that are not of the cities of these following nations.

translationNotes

the little ones

“the children”

all its spoil

“all the valuable things”

booty

These are the valuable things which people who win a battle take from the people they attacked.

all the cities

Here “cities” represents the people. AT: “all the people who live in cities” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:16-18

UDB:

16 But in the cities that are in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you forever, you must kill all the people and all the animals. 17 You must get rid of them completely. Get rid of the Heth, the Amor the Canaan , the Periz, the Hiv, and the Jebus people groups; that is what Yahweh our God commanded you to do. 18 If you do not do that, they will teach you to sin against Yahweh our God and do the disgusting things that they do when they worship their gods.

ULB:

16 In the cities of these peoples that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance, you must save alive nothing that breathes. 17 Instead, you must completely destroy them: the Hittite, and the Amorite, the Canaanite, the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite, as Yahweh your God has commanded you. 18 Do this so that they do not teach you to act in any of their abominable ways, as they have done with their gods. If you do, you will sin against Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

In the cities of these peoples that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance

The cities in Canaan that Yahweh is giving to the people is spoken of as if the cities were the people's inheritance. (See: Metaphor)

you must save alive nothing that breathes

"you must not let any living thing stay alive." This can be stated in positive form. AT: "you must kill every living thing" (See: Litotes)

you must completely destroy them

"you must completely destroy these people groups"

Do this so that they

"Destroy these nations so that they"

to act in any of their abominable ways ... their gods

"to act in abominable ways like the people in these nations have done with their gods"

If you do, you will sin against Yahweh your God

“If you act like these people, you will sin against Yahweh your God”

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing
- Hittite, Hittites
- Amorite, Amorites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Perizzite
- Hivite, Hivites
- Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- abomination, abominations, abominable
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 20:19-20

UDB:

[19] When you surround a city for a long time, trying to capture it, do not cut down the fruit trees outside the city. You are allowed to eat the fruit from the trees, but do not destroy the trees, because they certainly are not your enemies. [20] You are permitted to cut down the other trees and use the wood to make ladders and towers to enable you to go over the walls and capture the city."

ULB:

[19] When you will besiege a city for a long time, as you wage war against it to capture it, you must not destroy its trees by wielding an ax against them. For you may eat from them, so you must not cut them down. For is the tree of the field a man whom you should besiege? [20] Only the trees that you know are not trees for food, you may destroy and cut down; you will build siege works against the city that makes war with you, until it falls.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

wage war

"fight in a war"

by wielding an ax against them

"by cutting down the trees with an ax"

For is the tree of the field a man whom you should besiege?

This rhetorical question is to remind the people of what they should already know. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "For fruit trees are not people, so they are not your enemy." (See: Rhetorical Question)

you know are not trees for food

"you know are not trees that grow fruit to eat"

siege works

These are tools and structures, such as ladders and towers, that are needed to lay siege to a city.

until it falls

This is an idiom. AT: “until the people of the city lose the war” (See: Idiom)

it falls

Here “it” refers to the city which represents the people of the city. (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks
- ax, axes
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Elders

Older men were required to lead the people of Israel and help to administer justice. These men would function as judges, which would later become a more official position. (See: just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

Peace in Israel

The rules and instructions in this chapter help to ensure peace in Israel. This is not a military peace. Instead, it is about establishing peace within Israel and among the people.

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 21:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 21:1-2

UDB:

[1] "Suppose someone has been murdered in a field in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, and you do not know who killed that person. [2] If that happens, your elders and judges must go out to where that person's corpse was found and measure the distance from there to each of the nearby towns.

ULB:

[1] If someone is found killed in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess, lying in the field, and it is not known who has attacked him; [2] then your elders and your judges must go out, and they must measure to the cities that are around him who has been killed.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

If someone is found killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "If someone finds a person whom someone else has killed" (See: Active or Passive)

lying in the field

The dead person is lying in the field.

it is not known who has attacked him

This can be stated in active form. AT: "nobody knows who attacked him" (See: Active or Passive)

they must measure to the cities

"they must measure the distance to the cities"

him who has been killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "him whom someone has killed" or "the dead body" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- elder, elders
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:3-4

UDB:

[3] Then the elders in the closest town must select a young cow that has never been used for doing work. [4] They must take it to a place near a stream where the ground has never been plowed or planted. There they must break its neck.

ULB:

[3] Then the elders of the town nearest to the dead man's body must take a heifer from the herd, one that has never been put to work, and that has not borne the yoke. [4] Then they must lead the heifer down to a valley with running water, a valley that has been neither plowed nor sown, and there in the valley they must break the heifer's neck.

translationNotes

has not borne the yoke

"has not worn a yoke"

running water

This is an idiom for water that is moving. AT: "a stream" (See: Idiom)

a valley that has been neither plowed nor sown

This can be stated in active form. AT: "a valley where nobody has plowed the ground or planted seeds" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- elder, elders
-
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- yoke, yokes, yoked
- water, waters, watered, watering
- plow, plows, plowed, plowing, plowers, plowman, plowmen, plowshares, unplowed
- plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:5

UDB:

[5] The priests must go there also, because Yahweh our God has chosen them from the tribe of Levi to serve him and to be his representatives when they bless people. And he has also chosen them to settle disputes in which someone has been injured.

ULB:

[5] The priests, descendants of Levi, must come forward, for Yahweh your God has chosen them to serve him and give blessing in the name of Yahweh and to decide every case of dispute and assault by their word.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

must come forward

“must come to the valley”

for Yahweh your God has chosen them to serve him

“because the priests are the ones whom Yahweh your God has chosen to serve him”

Yahweh your God

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if he were speaking to one man, so the word “your” is singular. (See: Forms of You)

give blessing

“bless the people of Israel”

in the name of Yahweh

Here the metonym “in the name of” refers to Yahweh and his authority. AT: “as one who says and does what Yahweh himself would say and do” (See: Metonymy)

Yahweh and to decide every case of dispute and assault by their word

“Yahweh, and they will be the ones who settle all disagreements and cases of violence”

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- bless, blessed, blessing
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- name, names, named
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:6-7

UDB:

[6] The elders from the closest town must wash their hands over the young cow whose neck was broken, there in the valley, [7] and they must say, 'We did not murder this person, and we did not see who did it.

ULB:

[6] All the elders of the city that is the nearest to the killed man must wash their hands over the heifer whose neck was broken in the valley; [7] and they must answer to the case and say, 'Our hands have not shed this blood, neither have our eyes seen it.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

the heifer whose neck was broken

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the heifer whose neck the priests broke" (See: Active or Passive)

they must answer to the case

"they must testify to Yahweh about this case"

Our hands have not shed this blood

Here "hands" are a synecdoche for the whole person and "shed this blood" is a metonym for killing an innocent person. AT: "We did not kill this innocent person" (See: Synecdoche and Metonymy)

neither have our eyes seen it

Here "eyes" refers to the whole person. AT: "and we did not see anyone kill this person" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- elder, elders
-
- blood

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:8-9

UDB:

[8] Yahweh, forgive us, your Israelite people whom you rescued from Egypt. Do not consider us to be guilty. Instead, forgive us.' [9] By doing that, you will be doing what Yahweh considers to be right, and you will not be considered to be guilty for murdering that person.

ULB:

[8] Forgive, Yahweh, your people Israel, whom you have redeemed, and do not put guilt for innocent bloodshed in the midst of your people Israel.' Then the bloodshed will be forgiven them. [9] In this way you will put away the innocent blood from your midst, when you do what is right in the eyes of Yahweh.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to tell the elders what they should say when they wash their hands over the heifer. He speaks to them as if he were speaking to one man, so the words "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

whom you have redeemed

Yahweh rescuing the people of Israel from being slaves in Egypt is spoken of as if Yahweh paid money to redeem his people from slavery. (See: Metaphor)

do not put guilt for innocent bloodshed in the midst of your people Israel

This is an idiom. AT: "do not treat your people Israel as if they are guilty of killing an innocent person" (See: Idiom)

Then the bloodshed will be forgiven them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Then Yahweh will forgive his people Israel for the death of an innocent person" (See: Active or Passive)

you will put away the innocent blood from your midst

"you will not be guilty any more of killing an innocent person"

what is right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: "what is right in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- Israel, Israelites
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- guilt, guilty
- innocent
- bloodshed
- blood

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:10-12

UDB:

[10] When you who are soldiers go to fight against your enemies, and Yahweh our God enables you to defeat them, and they become your prisoners, [11] one of you may see among them a beautiful woman that he likes, and he may want to marry her. [12] He should take her to his home, and there she must shave all the hair off her head and cut her fingernails to signify that now she does not belong to her people group anymore, but now she is becoming an Israelite.

ULB:

[10] When you go out to do battle against your enemies and Yahweh your God gives you victory and puts them under your control, and you take them away as captives, [11] if you see among the captives a beautiful woman, and you have a desire for her and wish to take her for yourself as a wife, [12] then you will bring her home to your house; she will shave her head and cut her nails.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel as if he were speaking to one man, so the words "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you go out

"you who are soldiers go out"

you have a desire for her

Use a polite phrase for "you want to sleep with her."

wish to take her for yourself as a wife

"want to marry her"

she will shave her head

"she will shave the hair off of her head"

cut her nails

"cut her fingernails"

translationWords

- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:13-14

UDB:

13 She must take off the clothes that she was wearing when she was captured, and put on Israelite clothes. She must stay in that man's house and mourn for a month because of leaving her parents. After that, he will be allowed to marry her. 14 Later, if he no longer is pleased with her, he will be permitted to allow her to leave him. But because she was shamed and was forced to sleep with him, he will not be allowed to treat her like a slave and sell her to anyone else.

ULB:

13 Then she will take off the clothes she was wearing when she was taken captive and she will remain in your house and mourn for her father and her mother a full month. After that you may sleep with her and be her husband, and she will be your wife. 14 But if you take no delight in her, then you may let her go where she wishes. But you must not sell her at all for money, and you must not treat her like a slave, because you have humiliated her.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel as if he were speaking to one man, so the words "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

she will take off the clothes she was wearing

She will do this after the man brings her to his house and when she shaves her head and cuts her fingernails and toenails as mentioned in Deuteronomy 21:12. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "she will take off the clothes of her people and put on Israelite clothes" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

when she was taken captive

This can be stated in active form. AT: "when you took her captive" (See: Active or Passive)

a full month

"an entire month" or "a whole month"

But if you take no delight in her

You may need to make explicit that the man sleeps with the woman. AT: "But if you sleep with her and then decide that you do not want her as your wife" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

let her go where she wishes

“let her go wherever she wants to go”

because you have humiliated her

“because you shamed her by sleeping with her and then sending her away”

translationWords

- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- month, months, monthly
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- humiliate, humiliated, humiliation

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:15-17

UDB:

15 Suppose that a man has two wives, but he likes one of them and dislikes the other one. And suppose that they both give birth to sons, and that the oldest son is the child of the woman that he does not like. 16 On the day when that man decides which of his possessions each son will obtain after he dies, he must not favor the son of the wife that he loves by giving him the larger share that should go to the firstborn son. 17 He must give two-thirds of his possessions to the older son, the son of the wife whom he does not like. That son is his firstborn son, and he must be given the largest share.

ULB:

15 If a man has two wives and one is loved and the other is hated, and they have both borne him children—both the beloved wife and the hated wife—if the firstborn son is of her that is hated, 16 then on the day that the man causes his sons to inherit what he possesses, he may not make the son of the beloved wife the firstborn before the son of the hated wife, the son who is actually the firstborn. 17 Instead, he must acknowledge the firstborn, the son of the hated wife, by giving him a double portion of all that he possesses; for that son is the beginning of his strength; the right of the firstborn belongs to him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

one is loved and the other is hated

This can be stated in active form. AT: Possible meanings are 1) “the man loves one of his wives and he hates the other wife” or 2) “the man loves one wife more than he loves the other wife” (See: Active or Passive)

they have both borne him children

“both wives have had children with him”

if the firstborn son is of her that is hated

This can be stated in active form. AT: “if the firstborn son belongs to the wife whom the man hates” (See: Active or Passive)

then on the day that the man

“when the man”

the man causes his sons to inherit what he possesses

“the man gives his possessions to his sons as an inheritance”

he may not make the son of the beloved wife the firstborn before the son of the hated wife

“he may not treat the son of the beloved wife as if he were the firstborn instead of the son of the hated wife”

a double portion

“twice as much”

that son is the beginning of his strength

This is an idiom. AT: “that son is the one who shows that the man can become the father of sons” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- beloved
- firstborn
- day, days
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:18-19

UDB:

[18] Suppose there is a boy who is very stubborn and is always rebelling against his parents, and who will not heed what they say to him. And suppose that they punish him but he still does not pay attention to what they tell him. [19] If that happens, his parents must take him to the gate of the city where they live and have him stand in front of the elders of the city.

ULB:

[18] If a man has a stubborn and rebellious son who will not obey the voice of his father or the voice of his mother, and who, even though they correct him, will not listen to them; [19] then his father and his mother must lay hold on him and bring him out to the elders of his city and to the gate of his city.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

who will not obey the voice of his father or the voice of his mother

Here "voice" is a metonym for what a person says. AT: "who will not obey what his father or mother say" (See: Metonymy)

they correct him

"they punish him for his wrongdoing" or "they train and instruct him"

must lay hold on him and bring him out

"must force him to come out"

translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices
- elder, elders
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:20-21

UDB:

[20] Then the parents must say to the elders of that city, 'This son of ours is stubborn and always rebelling against us. He will not pay attention to what we tell him. He eats too much, and he gets drunk.' [21] Then all the elders of that city must execute him by throwing stones at him. By doing that, you will get rid of this evil practice from among you. And everyone in Israel will hear about what happened and they will be afraid to do what he did.

ULB:

[20] They must say to the elders of his city, 'This son of ours is stubborn and rebellious; he will not obey our voice; he is a glutton and a drunkard.' [21] Then all the men of his city must stone him to death with stones; and you will remove the evil from among you. All Israel will hear of it and fear.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

This son of ours

"Our son"

he will not obey our voice

Here "voice" is a metonym for what a person says or a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: "he will not do what we tell him to do" or "he will not obey us" (See: Metonymy and Synecdoche)

a glutton

a person who eats and drinks too much

a drunkard

a person who drinks too much alcohol and gets drunk often

stone him to death with stones

"throw stones at him until he dies"

you will remove the evil from among you

The adjective "evil" can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: "you must remove from among the Israelites the person who does this evil thing" or "you must execute this evil person" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

All Israel

The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. AT: "All the people of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

will hear of it and fear

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "will hear about what happened to the son and be afraid that the people will punish them also" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- stone, stones, stoning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Israel, Israelites
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 21:22-23

UDB:

[22] If someone is executed for having committed a crime for which he deserves to die, and you hang his corpse on a post, [23] you must not allow his corpse to remain there all night. You must bury it on the day that he died, because if you keep the corpse on a post, God will curse the land. You must bury the corpse that day, in order that you do not defile the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you.

ULB:

[22] If a man has committed a sin worthy of death and he is put to death, and you hang him on a tree, [23] then his body must not remain all night on the tree. Instead, you must surely bury him the same day; for whoever is hanged is cursed by God. Obey this commandment so that you do not defile the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel as if he were speaking to one man, so the words "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

If a man has committed a sin worthy of death

"If a man has done something so bad that you need to punish him by killing him"

he is put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you execute him" or "you kill him" (See: Active or Passive)

you hang him on a tree

Possible meanings are 1) "after he has died you hang him on a tree" or 2) "you kill him by hanging him on a wooden post"

bury him the same day

"bury him on the same day as when you execute him"

for whoever is hanged is cursed by God

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "because God curses everyone whom people hang on trees" and 2) "people hang on trees those whom God has cursed." (See: Active or Passive)

do not defile the land

by leaving something God has cursed hanging in the tree

translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung
- body, bodies
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Order in Israel

The instructions in this chapter help to maintain order in this chapter. The people are to have integrity. The people's sin will result in serious punishment. (See: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Virgin woman

If a woman was not a virgin, she was not considered to be worth marrying. The man who slept with her was responsible for providing for her since she will not be able to find a husband to provide for her. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 22:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 22:1-2

UDB:

[1] If you see an Israelite's ox or sheep that has strayed away, do not act as though you did not see it. Take it back to its owner. [2] But if the owner does not live near you, or if you do not know who he is, take the animal to your house. It can stay with you until the owner comes, searching for it. Then you must give the animal to him.

ULB:

[1] You must not watch your fellow Israelite's ox or his sheep go astray and hide yourself from them; you must surely bring them back to him. [2] If your fellow Israelite is not near to you, or if you do not know him, then you must bring the animal home to your house, and it must be with you until he looks for it, and then you must restore it to him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

go astray

"walk away from its owner"

hide yourself from them

This is an idiom. AT: "act as if you do not see them" or "go away without doing anything" (See: Idiom)

If your fellow Israelite is not near to you

"If your fellow Israelite lives far away from you"

or if you do not know him

"or if you do not know who the owner of the animal is"

it must be with you until he looks for it

"you must keep the animal with you until its owner comes looking for it"

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
-
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- restore, restores, restored, restoration

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:3-4

UDB:

[3] You must do that same thing if you see a donkey, a piece of clothing, or anything else that someone has lost. Do not refuse to do what you should do. Do not pretend to know nothing about the matter.

[4] And if you see a fellow Israelite's donkey or cow that has fallen down on the road, do not act as though you did not see it. Help the owner to lift the animal up so that it can stand on its feet again.

ULB:

[3] You must do the same with his donkey; you must do the same with his garment; you must do the same with every lost thing of your fellow Israelite's, anything that he has lost and you have found; you must not hide yourself. [4] You must not see your fellow Israelite's donkey or his ox fallen down in the road and hide yourself from them; you must surely help him to lift it up again.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You must do the same with his donkey

"You must return his donkey in the same way"

you must do the same with his garment

"you must return his clothing in the same way"

you must not hide yourself

This is an idiom. AT: "you must not act as if you do not see that he has lost something" or "you must not go away without doing anything" (See: Idiom)

you must surely help him to lift it up again

"you must help your fellow Israelite lift the animal back up onto its feet"

translationWords

- donkey, mule
- Israel, Israelites
-

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:5

UDB:

[5] Women must not wear men's clothes, and men must not wear women's clothes. Yahweh our God hates people who do things like that.

ULB:

[5] A woman must not wear what pertains to a man, and neither must a man put on women's clothing; for whoever does these things is an abomination to Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

what pertains to a man

"men's clothing"

translationWords

- abomination, abominations, abominable
- Yahweh
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:6-7

UDB:

[6] If you happen to find a bird's nest in a tree or on the ground, and the mother bird is sitting in the nest on its eggs or with the baby birds, do not take the mother bird and kill it. [7] You are permitted to take the baby birds, but you must allow the mother bird to fly away. Do this in order that things will go well for you and that you will live for a long time.

ULB:

[6] If a bird's nest happens to be in front of you on the road, in any tree or on the ground, with young ones or eggs in it, and the mother sitting on the young or on the eggs, you must not take the mother along with the young. [7] You must surely let the mother go, but the young you may take for yourself. Obey this command so that it may go well with you, and that you may prolong your days.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

bird's nest

a home that birds make for themselves out of sticks, grass, plants, and mud

with young ones or eggs in it

"with baby birds or eggs in the nest"

the mother sitting on the young

"the mother bird is sitting on the baby birds"

prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: "be able to live a long time" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:8

UDB:

[8] If you build a new house, you must put a railing around the roof. In this way, you will not be guilty of having caused someone's death if a person falls from it and dies.

ULB:

[8] When you build a new house, then you must make a railing for your roof so that you do not bring blood on your house if anyone falls from there.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

a railing for your roof

a low fence around the edge of the roof so people will not fall off the roof

so that you do not bring blood on your house

Blood is a symbol for death. AT: "so that it will not be the fault of your household if someone dies" (See: Metonymy)

if anyone falls from there

"if anyone falls from the roof because you did not make a railing"

translationWords

- blood
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:9-11

UDB:

[9] Do not plant any crop in the area where your grapevines are growing. If you do, the priests in Yahweh's sanctuary will seize both the seed and the harvest of that vineyard.

[10] Do not hitch together an ox and a donkey for plowing your fields.

[11] Do not wear clothing that is made by weaving together wool and linen.

ULB:

[9] You must not plant your vineyard with two kinds of seed, so that the whole harvest is not confiscated by the holy place, the seed that you have sown and the yield of the vineyard. [10] You must not plow with an ox and a donkey together. [11] You must not wear fabric made of wool and linen together.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

so that the whole harvest is not confiscated by the holy place

The words "holy place" is a metonym for the priests who work in the holy place. This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that the priests in Yahweh's holy place do not take away the whole harvest" or "so that you do not defile the whole harvest and the priests do not allow you to use it" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

the yield of the vineyard

"the fruit that grows in the vineyard"

wool

soft, curly hair that grows on a sheep

linen

thread made from the flax plant (See: Translate Unknowns)

translationWords

- vineyard, vineyards
- kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses
- seed, semen
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- holy place
- plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing
- plow, plows, plowed, plowing, plowers, plowman, plowmen, plowshares, unplowed
-
- donkey, mule

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:12

UDB:

[12] Twist threads together to make tassels and sew them on the four bottom corners of your cloak.

ULB:

[12] You must make yourself fringes on the four corners of the cloak with which you clothe yourself.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word “you” here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

fringes

“tassels.” These are threads that are bound together and hang from the end of each corner of the cloak.

the cloak

a long garment that a person wears over his other clothes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:13-14

UDB:

[13] Suppose a man marries a young woman and sleeps with her and later decides that he does not want her anymore, [14] and suppose that he says false things about her, and claims that she was not a virgin when he married her.

ULB:

[13] Suppose a man takes a wife, sleeps with her, and then hates her, [14] and then accuses her of shameful things and puts a bad reputation on her, and says, 'I took this woman, but when I came near to her, I found no proof of virginity in her.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

then accuses her of shameful things

"then accuses her of having slept with someone before she was married"

puts a bad reputation on her

The abstract noun "reputation" can be translated as a verb phrase. AT: "makes other people think she is a bad person" (See: Abstract Nouns)

but when I came near to her

This is a polite way of saying "to have sexual relations with someone." AT: "but when I slept with her" (See: Euphemism)

I found no proof of virginity in her

The abstract noun "proof" can be translated as a verb phrase. AT: "she could not prove to me that she was a virgin"

translationWords

- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
- virgin, virgins, virginity

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:15

UDB:

15 If that happens, the young woman's parents must take the sheet that was on the bed when the man and their daughter were married, which still has bloodstains on it, and show it to the elders of the city at the gate of the city.

ULB:

15 Then the father and mother of the girl must take proof of her virginity to the elders at the city gate.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

must take proof of her virginity

The abstract nouns "proof" and "virginity" can be translated with verbal phrases. AT: "must take something that proves that she has never had sexual relations" (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- virgin, virgins, virginity
- elder, elders
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:16-17

UDB:

16 Then the father of the young woman must say to the elders, 'I gave my daughter to this man to be his wife. But now he says that he does not want her anymore. 17 And he has falsely said that she was not a virgin when he married her. But look! Here is what proves that my daughter was a virgin! Look at the bloodstains on the sheet where they slept the night that they were married!' And he will show the sheet to the elders.

ULB:

16 The girl's father must say to the elders, 'I gave my daughter to this man as a wife, and he hates her. 17 See, he has accused her of shameful things and said, "I did not find in your daughter the proof of virginity." But here is the proof of my daughter's virginity.' Then they will spread the garment out before the elders of the city.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

he has accused her of shameful things

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "he has accused her of having slept with someone before he married her" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I did not find in your daughter the proof of virginity

The abstract nouns "proof" and "virginity" can be translated as verb phrases. AT: "Your daughter could not prove that she has never had sexual relations" (See: Abstract Nouns)

But here is the proof of my daughter's virginity

The abstract nouns "proof" and "virginity" can be translated as verb phrases. AT: "But this proves that my daughter has never had sexual relations" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Then they will spread the garment out before the elders of the city

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "And then the mother and father will show the clothing with the bloodstain to the elders as proof that she was a virgin" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- elder, elders
- accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations
- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
- virgin, virgins, virginity

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:18-19

UDB:

18 Then the elders of that city must take that man and whip him. 19 They shall require that he pay a
fine of one hundred pieces of silver and give the money to the father of the young woman, because
the man has brought shame on an Israelite young woman. Also, that woman must continue to live
with him; she is his wife. He is not allowed to divorce her during the rest of his life.

ULB:

18 The elders of that city must take that man and punish him; 19 and they must fine him one hun-
dred shekels of silver, and give them to the father of the girl, because the man has caused a bad
reputation for a virgin of Israel. She must be his wife; he may not send her away during all his
days.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

they must fine him

“they must make him pay as a punishment”

one hundred shekels

“100 shekels” (See: Biblical Money and Numbers)

give them to the father of the girl

“give the money to the father of the girl”

has caused a bad reputation for a virgin of Israel

The abstract noun “reputation” can be translated as a verb phrase. AT: “has caused people to think that a virgin of Israel is a bad person” (See: Abstract Nouns)

he may not send her away

“never allow him to divorce her”

during all his days

This is an idiom. AT: “for his entire life” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- elder, elders
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished
- silver
- virgin, virgins, virginity
- Israel, Israelites
- day, days

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:20-21

UDB:

[20] But if what the man said is true, and there is nothing to prove that she was a virgin when he married her, [21] they must take that young woman to the door of her father's house. Then the men of that city must execute her by throwing stones at her. They must do that because she has done something in Israel that is very disgraceful, by sleeping with some man while she was still living in her father's house. By executing her like that, you will get rid of this evil practice from among you.

ULB:

[20] But if this thing is true, that the proof of virginity was not found in the girl, [21] then they must bring out the girl to the door of her father's house, and the men of her city must stone her to death with stones, because she has committed a disgraceful action in Israel, to act as a harlot in her father's house; and you will remove the evil from among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

But if this thing is true

"But if it is true" or "But if what the man said is true"

that the proof of virginity was not found in the girl

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that the man did not find proof that the girl was a virgin" (See: Active or Passive)

the proof of virginity

The abstract nouns "proof" and "virginity" can be translated as verb phrases. AT: "something that proves that the girl has never had sexual relations" (See: Abstract Nouns)

then they must bring out the girl

"then the elders must bring out the girl"

stone her to death with stones

"throw stones at her until she dies"

because she has committed a disgraceful action in Israel

“because she has done a disgraceful thing in Israel”

to act as a harlot in her father’s house

“acting like a harlot while living in her father’s house”

you will remove the evil

The adjective “evil” can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “you must remove from among the Israelites the person who does this evil thing” or “you must execute this evil person” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

translationWords

- true, truth, truths
- virgin, virgins, virginity
- stone, stones, stoning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment
- Israel, Israelites
- prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:22

UDB:

[22] If a man is caught while he is sleeping with another man's wife, both of them must be executed. By doing that, you will get rid of this evil practice from Israel.

ULB:

[22] If a man is found sleeping with a woman who is married to another man, then they must both die, the man who was sleeping with the woman and the woman herself; and you will remove the evil from among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "you" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

If a man is found

This can be stated in active form. AT: "If someone finds a man" (See: Active or Passive)

and you will remove

"in this way you will remove"

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:23-24

UDB:

[23] Suppose in some town a man sees a young woman who is promised to be married to another man, and he is caught sleeping with her. [24] You must take both of them to the gate of that town, where the town leaders decide important matters. There you must execute them both by throwing stones at them. You must execute the young woman because she did not shout for help even though she was in the town. And the man must be executed because he slept with someone who was already promised to be married. By doing that, you will get rid of this evil practice from among you

ULB:

[23] If there is a girl who is a virgin, engaged to a man, and another man finds her in the city and sleeps with her, [24] take both of them to the city gate, and stone them to death. You must stone the girl, because she did not cry out, even though she was in the city. You must stone the man, because he violated his neighbor's wife; and you will remove the evil from among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "you" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

engaged to a man

"who is promised to marry a man"

take ... and stone

These commands are addressed to Israel as a group and so are plural. (See: Forms of You)

take both of them

"then you must bring both the girl and the man who slept with her"

because she did not cry out

"because she did not call for help"

because he violated his neighbor's wife

The Israelites at that time thought of a man and woman who had engaged each other for marriage as husband and wife. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "because he slept with a girl who belongs to a fellow Israelite" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

you will remove the evil from among you

The adjective "evil" can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: "you must remove from among the Israelites the person who does this evil thing" or "you must execute this evil person" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

translationWords

- virgin, virgins, virginity
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- stone, stones, stoning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:25-27

UDB:

25 But suppose out in the open countryside a man meets a young woman who is engaged to be married, and he forces her to sleep with him. If that happens, only that man must be executed. 26 You must not punish the young woman, because she did not do anything for which she deserves to be executed. This case is like when one man attacks another man in the countryside and murders him, 27 because the man who forced her to sleep with him saw her when she was in the open countryside, and even though she called out for help, there was no one there who could rescue her.

ULB:

25 But if the man finds the engaged girl in the field, and if he seizes her and sleeps with her, then only the man who sleeps with her must die. 26 But to the girl you must do nothing; there is no sin worthy of death in the girl. For this case is like when a man attacks his neighbor and kills him. 27 For he found her in the field; the engaged girl cried out, but there was no one to save her.

translationNotes

the engaged girl

This means a girl whose parents have agreed to let her marry a certain man, but the girl has not married him yet.

then only the man who sleeps with her must die

“then you must only kill the man who slept with her”

there is no sin worthy of death in the girl

“you are not to punish her by killing her for what she did”

For this case is like when a man attacks his neighbor and kills him

“Because this situation is like the situation when somebody attacks another person and kills him”

For he found her in the field

“Because the man found the girl working in the field”

translationWords

- seize, seizes, seized, seizure
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:28-29

UDB:

[28] If a man forces a young woman who is not engaged to be married to sleep with him, and if someone sees him while he is doing that, [29] that man must pay fifty pieces of silver to the young woman's father, and he must marry her, because he shamed her by forcing her to sleep with him. He is not allowed to divorce her during the rest of his life.

ULB:

[28] If a man finds a girl who is a virgin but who is not engaged, and if he seizes her and sleeps with her, and if they are discovered, [29] then the man who slept with her must give fifty shekels of silver to the girl's father, and she must become his wife, because he has humiliated her. He may not send her away during all his days.

translationNotes

but who is not engaged

"but whose parents have not promised another man that she will marry him"

if they are discovered

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if somebody finds out what happened" (See: Active or Passive)

fifty shekels of silver

A shekel weighs eleven grams. AT: "fifty pieces of silver" or "550 grams of silver" (See: Biblical Money and Numbers)

He may not send her away during all his days

This is an idiom. AT: "He must never divorce her during his entire life" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- virgin, virgins, virginity
- silver
- humiliate, humiliated, humiliation
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- day, days

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 22:30

UDB:

[30] A man must not take what belongs to his father by sleeping with any of his father's wives.

ULB:

[30] A man must not take his father's wife as his own; he must not take away his father's marriage rights.

translationNotes

must not take his father's wife as his own

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "must not marry his father's former wife, even if she is not his mother" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The assembly of Yahweh

This was probably the corporate worship of Yahweh, when the people would come together to worship him.

Racial superiority

Yahweh viewed Israel as superior to the other nations of Canaan. In many cultures, this may be seen as immoral. It must be remembered that the instructions of this chapter are very remote from the modern world. These people groups were always sinful and idolatrous. (See: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 23:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 23:1-2

UDB:

[1] Any male person whose reproductive organs have been destroyed may not be included as one of Yahweh's people.

[2] No illegitimate person or descendant of an illegitimate person, extending to the tenth generation, shall be included as one of Yahweh's people.

ULB:

[1] No man injured by crushing or cutting off may enter the assembly of Yahweh.

[2] No illegitimate child may belong to the assembly of Yahweh; as far as to the tenth generation of his descendants, none of them may belong to the assembly of Yahweh.

translationNotes

man injured by crushing or cutting off

"man whose private body parts someone has crushed or cut off"

may enter the assembly of Yahweh

This is an idiom. AT: "may be a full member of the Israelite community" (See: Idiom)

illegitimate child

Possible meanings are 1) a child born to parents who committed incest or adultery or 2) a child born to a prostitute.

as far as to the tenth generation of his descendants

This "tenth" is the ordinal number for ten. AT: "even after ten generations of the illegitimate child's descendants" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

none of them

"none of these descendants"

translationWords

- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- Yahweh
- generation
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:3-4

UDB:

[3] No one from the Ammon or Moab people groups shall be included as one of Yahweh's people, extending to the tenth generation. [4] One reason for this is that their leaders refused to give your ancestors food and water when they were traveling from Egypt to Canaan. Another reason is that they paid Balaam son of Beor from the town of Pethor in Mesopotamia, to curse you Israelites.

ULB:

[3] An Ammonite or a Moabite may not belong to the assembly of Yahweh; as far as to the tenth generation of his descendants, none of them may belong to the assembly of Yahweh. [4] This is because they did not meet you with bread and with water on the road when you had come out of Egypt, and because they hired against you Balaam son of Beor from Pethor in Aram Naharaim, to curse you.

translationNotes

may not belong to the assembly of Yahweh

This is an idiom. AT: "may not be a full member of the Israelite community" (See: Idiom)

as far as to the tenth generation of his descendants

This "tenth"is the ordinal number for ten. AT: "even after ten generations of his descendants" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

they did not meet you with bread and with water

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "they did not welcome you by bringing you food and drink" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

against you ... curse you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "you" here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

- Yahweh
- generation
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- bread
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Balaam
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:5-6

UDB:

[5] But Yahweh our God did not pay attention to Balaam; instead, he caused Balaam to bless your ancestors, because Yahweh loved them. [6] As long as Israel is a nation, you must not do anything to cause things to go well for those two people groups to enable them to prosper.

ULB:

[5] But Yahweh your God would not listen to Balaam; instead, Yahweh your God turned the curse into a blessing for you, because Yahweh your God loved you. [6] You must never seek their peace or prosperity, during all your days.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

would not listen

This is an idiom. AT: “did not pay attention” (See: Idiom)

turned the curse into a blessing for you

“had him bless you and not curse you”

You must never seek their peace or prosperity

Possible meanings are 1) “You should never make a peace treaty with the Ammonites and the Moabites” or 2) “You must not do anything to cause things to go well for those 2 people groups to enable them to prosper” .

during all your days

This is an idiom. AT: “as long as you are a nation” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God

- Balaam
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- love, loves, loving, loved
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous
- day, days

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:7-8

UDB:

[7] But do not despise anyone from the Edom people group, because they are descendants of your ancestor Isaac, just like you are. And do not despise people from Egypt, because they treated your ancestors well when they first lived in Egypt. [8] The grandchildren of people from Edom and Egypt who live among you now may be included among Yahweh's people.

ULB:

[7] You must not detest an Edomite, for he is your brother; you must not abhor an Egyptian, because you were a foreigner in his land. [8] The descendants of the third generation that are born to them may belong to the assembly of Yahweh.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You must not detest an Edomite

"Do not hate an Edomite"

for he is your brother

"because he is your relative"

you must not abhor an Egyptian

"do not hate an Egyptian"

The descendants of the third generation that are born to them may belong to the assembly of Yahweh

This "third" is the ordinal number for three. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "If an Edomite or an Egyptian comes to live in the Israelite community, his grandchildren may become full members of that community" (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- generation
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:9-11

UDB:

[9] When your soldiers are living in camp in time of war, they must avoid doing things that would make them unacceptable to God. [10] If any soldier becomes unacceptable to God because semen comes out of his body during the night, the next morning he must go outside the camp and stay there during that day. [11] But in the evening of that day, he must bathe himself, and at sunset he will be allowed to come back into the camp.

ULB:

[9] When you march out as an army against your enemies, then you must keep yourselves from every evil thing. [10] If there is among you any man who is unclean because of what happened to him at night, then he must go out of the army's camp; he must not come back into the camp. [11] When evening comes, he must bathe himself in water; when the sun goes down, he will come back inside the camp.

translationNotes

When you march out as an army against your enemies, then you must keep yourselves

Moses speaks here to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

against your enemies

"to fight against your enemies"

keep yourselves from every evil thing

"keep yourselves away from all bad things"

any man who is unclean because of what happened to him at night

This is a polite way of saying that he had an emission of semen. AT: "any man who is unclean because he had an emission of semen while he was asleep" (See: Euphemism)

translationWords

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:12-14

UDB:

[12] Your soldiers must have a toilet area outside the camp where you can go when you need to. [13] When you go to fight against your enemies, carry a stick along along with your weapons, in order that when you need to defecate, you can dig a hole with the stick, and then cover up the hole when you have finished defecating. [14] You must keep the camp acceptable to Yahweh our God, because he is with you in your camp to protect you and to enable you to defeat your enemies. Do not do anything disgraceful that would cause Yahweh to stop you from being his people.

ULB:

[12] You must have a place also outside the camp to which you will go; [13] and you will have something among your tools to dig with; when you squat down to relieve yourself, you must dig with it and then put back the earth and cover up what has come out from you. [14] For Yahweh your God walks in the midst of your camp to give you victory and to give your enemies into your hand. Therefore your camp must be holy, so that he may not see any unclean thing among you and turn away from you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you will have something among your tools to dig with

“you should have a tool that you can use to dig with”

when you squat down to relieve yourself

This is a polite way of saying to defecate. AT: “when you squat down to defecate” (See: Euphemism)

you must dig with it

“you must dig a hole with the tool”

cover up what has come out from you

“cover up your excrement”

so that he may not see any unclean thing among you

“so that Yahweh may not see any unclean thing among you”

translationWords

- earth, earthen, earthly
- God
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:15-16

UDB:

15 If slaves who escape from their masters come to you and request you to protect them, do not send them back to their masters. 16 Allow them to stay among you, in whatever town they choose, and do not mistreat them.

ULB:

15 You must not give back to his master a slave who has escaped from his master. 16 Let him live with you, in whatever town he chooses. Do not oppress him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

a slave who has escaped from his master

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “a slave from another country who escaped from his master and came to Israel” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Let him live with you

“Let the slave live among your people”

translationWords

- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:17-18

UDB:

[17] Do not allow any Israelite man or woman to become prostitutes at the temple. [18] Also, do not allow any people who earned money from being a prostitute to bring any of that money into the temple of Yahweh our God, even if they solemnly promised to pay that money to him. Yahweh hates those who are prostitutes.

ULB:

[17] There must be no cultic prostitute among any of the daughters of Israel, neither must there be a cultic prostitute among the sons of Israel. [18] You must not bring the wages of a prostitute or the wages of a dog into the house of Yahweh your God for any vow; for both these are abominations to Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

cultic prostitute ... cultic prostitute ... prostitute ... dog

Yahweh gives a complete list of both forms of prostitution by both men and women to forbid prostitution by anyone for any reason. (See: Merism)

cultic prostitute ... among any of the daughters ... among the sons

Possible meanings are that Moses 1) openly forbids women and men to perform sexual acts as part of temple service or 2) uses a euphemism to forbid women and men to perform sexual acts to receive money. (See: Euphemism)

You must not bring the wages of a prostitute ... into the house

“A woman who earns money as a prostitute must not bring that money ... into the house”

a dog

a man who allows men to have sex with him for money

into the house of Yahweh your God

“into the temple”

for any vow

“to fulfill a vow”

both these

the wages of a female prostitute and of a male prostitute.

translationWords

- prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored
- Israel, Israelites
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- vow, vows, vowed
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:19-20

UDB:

[19] When you lend money or food or anything else to a fellow Israelite, do not charge them interest. [20] You are allowed to charge interest when you lend money to foreigners who live in your land, but not when you lend money to Israelites. Do this in order that Yahweh our God will bless you in everything that you do in the land that you are about to enter and occupy.

ULB:

[19] You must not lend on interest to your fellow Israelite—interest of money, interest of food, or the interest of anything that is lent on interest. [20] To a foreigner you may lend on interest; but to your fellow Israelite you must not lend on interest, so that Yahweh your God may bless you in all that you put your hand to, in the land which you are going in to possess.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You must not lend on interest to your fellow Israelite

“If you lend something to your fellow Israelite, you must not make him pay you back more than he borrowed”

lend on interest

to lend to somebody and force that person to pay back more than was lent

interest of money ... anything that is lent on interest

“you must not charge interest when you lend somebody money, food, or anything else”

all that you put your hand to

This is an idiom. AT: “all that you do” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- bless, blessed, blessing
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:21-23

UDB:

[21] When you solemnly promise to give something to Yahweh your God or to do something for him, do not delay in doing it. Yahweh expects you to do what you promised, and if you do not do it, you will be committing a sin. [22] But if you do not solemnly promise to do something, that is not sinful. [23] But if you voluntarily promise to do something, you must do it.

ULB:

[21] When you make a vow to Yahweh your God, you must not be slow in fulfilling it, for Yahweh your God will surely require it of you; it would be sin for you not to fulfill it. [22] But if you will refrain from making a vow, it will be no sin for you. [23] That which has gone out from your lips you must observe and do; according as you have vowed to Yahweh your God, anything that you have freely promised with your mouth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you must not be slow in fulfilling it

“you must not take a long time to fulfill the vow”

for Yahweh your God will surely require it of you

“because Yahweh your God will blame you and punish you if you do not fulfill your vow”

But if you will refrain from making a vow, it will be no sin for you

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “But, if you do not make a vow, you will not sin because you will not have a vow to fulfill” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

That which has gone out from your lips

This is an idiom. AT: “The words you have spoken” (See: Idiom)

according as you have vowed to Yahweh your God

“whatever you have vowed to Yahweh your God that you will do”

anything that you have freely promised with your mouth

“anything that people have heard you promise to do because you wanted to do it”

with your mouth

“so that people heard you say it”

translationWords

- vow, vows, vowed
- fulfill, fulfilled
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 23:24-25

UDB:

[24] When you walk through someone else's vineyard, you are allowed to pick and eat as many grapes as you want, but you must not put any in a container and take them away. [25] When you walk along a path in someone else's field of grain, you are allowed to pluck some of the grain and eat it, but you must not cut any grain with a sickle and take it with you.

ULB:

[24] When you go into your neighbor's vineyard, you may eat as many grapes as you desire, but do not put any in your basket. [25] When you go into your neighbor's ripe grain, you may pluck the heads of grain with your hand, but do not put a sickle to your neighbor's ripe grain.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you may eat as many grapes as you desire

"then you may enjoy eating grapes until you are full"

but do not put any in your basket

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "but you may not put any grapes in your bag to take them away with you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

When you go into your neighbor's ripe grain

"When you walk through your neighbor's field where there is grain growing"

you may pluck the heads of grain with your hand

"then you may eat the kernels of grain with your hand"

but do not put a sickle to your neighbor's ripe grain

"but do not cut down your neighbor's ripe grain and take it with you"

sickle

a sharp tool that farmers use to harvest wheat

translationWords

- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- vineyard, vineyards
- grape, grapes, grapevine
- grain, grains, grainfields

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the teaching about how to maintain justice in Israel. (See: just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

Special concepts in this chapter

"No man may take a mill or an upper millstone as a pledge"

A millstone was the way a person made a living. To take a person's millstone was to take take away the way they earned money and produced food. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Lending money

Lending money to fellow Israelites was a way to help them out. It was not intended to be a way to make money off their brothers. This chapter gives limitations regarding the lending of money.

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 24:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 24:1-2

UDB:

[1] Suppose a man marries a woman and later decides that he does not want her because there is something offensive, and he sends her away from his house. And suppose he writes a paper in which he says that he is divorcing her, and he gives the paper to her and sends her away from his house [2] Then suppose that she goes away. She is allowed to marry another man.

ULB:

[1] When a man takes a wife and marries her, if she finds no favor in his eyes because he has found some unsuitable thing in her, then he must write her a certificate of divorce, put it into her hand, and send her out of his house. [2] When she has gone out of his house, she may go and be another man's wife.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

When a man takes a wife and marries her

The phrases "takes a wife" and "marries her" mean the same thing. AT: "When a man marries a woman" (See: Doublet)

if she finds no favor in his eyes

Here the "eyes" represent the whole person. AT: "if he decides that he does not like her" (See: Synecdoche)

because he has found some unsuitable thing in her

"because for some reason he has decided that he does not want to keep her"

he must write her a certificate of divorce

"he must give his wife an official paper saying that they are not married anymore"

she may go and be another man's wife

"she may go and marry another man"

translationWords

- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- divorce

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:3-4

UDB:

[3] Suppose that that man later also decides that he does not like her, and that he also writes a paper in which he says that he is divorcing her, and he sends her away from his house. Or, suppose that the second husband dies. [4] If either of those things happen, her first husband must not marry her again. He must consider that she has become unacceptable to Yahweh. Yahweh would consider it to be disgusting if he married her again. You must not sin by doing that in the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you.

ULB:

[3] If the second husband hates her and writes her a certificate of divorce, puts it into her hand, and sends her out of his house; or if the second husband dies, the man who took her to be his wife— [4] then her former husband, the one who had first sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife, after she has become impure; for that would be an abomination to Yahweh. You must not cause the land to become guilty, the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel about a woman who gets a divorce and marries another man.

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

If the second husband hates her

“If the second husband decides that he hates the woman”

certificate of divorce

This is an official paper saying that the man and woman are not married anymore. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 24:1.

puts it into her hand

“gives it to the woman”

the man who took her to be his wife

"the second man who married the woman"

after she has become impure

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "after she has become unclean by the divorce and remarriage to another man" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

You must not cause the land to become guilty

The land is spoken of as if it could sin. AT: "You must not spread guilt around in the land" (See: Personification)

translationWords

- divorce
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- pure, purify, purification
- abomination, abominations, abominable
- Yahweh
- God
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:5

UDB:

[5] When a man has just become married, he must not be required to become a soldier in the army or be required to do any other work for the government. He must be exempt from such work for one year after being married. He should stay at home and make his wife happy for that year.

ULB:

[5] When a man takes a new wife, he will not go to war with the army, neither may he be commanded to go on any forced duty; he will be free to be at home for one year and will cheer his wife whom he has taken.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

When a man takes a new wife

“When a man is newly married to a woman”

neither may he be commanded to go on any forced duty

This can be stated in active form. AT: “and no one is to force him to live away from his home and do any kind of work” (See: Active or Passive)

he will be free to be at home

“he will be free to live at home”

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:6

UDB:

[6] Anyone who lends money to someone else is allowed to require that person to give him something to guarantee that he will pay back the money that he borrowed, but he must not take from him his millstone because that would be taking from the other person the millstone that his family needs to make flour for baking bread to stay alive.

ULB:

[6] No man may take a mill or an upper millstone as a pledge, for that would be taking a person's life as a pledge.

translationNotes

mill

a tool for making flour by grinding grain in between two heavy discs of stone

upper millstone

the top disc of stone in a mill

for that would be taking a person's life as a pledge

The word "life" is a metonym for what a person needs to keep himself alive. AT: "because he would be taking from the man what the man needs to make food for his family" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- pledge, pledged, pledges

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:7

UDB:

[7] If someone kidnaps a fellow Israelite to make that person his slave or to sell him to become someone else's slave, you must execute the person who did that. By doing that, you will get rid of this evil from among you.

ULB:

[7] If a man is found kidnapping any of his brothers from among the people of Israel, and treats him as a slave and sells him, that thief must die; and you will remove the evil from among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

If a man is found kidnapping

This is an idiom for "If a man kidnaps." It can be stated in active form. AT: "If you find a man kidnapping" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

kidnapping

using physical force to take an innocent person away from his home and imprison him

any of his brothers from among the people of Israel

"any of his fellow Israelites"

that thief must die

"then other Israelites should kill that thief as a punishment for what he did"

you will remove the evil from among you

The adjective "evil" can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: "you must remove from among the Israelites the person who does this evil thing" or "you must execute this evil person" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- Israel, Israelites
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:8-9

UDB:

[8] If you are suffering from leprosy, be sure to do everything that the priests, who are from the tribe of Levi, tell you to do. Obey carefully the instructions that I have given to them. [9] Do not forget what Yahweh our God did to Miriam, when she became a leper, as your ancestors were coming out of Egypt.

ULB:

[8] Take heed regarding any plague of leprosy, so that you carefully observe and follow every instruction given to you which the priests, the Levites, teach you; as I commanded them, so you will act. [9] Call to mind what Yahweh your God did to Miriam as you were coming out of Egypt.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Take heed ... you carefully observe ... Call to mind what Yahweh your God

Moses speaks to the Israelites here as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" and the commands "take heed" and "call to mind" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Take heed regarding any plague of leprosy

"Pay attention if you suffer from leprosy" or "Pay attention if you have leprosy"

every instruction given to you which the priests, the Levites, teach you

This can be stated in active form. AT: "all of the instructions that I have given you and that the priests, who are Levites, teach you to do" (See: Active or Passive)

teach you ... you will act ... you were coming out

Moses here speaks to the Israelites as a group, so these instances of the word "you" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

as I commanded them, so you will act

"you must make sure that you do exactly what I have commanded them"

commanded them

The word “them” refers to the priests, who are Levites.

Call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: “Remember” (See: Idiom)

as you were coming out of Egypt

“during the time when you were leaving Egypt”

translationWords

- plague, plagues
- leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- Miriam
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:10-11

UDB:

10 When you lend something to someone, do not go into his house to take the cloak that he says that he will give you to guarantee that he will return what he has borrowed. 11 Stand outside his house, and the man to whom you are lending something will bring the cloak out to you.

ULB:

10 When you make your neighbor any kind of loan, you must not go into his house to fetch his pledge. 11 You will stand outside, and the man to whom you have lent will bring the pledge outside to you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

When you make your neighbor any kind of loan

“When you loan something to your neighbor”

to fetch his pledge

“to take his pledge”

his pledge

This refers to what he has promised that he would give you if he did not pay back the loan.

You will stand outside

“You should wait outside his house”

translationWords

- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- pledge, pledged, pledges

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:12-13

UDB:

12 But if he is poor, do not keep that cloak overnight. 13 When the sun sets, take the cloak back to him, in order that he may wear it while he sleeps. If you do that, he will ask God to bless you, and Yahweh our God will be pleased with you.

ULB:

12 If he is a poor man, you must not sleep with his pledge in your possession. 13 You must surely restore to him the pledge by the time the sun goes down, so that he may sleep in his cloak and bless you; it will be righteousness for you before Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you must not sleep with his pledge in your possession

“you must not keep his coat overnight”

his pledge

This refers to what he has promised that he would give you if he did not pay back the loan. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 24:10.

restore to him the pledge

“give him back what he has given you to show that he will pay back the loan”

so that he may sleep in his cloak and bless you

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “so that he will have his coat to keep himself warm when he sleeps, and he will be grateful to you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

cloak

a coat or other clothing that keeps a person warm at night. This was probably the “pledge” Moses was speaking of in Deuteronomy 24:10-12

it will be righteousness for you before Yahweh your God

"Yahweh your God will approve of the way you handled this matter"

translationWords

- pledge, pledged, pledges
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- bless, blessed, blessing
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:14-15

UDB:

14 Do not mistreat any servants whom you have hired who are poor and needy, whether they are Israelites or foreigners who are living in your town. 15 Every day, before sunset, you must pay them the money that they have earned. They are poor and they need to get their pay. If you do not pay them right away, they will cry out against you to Yahweh, and he will punish you for having sinned like that.

ULB:

14 You must not oppress a hired servant who is poor and needy, whether he is of your fellow Israelites, or of the foreigners who are in your land within your city gates; 15 Each day you must give him his wage; the sun must not go down on this unsettled matter, for he is poor and is counting on it. Do this so that he does not cry out against you to Yahweh, and so that it not be a sin that you have committed.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You must not oppress a hired servant

“You must not treat a hired servant poorly”

hired servant

a person who gets paid daily for his work

poor and needy

These two words have similar meanings and emphasize that this is a person who cannot help himself. (See: Doublet)

within your city gates

Here “city gates” mean towns or cities. AT: “in one of your cities” (See: Synecdoche)

Each day you must give him his wage

“You should give the man the money he earns every single day”

the sun must not go down on this unsettled matter

This is an idiom. The Israelites considered the new day as starting when the sun went down. AT: "you should pay the man on the same day he does the work" (See: Idiom)

for he is poor and is counting on it

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "because he is poor and depends on his wages to buy his food for the next day" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he does not cry out against you to Yahweh

"he does not call out to Yahweh and ask him to punish you"

translationWords

- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Israel, Israelites
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:16

UDB:

16 Parents must not be executed for crimes that their children have committed, and children must not be executed for crimes that their parents have committed. People should be executed only for the crimes that they themselves have committed.

ULB:

16 The parents must not be put to death for their children, neither must the children be put to death for their parents. Instead, everyone must be put to death for his own sin.

translationNotes

The parents must not be put to death for their children

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must not execute the parents because of something bad that one of their children did” (See: Active or Passive)

neither must the children be put to death for their parents

This can be stated in active form, AT: “and you must not execute the children because of something bad that their parents did” (See: Active or Passive)

everyone must be put to death for his own sin

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you should only execute a person because of something bad that he did himself” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- children, child
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:17-18

UDB:

17 You must do for foreigners who live among you and for orphans the things that the laws state that must be done for them. And if you lend something to a widow, do not take her coat from her as a guarantee that she will return it. 18 Do not forget that you had great troubles when you were slaves in Egypt, and that Yahweh our God rescued you from there. That is why I am commanding you to help others who have troubles.

ULB:

17 You must not use force to take away the justice that is due the foreigner or the fatherless, nor take the widow's cloak as a pledge. 18 Instead, you must call to mind that you were a slave in Egypt, and that Yahweh your God rescued you from there. Therefore I instruct you to obey this command.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You must not use force to take away the justice that is due the foreigner or the fatherless

Moses speaks of justice as if it were a physical object that a stronger person can violently pull away from a weaker person. AT: "You must not treat a foreigner or the fatherless unfairly" (See: Metaphor)

fatherless

This refers to children whose parents have both died and do not have relatives to care for them.

nor take the widow's cloak as a pledge

A lender would take something from the borrower to ensure that she would pay him back. He was not allowed to take her coat because she needed it to stay warm. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "and do not take a widow's cloak as a pledge because she needs it to stay warm" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "remember" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- pledge, pledged, pledges
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:19-20

UDB:

[19] When you harvest your crops, if you have forgotten that you left one bundle in the field, do not go back to get it. Leave it there for foreigners, orphans, and widows. If you do that, Yahweh will bless you in everything that you do. [20] And when you have harvested all your olives from the trees once, do not go back to pick the ones that are still on the trees.

ULB:

[19] When you reap your harvest in your field, and if you have forgotten a sheaf in the field, you must not go back to get it; it must be for the foreigner, for the fatherless, or for the widow, so that Yahweh your God may bless you in all the work of your hands. [20] When you shake your olive tree, you must not go over the branches again; it will be for the foreigner, for the fatherless, or for the widow.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

When you reap your harvest in your field

“When you cut down the grain in your field”

a sheaf

grain that the reaper has tied together

it must be for the foreigner, for the fatherless, or for the widow

You can make clear the understood information. AT: “you must leave the sheaf so a foreigner, an orphan, or a widow can take it” (See: Ellipsis)

in all the work of your hands

Here “hands” refers to the whole person. AT: “in all the work that you do” (See: Synecdoche)

When you shake your olive tree

You can make clear the understood information. AT: “When you shake the branches of your olive tree, causing the olives to fall to the ground so you can pick them up” (See: Ellipsis)

you must not go over the branches again

“do not pick every single olive from the tree”

it will be for the foreigner, for the fatherless, or for the widow

You can make clear the understood information. AT: “the olives that stay on the branches are for foreigners, orphans, and widows to pick and take with them” (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- bless, blessed, blessing
- works, deeds, work, acts
- olive, olives

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 24:21-22

UDB:

[21] Similarly, when you pick the grapes in your vineyard, do not go back a second time to try to find more. Leave them for the foreigners, orphans, and widows among you. [22] Do not forget that Yahweh acted kindly toward you when you were slaves in Egypt. That is why I am commanding you to be kind to those who are needy."

ULB:

[21] When you gather the grapes of your vineyard, you must not glean it again. What is left over will be for the foreigner, for the fatherless, and for the widow. [22] You must call to mind that you were a slave in the land of Egypt; therefore I instruct you to obey this command.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

What is left over will be for the foreigner, for the fatherless, and for the widow

"The grapes that you do not pick will be for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow to pick"

for the foreigner, for the fatherless, and for the widow

These refer to groups of people. AT: "for foreigners, for those who are fatherless, and for the widows" (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "remember" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- grape, grapes, grapevine
- vineyard, vineyards
- glean, gleans, gleaned, gleanings
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues to teach about justice in Israel. (See: just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"A perfect and just weight you must have"

In the ancient Near East, money was weighted on a scale. If a persons weight was off, they were robbing people. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 25:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 25:1-2

UDB:

[1] "If two Israelites have a dispute and they go to a court, the judge will probably decide that one is innocent and that the other one is guilty. [2] If the judge says that the guilty person must be punished, he shall command him to lie with his face on the ground and be whipped. The number of times he is struck with a whip will depend on what kind of crime he committed.

ULB:

[1] If there is a dispute between men and they go to court, and the judges judge them, then they will acquit the righteous and condemn the wicked. [2] If the guilty man deserves to be beaten, then the judge will make him lie down and be beaten in his presence with the ordered number of blows, as was his crime.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

If the guilty man deserves to be beaten

This can be stated in active form. AT: "If the judge orders them to beat the guilty man" (See: Active or Passive)

be beaten in his presence

This can be stated in active form. AT: "he will watch them beat him" (See: Active or Passive)

with the ordered number of blows, as was his crime

"the number of times he has ordered because of the bad deed he did"

translationWords

- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- acquit, acquits, acquitted
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation
- evil, wicked, wickedness

- guilt, guilty
- crime, crimes, criminal, criminals

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:3

UDB:

[3] It is permitted that he be struck as many as forty times, but no more than that. If he is struck more than forty times, he would be humiliated publicly.

ULB:

[3] The judge may give him forty blows, but he may not exceed that number; for if he should exceed that number and beat him with many more blows, then your fellow Israelite would be humiliated before your eyes.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

The judge may give him forty blows

"The judge may say that they should beat the guilty person 40 times" (See: Numbers)

but he may not exceed that number

"but the judge may not order them to beat him more than 40 times"

for if he should exceed that number and beat him with many more blows

"because if the judge orders them to beat him many more than 40 times"

then your fellow Israelite would be humiliated before your eyes

This may be stated in active form. AT: "then the judge would humiliate your fellow Israelite in front of all of the people of Israel" (See: Active or Passive)

humiliated before your eyes

Here the people are represented by their "eyes" to emphasize what they see. AT: "humiliated, and you would all see it" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- judge, judges
- Israel, Israelites
- humiliate, humiliated, humiliation

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:4

UDB:

[4] When your ox is walking on the grain to separate it from the chaff, do not prevent it from eating some of grain.

ULB:

[4] You must not muzzle the ox when he treads out the grain.

translationNotes

You must not muzzle the ox

“You must not put something over the mouth of an ox”

when he treads out the grain

while he separates the grain from the chaff by walking on it or dragging heavy wood over it

translationWords

-
- grain, grains, grainfields

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:5-6

UDB:

[5] If two brothers live on the same property, and one of them who has no son dies, the man's widow should not marry someone who is not a member of his family. The dead man's brother must marry her and sleep with her. It is his duty to do that. [6] If she later gives birth to a son, that son is to be considered the son of the man who died, in order that the dead man's name will not disappear from Israel.

ULB:

[5] If brothers live together and one of them dies, not having any son, then the wife of the dead man must not be married off to someone else outside the family. Instead, her husband's brother must sleep with her and take her to himself as a wife, and do the duty of a husband's brother to her. [6] This is so that the firstborn that she bears will succeed in the name of that man's dead brother, so that his name will not perish from Israel.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses is still speaking to the people of Israel.

If brothers live together

Possible meanings are: 1) "If brothers live on the same property" or 2) "If brothers live near each other."

then the wife of the dead man must not be married off to someone

This can be stated in active form. AT: "then the family of the dead man must not let the widow marry someone" (See: Active or Passive)

do the duty of a husband's brother to her

"do what the brother of a dead husband is supposed to do"

will succeed in the name of that man's dead brother

The word "name" is a metonym for the person's family line. AT: "will continue the family line of that man's dead brother" (See: Metonymy)

so that his name will not perish from Israel

The word “name” is a metonym for the person’s family line. AT: “so that his family line will not disappear from Israel” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- son, sons
- family, families
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- firstborn
- name, names, named
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:7-8

UDB:

[7] But if the dead man's brother does not want to marry that woman, she must stand at the city gate. She must say to the city leaders, 'My husband's brother refuses to marry me in order that I may give birth to a son who will prevent the dead man's name from disappearing in Israel.' [8] Then the elders must summon that man and talk to him. Perhaps he will still refuse to marry that widow.

ULB:

[7] But if the man does not wish to take his brother's wife for himself, then his brother's wife must go up to the gate to the elders and say, 'My husband's brother refuses to raise up for his brother a name in Israel; he will not perform the duty of a husband's brother to me.' [8] Then the elders of his city must call him and speak to him. But suppose that he insists and says, 'I do not wish to take her.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

must go up to the gate to the elders

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "must go up to the city gate where the elders judge cases" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

refuses to raise up for his brother a name

Here "name" refers to the memory of someone through his descendants. AT: "refuses to give his brother a son" (See: Metonymy)

he will not perform the duty of a husband's brother to me

"he will not do what a husband's brother is supposed to do and marry me"

I do not wish to take her

"I do not wish to marry her"

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- elder, elders
- name, names, named
- Israel, Israelites
- call, calls, calling, called

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:9-10

UDB:

[9] In that case, she must go up to him while the elders are watching, and take off one of his sandals to symbolize that he would not receive any of her property, spit in his face, and say to him, 'This is what happens to the man who refuses to do what is needed to allow his dead brother to have a son in order that our family name does not disappear.' [10] After that happens, that man's family will be known as 'the family of the man whose sandal was pulled off.'

ULB:

[9] Then his brother's wife must come up to him in the presence of the elders, take off his sandal from his foot, and spit in his face. She must answer him and say, 'This is what is done to the man who does not build up his brother's house.' [10] His name will be called in Israel, 'The house of him whose sandal has been taken off.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

must come up to him in the presence of the elders

"must walk up close to him with the elders there watching"

who does not build up his brother's house

Here "house" is a metonym for the family. AT: "who does not give his brother a son and continue his brother's family line" (See: Metonymy)

His name will be called in Israel

"People in Israel will know his family as"

The house of him whose sandal has been taken off

Here removing the sandal symbolizes that the brother would not receive any of the property of his dead brother. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. This can also be stated in active form. AT: "The house of him whose sandal his brother's widow took off his foot" or "The family of a man who did not marry the wife of his dead brother" or "The family whom everyone despises" or "The family who is shameful" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- elder, elders
- sandal, sandals
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- name, names, named
- call, calls, calling, called
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:11-12

UDB:

[11] When two men are fighting with each other, and the one man's wife comes up to help her husband by grabbing hold of the other man's private parts, [12] do not act mercifully toward her; cut off her hand.

ULB:

[11] If men fight with each other, and the wife of one comes to rescue her husband out of the hand of him who struck him, and if she stretches out her hand and takes him by the private parts, [12] then you must cut off her hand; your eye must have no pity.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

out of the hand of him who struck him

Here "hand" refers to power or control. AT: "so the one who struck him will not strike him again" or "from the man who hit him" (See: Metonymy)

your eye must have no pity

Here "eye" means the whole person. AT: "you should not feel sorry for her" or "you must not show her mercy" (See: Synecdoche)

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:13

UDB:

[13-14] When you are buying or selling things, do not try to cheat people by having two kinds of weights, one which you use when you buy something and one which you use when you sell something, or two kinds of measuring baskets, one which you use when you buy something and one which you use when you sell something.

ULB:

[13] You must not have in your bag different weights, a large and a small. [14] You must not have in your house different measures, a large and a small.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You must not have in your bag different weights, a large and a small

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. You can also make clear the understood information. AT: “You must not cheat people by using a weight that is larger than you say it is when you buy things and by using a weight that is smaller than you say it is when you sell things” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Ellipsis)

weights

Weights were stones used on a balance to determine how much something weighs

You must not have in your house different measures, a large and a small

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. You can also make clear the understood information. AT: “You must not cheat people by using a measure that is larger than you say it is when you buy things and by using a measure that is smaller than you say it is when you sell things” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Ellipsis)

measures

A measure was a basket or other container for measuring how much there is of something.

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:15-16

UDB:

[15] Always use correct weights and correct measuring baskets, in order that Yahweh our God will allow you to live a long time in the land that he is giving to you. [16] Yahweh hates all those who act dishonestly, and he will punish them.

ULB:

[15] A perfect and just weight you must have; a perfect and just measure you must have, so that your days may be long in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you. [16] For all who do such things, all that act unrighteously, are an abomination to Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel about using fair weights and measures when buying and selling. He speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

A perfect and just

"A correct and fair"

weight ... measure

See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 25:13.

your days may be long

This is an idiom. AT: "you may live for a long time" (See: Idiom)

For all who do such things, all that act unrighteously

"because everyone who cheats people by using different sized weights and measures"

translationWords

- perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- Yahweh

- God
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- abomination, abominations, abominable

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 25:17-19

UDB:

17 Continue to remember what the Amalek people group did to your ancestors when they were coming out of Egypt. 18 They attacked your ancestors as they were traveling, when they were weak and exhausted. Those people were not afraid of God at all, so they attacked your ancestors from the rear and killed all those who were unable to walk as fast as the others. 19 Therefore, when Yahweh our God has given you the land that he promised to give you, and when he has enabled you to rest from fighting all your enemies around you, kill all the Amalek people group, with the result that no one will remember them anymore. Do not forget to do this!

ULB:

17 Call to mind what Amalek did to you on the road as you came out of Egypt, 18 how he met you on the road and attacked those of you at the rear, all who were feeble in your rear, when you were faint and weary; he did not honor God. 19 Therefore, when Yahweh your God has given you rest from all your enemies round about, in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess as an inheritance, you must not forget that you must blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so except where noted the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Call to mind what Amalek did to you

This is an idiom, and “Amalek” is a metonym for the Amelikite people. AT: “Remember what the Amalekites did to you” (See: Idiom and How to Translate Names and Metonymy)

as you came out

The word “you” here is plural. (See: Forms of You)

how he met you on the road

“how they met you along the way”

attacked those of you at the rear

“attacked those of your people who were in the back of the line”

all who were feeble in your rear

“all the people who were weak in the back of the line”

faint and weary

These words have similar meanings and emphasize how tired the people were. AT: “tired and exhausted” (See: Doublet)

he did not honor God

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “he was not afraid of God’s punishment” or “he did not respect God” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

you must blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven

“you must kill all of the Amalekites so that nobody will remember them anymore”

translationWords

- Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- honor, honors
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- Promised Land
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter recalls the great events of Israel's history when Yahweh brought them out of Egypt.

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 26:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 26:1-2

UDB:

[1] After you occupy the land that Yahweh our God is giving to you, and you have settled there, [2] each of you must take some of the first crops that you harvest, put it in a basket, and take it to the place that Yahweh will have chosen for you to worship there.

ULB:

[1] When you have come into the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance, and when you possess it and live in it, [2] then you must take some of the first of all the harvest of the land that you have brought in from the land that Yahweh your God is giving you. You must put it in a basket and go to the place that Yahweh your God will choose as his sanctuary.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

some of the first of all the harvest

“some of the first fruits of the harvest” or “some of the first crops of the harvest.” This “first” is the ordinal number for one. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- basket, baskets, basketfuls
- sanctuary

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:3-4

UDB:

[3] Go to the high priest who is serving at that time and say to him, 'By giving you this first part of my harvest today, I am declaring to Yahweh our God that I have picked it in the land that he solemnly promised to our ancestors to give to us.' [4] Then the priest must take the basket of food from your hand and put it on the altar where sacrifices are offered to Yahweh our God.

ULB:

[3] You must go to the priest who will be serving in those days and say to him, 'I acknowledge today to Yahweh your God that I have come to the land that Yahweh swore to our ancestors to give us.' [4] The priest must take the basket out of your hand and set it down before the altar of Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- basket, baskets, basketfuls
- altar, altars

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:5

UDB:

5 Then in Yahweh's presence you must say this: 'My ancestor Jacob was a man from Aram and powerful nation. He took his family to Egypt. They were a small group when they went there, but they lived there and their descendants became a very large and powerful nation.

ULB:

5 You must say before Yahweh your God, 'My ancestor was a wandering Aramean. He went down into Egypt and stayed there, and his people were few in number. There he became a great, mighty, and populous nation.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

My ancestor was a wandering Aramean

This is the beginning of the statement that the Israelite male should make when bringing his basket.

a wandering Aramean

This refers to Jacob, who was the ancestor of all the Israelites. He lived for many years in Aram-Nahairam, a region located in Syria.

stayed there

"lived the rest of his life there"

There he became

The word "he" is a metonym for "Jacob's descendants." (See: Metonymy)

a great, mighty

These words mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that Israel became a large and powerful nation. AT: "very great" (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:6-7

UDB:

[6] Then the people of Egypt acted very harshly toward them, and they forced them to become their slaves and to work very hard. [7] Then our ancestors cried out to you, Yahweh our God, and you heard them. You saw that they were suffering, and that they were forced to work very hard, and were being oppressed.

ULB:

[6] The Egyptians treated us badly and afflicted us. They made us do the work of slaves. [7] We cried out to Yahweh, the God of our fathers, and he heard our voice and saw our affliction, our labor, and our oppression.

translationNotes

General Information:

This continues what the Israelite must say when he brings his first crops to Yahweh.

treated us badly and afflicted us

These two phrases say basically the same thing. They emphasize that the Egyptians acted very harshly. (See: Doublet)

treated us

Here "us" refers to the people of Israel that were living in Egypt. The speaker includes himself as one of the people whether he lived in Egypt or not. (See: Inclusive "We")

he heard our voice

Here "voice" refers to the whole person and his cries or prayers. AT: "he heard our cries" or "he heard our prayers" (See: Metonymy)

our affliction, our labor, and our oppression

"that the Egyptians were afflicting us, that we were doing very hard work, and that the Egyptians were oppressing us"

translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- voice, voices
- labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:8-9

UDB:

[8] Then by your great power and by performing many kinds of miracles, and other terrifying things, you brought them out of Egypt. [9] You brought us to this land and gave it to us, a land that is very fertile.

ULB:

[8] Yahweh brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand, with an outstretched arm, with great fearsomeness, with signs, and with wonders; [9] and he has brought us to this place and has given us this land, a land that flows with milk and honey.

translationNotes

General Information:

This continues what the Israelite must say when he brings his first crops to Yahweh.

Yahweh brought us

Here "us" refers to the people of Israel that were living in Egypt. The speaker includes himself as one of the people whether he lived in Egypt or not. (See: Inclusive "We")

with a mighty hand, with an outstretched arm

Here "a mighty hand" and "an outstretched arm" are metaphors for Yahweh's power. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:34. AT: "by showing his mighty power" (See: Metaphor)

with great fearsomeness

"with acts that terrified the people who saw them"

a land that flows with milk and honey

This is an idiom. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 6:3. AT: "a land where plenty of milk and honey flow" or "a land that is excellent for cattle and farming"

translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- power, powers
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- honey, honeycomb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:10-11

UDB:

10 So now, Yahweh, I have brought to you the first part of the harvest from the land that I received.'
Then you must set the basket down in Yahweh's presence and worship him there. 11 And you must
celebrate by eating a meal together to thank Yahweh our God for all the good things that he has
given to you and to your family. And you must invite the descendants of Levi and the foreigners
who are living among you to also rejoice and eat with you.

ULB:

10 Now look, I have brought the first of the harvest of the land that you, Yahweh, have given me.'
You must set it down before Yahweh your God and worship before him; 11 and you must rejoice in
all the good that Yahweh your God has done for you, for your house—you, and the Levite, and the
foreigner who is among you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Israelites what they must say when they bring theire first crops to Yahweh. He speaks to them as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

first of the harvest

"first fruits of the harvest" or "first crops of the harvest"

You must set it down

"You must set the basket down."

you must rejoice in all the good that Yahweh your God has done for you

"you must rejoice and be grateful for all the good things that Yahweh your God has done for you"

translationWords

- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- worship
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:12-13

UDB:

12 Every third year, you must bring to the descendants of Levi and to the foreigners who are living among you and the orphans and the widows a tithe of your crops, in order that in every town they will have plenty to eat. 13 Then you must say to Yahweh, 'I have brought to you, from my house, all of the tenth from my harvest this year, the tenth that I have set aside for you. I am giving it to the descendants of Levi, to the foreigners, the orphans, and the widows, as you commanded us to do. I have not disobeyed any of your commands about the tenth portion, and I have not forgotten any of your commands about it.

ULB:

12 When you have finished giving all the tithe of your harvest in the third year, that is, the year of tithing, then you must give it to the Levite, to the foreigner, to the fatherless, and to the widow, so that they may eat within your city gates and be filled. 13 You must say before Yahweh your God, 'I have brought out of my house the things that belong to Yahweh, and have given them to the Levite, to the foreigner, to the fatherless, and to the widow, according to all your commandments that you have given me. I have not transgressed any of your commandments, neither have I forgotten them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

in the third year

This "third" is the ordinal number for three. Every three years the people of Israel gave a tenth of the harvest to the poor. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

fatherless

These are children whose parents have both died and do not have relatives to care for them.

widow

This means a woman whose husband has died and has no children to care for her now that she is old.

eat within your city gates and be filled

Here “gates” means towns or cities. AT: “so that those within your towns may have enough food to eat” (See: Synecdoche)

I have brought out of

These are the first words of another statement that the Israelite was supposed to say.

neither have I forgotten them

This means that he has obeyed all of God’s commandments.

translationWords

- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- transgress, transgresses, transgression

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:14-15

UDB:

14 I declare that I have not eaten any food from the tenth portion while I was mourning for someone who died. And I have not taken any of it out of my house while I was in any condition unacceptable to you; I have not offered any of it to spirits of dead people. Yahweh, I have obeyed you and done everything that you have commanded us concerning the tenth portion. 15 So please look down from your holy place in heaven, and bless us, your Israelite people. Also bless this very fertile land which you have given to us, which is what you promised our ancestors that you would do.'

ULB:

14 I have not eaten any of it in my mourning, nor have I put it somewhere else when I was impure, nor have I given any of it in honor of the dead. I have listened to the voice of Yahweh my God; I have obeyed everything you have commanded me to do. 15 Look down from the holy place where you live, from heaven, and bless your people Israel, and the land that you have given us, as you had sworn to our fathers, a land flowing with milk and honey.'

translationNotes

General Information:

This continues what the Israelite must say to Yahweh when he gives his tithe to the poor.

I have not eaten any of it in my mourning

"I have not eaten any of the tithe while I was mourning"

when I was impure

Here "impure" means the person is unclean according to the Law. God does not allow an unclean person to touch the tithe he is giving to God. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "when I was unclean according to the Law" or "when the law says I cannot touch it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I have listened to the voice of Yahweh my God; I have obeyed everything you have commanded me to do

Here "voice of Yahweh" is a metonym for what Yahweh says. Both statements share similar meanings. They emphasize that the person has obeyed all of God's commands. (See: Metonymy and Parallelism)

from the holy place where you live, from heaven

These two phrases mean the same thing. AT: “from heaven, your holy dwelling place” (See: Doublet)

a land flowing with milk and honey

This is an idiom. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 6:3. AT: “a land where plenty of milk and honey flow” or “a land that is excellent for cattle and farming”

translationWords

- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- honor, honors
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- voice, voices
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- holy place
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- honey, honeycomb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:16-17

UDB:

[16] Today Yahweh our God is commanding you to obey all these rules and decrees. So obey them faithfully, with all your inner being. [17] Today you have declared that he is your God, and that you will conduct your lives as he wants you to do, and that you will obey all his commands and rules and decrees, and that you will do all that he tells you to do.

ULB:

[16] Today Yahweh your God is commanding you to obey these statutes and decrees; you will therefore keep them and do them with all your heart and with all your soul. [17] You have declared today that Yahweh is your God, and that you will walk in his ways and keep his statutes, his commandments, and his decrees, and that you will listen to his voice.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom “with all … heart” means “completely” and “with all … soul” means “with all your being.” These two phrases have similar meaning. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:29. AT: “with all your being” or “with all your energy” (See: Idiom and Doublet)

that you will walk in his ways and keep his statutes, his commandments, and his decrees, and that you will listen to his voice

The words “walk,” “keep,” and “listen” have similar meanings here. Here “voice” refers to what God has said. AT: “that you will completely obey everything Yahweh commands” (See: Parallelism and Metonymy)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed

- heart, hearts
- soul, souls
- acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- voice, voices

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 26:18-19

UDB:

18 And today Yahweh has declared that you are his people, which is what he promised that you would be, and he commands you to obey all his commands. 19 If you do that, he will cause you to become greater than any other nation that he has established, and he will enable you to praise him and honor him. You are a special people to Yahweh, set apart and holy to him, just as he promised."

ULB:

18 Today Yahweh has declared that you are a people who are his own possession, as he had promised you, and that you are to keep all his commandments, 19 and he will set you high above all the other nations that he has made, and you will receive praise, fame, and honor. You will be a people that is set apart to Yahweh your God, just as he said."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

a people who are his own possession

"a people who belong to him"

he will set you high above

This is an idiom. AT: "he will make you more important than" or "he will make you greater than" (See: Idiom)

he will set you high above all the other nations that he has made, and you will receive praise, fame, and honor

Possible meanings are 1) "he will cause you to become greater than any other nation that he has established, and he will enable you to praise him and honor him" or 2) "he will have people praise you more than they praise every other nation that he has made; people will say that you are better than any other nation, and they will honor you."

You will be a people that is set apart to Yahweh your God

Yahweh choosing the people of Israel to belong to him in a special way is spoken of as if Yahweh set them apart from all other nations. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh your God will set you apart from other nations" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted
- people of God, my people
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- promise, promises, promised
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- nation, nations
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy
- honor, honors
- set apart

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 26 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 26 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

"May the man be cursed"

This phrase is repeated several times in this chapter. This parallelism serves as a warning to the Israelites when they will live in the Promised Land. This is part of the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. (See: Promised Land and law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 27:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 27:1-3

UDB:

[1] Moses, along with the other Israelite leaders, said this to the people: "Obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today. [2] Soon you will cross the Jordan River and enter the land that Yahweh, your God, promised to give to you. There, set up some large stones and cover them with plaster. [3] Write on those stones all these laws and teachings, when you enter that very fertile land that Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, promised to give to you.

ULB:

[1] Moses and the elders of Israel commanded the people and said, "Keep all the commandments that I command you today. [2] On the day when you will pass over the Jordan to the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, you must set up some large stones and plaster them with plaster. [3] You must write on them all the words of this law when you have passed over; that you may go into the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, a land flowing with milk and honey, as Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, has promised you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so except where noted, the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

command you today ... you will pass

Moses is speaking to the Israelites as a group, so both instances of the word "you" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

I command

Here "I" refers to Moses. The elders are there in agreement with Moses, but he is the only one speaking.

plaster them with plaster

Plaster is usually a mixture of lime, sand, and water that is spread on something. It dries to form a hard, smooth surface on which a person can write. AT: "spread plaster on them" or "make them so you can write on them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a land flowing with milk and honey

This is an idiom. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 6:3. AT: “a land where plenty of milk and honey flow” or “a land that is excellent for cattle and farming” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Moses
- elder, elders
- Israel, Israelites
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Yahweh
- God
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- honey, honeycomb
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:4-5

UDB:

[4] When you have crossed the Jordan River, set up some large stones on Mount Ebal, just as I told you, and cover them with plaster. [5] And build a stone altar there to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, but do not do any work on those stones with iron tools.

ULB:

[4] When you have passed over the Jordan, set up these stones that I am commanding you about today, on Mount Ebal, and plaster them with plaster. [5] There you must build an altar to Yahweh your God, an altar of stones; but you must raise no iron tool to work the stones.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you have passed ... set up ... I am commanding you

Moses is addressing the Israelites as a group, so the instances of “you” and the command “set up” are plural. (See: Forms of You)

plaster them with plaster

“spread plaster on them” or “make them so you can write on them.” See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:2.

Mount Ebal

This is a mountain near Shechem. See how you translated it in Deuteronomy 11:29.

you must raise no iron tool to work the stones

This refers to the chisels that would make the stones smoother, in order that they might fit together better. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “you will not shape the altar stones with iron tools” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- altar, altars

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:6-8

UDB:

[6] The altar that you make to burn sacrifices to Yahweh our God must be made with uncut stones. [7] And there you must sacrifice offerings to restore fellowship with Yahweh, and you must eat your share of those offerings and rejoice in the presence of Yahweh. [8] And, when you write these laws on those stones, you must write them very clearly."

ULB:

[6] You must build the altar of Yahweh your God of unworked stones; you must offer burnt offerings on it to Yahweh your God, [7] and you will sacrifice fellowship offerings and will eat there; you will rejoice before Yahweh your God. [8] You will write on the stones all the words of this law very plainly."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

unworked stones

stones in their natural shape that no one has shaped with metal tools

write on the stones

This refers to the stones they were to set up on Mount Ebal and cover with plaster. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:2 and Deuteronomy 27:4.

translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:9-10

UDB:

[9] Then Moses, along with the priests, said to all the Israelite people, "You Israelite people, be quiet and listen to what I am saying. Today you have become the people who belong to Yahweh, our God. [10] So you must do what he tells you, and obey all the rules and regulations that I am giving to you today."

ULB:

[9] Moses and the priests, the Levites, spoke to all Israel and said, "Be silent and listen, Israel: Today you have become the people of Yahweh your God. [10] You must therefore obey the voice of Yahweh your God and obey his commandments and statutes that I am commanding you today."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

obey the voice of Yahweh your God

Here the metonym "voice of Yahweh" refers to what he says. AT: "obey what Yahweh your God says" (See: Metonymy)

I am commanding

Moses is commanding. The Levites are there in agreement with Moses, but he is the only one speaking.

translationWords

- Moses
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Israel, Israelites
- people of God, my people
- Yahweh
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:11-12

UDB:

[11] On that same day Moses said to the Israelite people, [12] "After you have crossed over the Jordan River, the tribes of Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Joseph, and Benjamin must stand on Mount Gerizim and request Yahweh to bless the people.

ULB:

[11] Moses commanded the people the same day and said, [12] "These tribes must stand on Mount Gerizim to bless the people after you have passed over the Jordan: Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Joseph, and Benjamin.

translationNotes

These tribes

Here the metonym "tribes" refers to the people from the tribes of Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Joseph, and Benjamin. AT: "The people from these tribes" (See: Metonymy)

Mount Gerizim

A small mountain north of Mount Ebal. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 11:29.

Joseph

This combines the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, who were descendants of Joseph.

translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Simeon
- Judah
- Issachar
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:13-14

UDB:

[13] And the tribes of Reuben, Gad, Asher, Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali must stand on Mount Ebal and listen to the things that Yahweh will do when he curses the people.

[14] The descendants of Levi must shout these words loudly:

ULB:

[13] These are the tribes that must stand on Mount Ebal to pronounce curses: Reuben, Gad, Asher, Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali. [14] The Levites will answer and say to all the men of Israel in a loud voice:

translationNotes

Mount Ebal

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 11:29.

pronounce curses

“say in a loud voice how Yahweh will curse Israel”

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- Reuben
- Gad
- Asher
- Zebulun
- Dan
- Naphtali
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Israel, Israelites
- voice, voices

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:15

UDB:

15 'Yahweh will curse anyone who carves a figure from wood or stone or casts a figure from metal, and secretly sets it up and worships it.

Yahweh considers that those things are detestable.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

ULB:

15 'May the man be cursed who makes a carved or cast figure, an abomination to Yahweh, the work of the hands of a craftsman, and who sets it up in secret.' Then all the people must answer and say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

May the man be cursed ... sets it up in secret

This is the statement the Levites must shout to all the people of Israel. It may be stated in active form. AT: "May Yahweh curse the person ... sets it up in secret" (See: Active or Passive)

the work of the hands of a craftsman

This is an idiom. AT: "something a man has made" (See: Idiom)

craftsman

a man who knows how to make things well

translationWords

- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- people of God, my people
- amen, truly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:16-17

UDB:

16 'Yahweh will curse anyone who dishonors his father or his mother.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

17 'Yahweh will curse anyone who removes someone else's markers of property boundaries.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

ULB:

16 'May the man be cursed who dishonors his father or his mother.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

17 'May the man be cursed who removes his neighbor's landmark.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Levites and the people what they must say.

May the man be cursed

This may be stated in active form. AT: "May Yahweh curse the man" (See: Active or Passive)

who removes his neighbor's landmark

The full meaning of the statement can be made explicit. AT: "who takes land away from his neighbor by moving the markers on the borders of his land" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- people of God, my people
- amen, truly
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:18-19

UDB:

18 'Yahweh will curse anyone who leads a blind person to go in the wrong direction.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

19 'Yahweh will curse anyone who deprives foreigners or orphans or widow of the things that the laws state must be done for them.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

ULB:

18 'May the man be cursed who makes the blind to wander away from the road.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

19 'May the man be cursed who uses force to take away the justice due to a foreigner, fatherless, or widow.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Levites and the people what they must say.

May the man be cursed

This may be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:16. AT: "May Yahweh curse the man" (See: Active or Passive)

uses force to take away the justice due to a foreigner ... widow

Moses speaks of justice as if it were a physical object that a stronger person can violently pull away from a weaker person. Your language might have one word that means "use force to take away." See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 24:17. AT: "treats a foreigner ... widow unfairly" (See: Metaphor)

fatherless

These are children whose parents have both died and do not have relatives to care for them.

widow

This means a woman whose husband has died and has no children to care for her in her old age.

translationWords

- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:20-21

UDB:

[20] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who shows no respect for his father
by sleeping with any of his father's wives.'
And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'
[21] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who sleeps with any animal.'
And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

ULB:

[20] 'May the man be cursed who lies with his father's wife, because he has taken away his father's rights.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'
[21] 'May the man be cursed who sleeps with any kind of beast.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Levites and the people what they must say.

May the man be cursed

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:16. AT: "May Yahweh curse the man" (See: Active or Passive)

his father's wife

This does not refer to the man's mother, but another wife of his father.

he has taken away his father's rights

When a man marries a woman, only he has the legal right to sleep with her. The full meaning of this statement may be made explicit. AT: "he has taken away his father's legal rights" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

who sleeps with any kind of beast

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "who sleeps with any kind of beast in the way that man sleeps with a woman" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- people of God, my people
- amen, truly
- beast, beasts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:22-23

UDB:

[22] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who sleeps with his sister or with his half-sister.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

[23] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who sleeps with his mother-in-law.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

ULB:

[22] 'May the man be cursed who sleeps with his sister, the daughter of his father, or with the daughter of his mother.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

[23] 'May the man be cursed who sleeps with his mother-in-law.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Levites and the people what they must say.

May the man be cursed

This may be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:16. AT: "May Yahweh curse the man" (See: Active or Passive)

the daughter of his father, or with the daughter of his mother

This means a man cannot sleep with his sister, even if she has a different mother or father.

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- sister, sisters

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:24-25

UDB:

[24] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who secretly murders someone else.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

[25] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who, because someone else has given him a bribe, murders someone who is innocent.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'

ULB:

[24] 'May the man be cursed who kills his neighbor secretly.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

[25] 'May the man be cursed who takes a bribe to kill an innocent person.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Levites and the people what they must say.

May the man be cursed

This may be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:16. AT: "May Yahweh curse the man" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery
- innocent

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 27:26

UDB:

[26] 'Yahweh will curse anyone who by disobeying these laws refuses to declare that those laws are good.'

And all the people must reply, 'Amen.'"

ULB:

[26] 'May the man be cursed who does not confirm the words of this law, that he will obey them.' Then all the people must say, 'Amen.'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues telling the Levites and the people what they must say.

May the man be cursed

This may be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 27:16. AT: "May Yahweh curse the man" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- confirm, confirms, confirmed, confirmation
- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Blessings and warnings

This chapter explains some of the blessings and warnings associated with Israel's obedience to the law of Moses. (See: bless, blessed, blessing and law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 28:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 28:1-2

UDB:

[1] "If you do what Yahweh our God tells you to do and faithfully obey everything that I am today commanding you to do, he will cause you to become greater than any other nation on the earth. [2] If you obey Yahweh, all these blessings will come to you.

ULB:

[1] If you listen carefully to the voice of Yahweh your God so as to keep all his commandments that I am commanding you today, Yahweh your God will set you above all the other nations of the earth. [2] All these blessings will come on you and overtake you, if you listen to the voice of Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

to the voice of Yahweh your God

Here the metonym "voice of Yahweh" refers to what he says. AT: "to what Yahweh your God says" (See: Metonymy)

so as to keep

"and obey"

set you above

Moses speaks of being important or being great as if it were being physically higher, as on a higher hill. AT: "make you more important than" or "make you greater than" (See: Metaphor)

All these blessings will come on you and overtake you

Moses describes the blessings as a person who would attack them by surprise or chase and catch them. AT: "Yahweh will bless you like this in ways that will completely surprise you, and it will be as if you cannot escape having him bless you" (See: Metaphor and Personification)

translationWords

- voice, voices
- Yahweh
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- nation, nations
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:3-4

UDB:

[3] He will bless everything that you do when you are in the cities

and he will bless every thing that you do when you are working in the fields.

[4] He will bless you by giving you many children and by giving you abundant crops, and plenty of cattle and sheep.

ULB:

[3] Blessed will you be in the city, and blessed will you be in the field. [4] Blessed will be the fruit of your body, and the fruit of your ground, and the fruit of your beasts, the increase of your cattle, and the young of your flock.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Blessed will you be

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will bless you” (See: Active or Passive)

in the city ... in the field

This merism means that Yahweh will bless them everywhere. (See: Merism)

the fruit of your body, and the fruit of your ground, and the fruit of your beasts

These idioms for “your children, and your crops, and all your animals” form a merism for everything the Israelites valued. (See: Idiom and Merism)

the fruit of your beasts, the increase of your cattle, and the young of your flock

This doublet is three ways of saying that Yahweh will make the Israelites’ animals many and strong. AT: “all of your animals along with the calves of the cattle and the lambs of the flocks” (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- body, bodies
- beast, beasts
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:5-6

UDB:

[5] He will bless you by giving you plenty of grain to make bread.

[6] He will bless you everywhere—when you go out of your houses and when you come into your houses.

ULB:

[5] Blessed will be your basket and your kneading trough. [6] Blessed will you be when you come in, and blessed will you be when you go out.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Blessed will be

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will bless” (See: Active or Passive)

your basket and your kneading trough

Israelites used a basket to carry grain. A “kneading trough” was a bowl they used to mix the grain and make bread. AT: “all the food you grow and all the food you eat” (See: Metonymy)

when you come in ... when you go out

This merism refers to all of life’s activities everywhere they go. (See: Merism)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- basket, baskets, basketfuls

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:7-8

UDB:

[7] Yahweh will enable you to defeat the armies of your enemies;

they will attack you from one direction, but they will run away from you in seven directions.

[8] Yahweh will bless you by filling your barns with grain, and he will bless all the work that you do;

he will bless you in the land that he is giving to you.

ULB:

[7] Yahweh will cause your enemies who rise up against you to be struck down before you; they will come out against you one way but will flee before you seven ways. [8] Yahweh will command the blessing to come on you in your barns and in all that you put your hand to; he will bless you in the land that he is giving you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

cause your enemies who rise up against you to be struck down before you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “cause you to defeat the armies that attack you” (See: Active or Passive)

but will flee before you seven ways

“but they will run away from you in seven directions”

seven ways

This is an idiom. The actual number could be more or less than seven. AT: “in many different directions” (See: Idiom)

Yahweh will command the blessing to come on you in your barns

Moses describes Yahweh blessing the Israelites as if Yahweh were commanding a person to attack them by surprise. AT: “When Yahweh blesses you, you will be surprised by how much grain you have in your barns” (See: Metaphor and Personification)

in all that you put your hand to

This is an idiom. AT: “in everything you do” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- bless, blessed, blessing
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:9-10

UDB:

[9] If you obey all the commandments that Yahweh our God has given to you and if you live your lives by following his commandments, he will make you his own, his holy people, which is just as he promised.

[10] Then all the people groups on the earth will realize that you belong to Yahweh, and they will be afraid of you.

ULB:

[9] Yahweh will establish you as a people that is set apart for himself, as he has sworn to you, if you keep the commandments of Yahweh your God, and walk in his ways. [10] All the peoples of the earth will see that you are called by the name of Yahweh, and they will be afraid of you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Yahweh will establish you as a people that is set apart for himself

Yahweh choosing the people of Israel to belong to him in a special way is spoken of as if Yahweh put them in a place different from the place all other nations live in. AT: “Yahweh will make you a holy people that belongs to him” (See: Metaphor)

you are called by the name of Yahweh

Here the metonym “called by the name of Yahweh” means belonging to him. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh has called you his own” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- set apart
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- God
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- earth, earthen, earthly

- call, calls, calling, called
- name, names, named
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:11-12

UDB:

[11] And Yahweh will cause you to prosper very much. He will give you many children, many cattle, and abundant crops in the land that he solemnly promised to our ancestors that he would give to you.

[12] At the time that rain is needed, Yahweh will send it from where he stores it in the sky, and he will bless all your work, with the result that you will be able to lend money to many other nations, but you will not need to borrow money from them.

ULB:

[11] Yahweh will make you very prosperous in the fruit of your body, in the fruit of your cattle, in the fruit of your ground, in the land that he swore to your fathers to give you. [12] Yahweh will open to you his storehouse of the heavens to give the rain for your land at the right time, and to bless all the work of your hand; you will lend to many nations, but you will not borrow.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

in the fruit of your body, in the fruit of your cattle, in the fruit of your ground

This is an idiom. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 28:4. AT: “with children, animals, and crops” (See: Idiom)

his storehouse of the heavens

Moses speaks of the clouds from which the rain falls as if they were a building where he stores the rain. AT: “the clouds” (See: Metaphor)

at the right time

“when the crops need it”

all the work of your hand

The word “hand” is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “all the work that you do” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- body, bodies
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:13-14

UDB:

[13] If you faithfully obey all of the commands of Yahweh our God that I am giving you today, Yahweh will cause your nation to be superior to other nations, not inferior to them; you will always be prosperous and you will never be needy.

[14] Yahweh will do all these things for you if you do not stop obeying what I am commanding you today, and if you never worship other gods.

ULB:

[13] Yahweh will make you the head, and not the tail; you will be only above, and you will never be beneath, if you listen to the commandments of Yahweh your God that I am commanding you today, so as to observe and to do them, [14] and if you do not turn away from any of the words that I am commanding you today, to the right hand or to the left, so as to go after other gods to serve them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

the head, and not the tail

This metaphor describes the nation of Israel as an animal and means the Israelites will always be the leaders over other nations and never the servants following behind them. The Israelites will be superior in power, money, and honor. (See: Metaphor)

will be only above ... will never be beneath

The Israelites will rule over others but never have others rule them.

I am commanding you

Moses is speaking to all the Israelites, so the word “you” is plural. (See: Forms of You)

if you do not turn away from any of the words that I am commanding you today, to the right hand or to the left, so as to go after other gods to serve them

Disobeying Yahweh and worshiping other gods is spoken of as if a person physically turned and went in a different direction from Yahweh’s words. AT: “if you do not disobey what I am commanding you today by serving other gods” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- God
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- word, words
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:15

UDB:

15 But if you do not do what Yahweh our God is telling you to do, and if you do not faithfully obey all his rules and regulations that I am giving to you today, he will bring these curses upon you and he will let them have their full force against you.

ULB:

15 But if you do not listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, so as to keep all his commandments and his statutes that I am commanding you today, then all these curses will come on you and overtake you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

But if

Here Moses starts describing the curses the people will receive if they disobey.

the voice of Yahweh your God

Here the metonym “voice of Yahweh” means what Yahweh says. AT: “what Yahweh your God is saying” (See: Metonymy)

then all these curses will come on you and overtake you

Moses describes the curses as a person who would attack them by surprise or chase and catch them. AT: “Yahweh will curse you like this in ways that will completely surprise you, and it will be as if you cannot escape having him curse you” (See: Metaphor and Personification)

come on you and overtake you

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 28:2.

translationWords

- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:16-17

UDB:

[16] He will curse you when you are in the cities

and he will curse you when you are working in the fields.

[17] He will curse you by not giving you much grain to make bread.

ULB:

[16] Cursed will you be in the city, and cursed will you be in the field. [17] Cursed will be your basket and your kneading trough.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

General Information:

These phrases appeared earlier in the chapter. See how you translated many of these words in Deuteronomy 28:3-4 and Deuteronomy 28:5-6.

Cursed will you be

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will curse you” (See: Active or Passive)

in the city ... in the field

This merism means that Yahweh will bless them everywhere. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 28:3. (See: Merism)

your basket and your kneading trough

The Israelites used a basket to carry grain. A “kneading trough” was a bowl they used to mix the grain and make bread. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 28:5. AT: “all the food you grow and all the food you eat” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- basket, baskets, basketfuls

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:18-19

UDB:

[18] He will curse you by giving you only a few children, by giving you poor crops, and by not giving you many cattle and sheep.

[19] He will curse you everywhere—when you go out of your houses and when you come into your houses.

ULB:

[18] Cursed will be the fruit of your body, the fruit of your ground, the increase of your cattle, and the young of your flock. [19] Cursed will you be when you come in, and cursed will you be when you go out.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

General Information:

These phrases appeared earlier in the chapter. See how you translated many of these words in Deuteronomy 28:3-4 and Deuteronomy 28:5-6.

Cursed will be

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will curse” (See: Active or Passive)

the fruit of your body, the fruit of your ground

This is an idiom for “your children, your crops.” See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 28:4. (See: Idiom)

the increase of your cattle, and the young of your flock

This doublet is two ways of saying that Yahweh will make the Israelites’ animals many and strong. AT: “the calves of the cattle and the lambs of the flocks” (See: Doublet)

when you come in ... when you go out

This merism refers to all of life’s activities everywhere they go. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 28:6 (See: Merism)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- body, bodies
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:20-21

UDB:

[20] If you do evil things and reject Yahweh,

he will curse you by causing you to be confused, and to be frustrated in all that you do,

until your enemies quickly and completely destroy you .

[21] Yahweh will send terrible diseases on you,

until not one of you remains alive in the land that you are about to enter and occupy.

ULB:

[20] Yahweh will send on you curses, confusion, and rebukes in all that you put your hand to, until you are destroyed, and until you perish quickly because of your wicked actions by which you will have forsaken me. [21] Yahweh will make the plague cling to you until he destroys you from off the land that you are going in to possess.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

curses, confusion, and rebukes

“disasters, fear, and frustration”

in all that you put your hand to

This is an idiom. AT: “in everything you do” (See: Idiom)

until you are destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until your enemies destroy you” (See: Active or Passive)

forsaken me

Here “me” refers to Yahweh.

cling to you

“remain on you”

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- rebuke, rebukes, rebuked
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- plague, plagues
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:22

UDB:

[22] Yahweh will afflict you with diseases that shrivel your bodies, with fever, with inflammation.

It will be extremely hot, and it will not rain.

There will be scorching winds, and he will cause your crops to rot.

All these things will strike you until you die.

ULB:

[22] Yahweh will attack you with infectious diseases, with fever, with inflammation, and with drought and blistering heat, and with scorching winds and mildew. These will pursue you until you perish.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

infectious diseases, with fever, with inflammation

“diseases and burning fevers that will make you weak.” These all refer to diseases that cause people to grow weak and die.

with drought

“with lack of rain”

mildew

mold that grows on crops and causes them to rot

These will pursue you

Moses speaks of the bad things that would happen to the Israelites as if they were people or animals who would chase after the Israelites. AT: “You will suffer from them” (See: Personification)

translationWords

- perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:23-24

UDB:

[23] No rain will fall from the sky, with the result that the ground will be as hard as iron.

[24] Instead of sending rain, Yahweh will send strong winds to blow sand and dust over your land, until your land is ruined.

ULB:

[23] Your skies that are over your head will be bronze, and the earth that is under you will be iron.
[24] Yahweh will make the rain of your land into powder and dust; from the heavens will it come down on you, until you are destroyed.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

skies ... will be bronze

Moses speaks of the skies being like bronze because there will be no rain. AT: “skies ... will give no rain” (See: Metaphor)

the earth ... will be iron

Moses speaks of the earth being like iron because no crops will grow. AT: “nothing will grow from the ground” (See: Metaphor)

Yahweh will make the rain of your land into powder and dust

“instead of rain, Yahweh will send sandstorms”

until you are destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until it destroys you” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- bronze
- earth, earthen, earthly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:25-26

UDB:

[25] Yahweh will enable your enemies to defeat you;

your soldiers will attack them from one direction, but will run away from them in seven directions,

and when the people of other nations see what is happening to you, they will say that it is horrible.

[26] You will die, and birds and wild animals will come and eat your corpses,

and there will not be anyone to scare them away.

ULB:

[25] Yahweh will cause you to be struck down before your enemies; you will go out one way against them but will flee before them seven ways. You will be tossed to and fro among all the kingdoms of the earth. [26] Your dead body will be food to all the birds of the heavens and to the beasts of the earth; there will be no one to frighten them away.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Yahweh will cause you to be struck down before your enemies

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will cause your enemies to strike you down” (See: Active or Passive)

to be struck down before

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 28:7.

will flee before them seven ways

This means the Israelites will be afraid and panic and run away from their enemies. See similar wording in Deuteronomy 28:7. AT: “you will flee in seven directions” (See: Numbers)

seven ways

This is an idiom. AT: “in many different directions” (See: Idiom)

You will be tossed to and fro among all the kingdoms

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The peoples of the other nations will drive you from one nation to another” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- kingdom, kingdoms
- earth, earthen, earthly
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- body, bodies
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- beast, beasts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:27-29

UDB:

[27] Yahweh will cause you to have boils on your skin, like he caused the people of Egypt to have many years ago.

He will cause you to have tumors, open sores, and your skin will itch, but there will be nothing that will cure those diseases.

[28] Yahweh will cause some of you to become insane; he will cause some of you to become blind, and he will cause some of your minds to become confused.

[29] Because you will not be able to see where you are going, at midday you will grope around with your hands, like people do in the darkness.

You will not prosper in anything that you do.

You will continually be oppressed and robbed, and there will not be anyone to help you.

ULB:

[27] Yahweh will attack you with the boils of Egypt and with ulcers, scurvy, and itch, from which you cannot be healed. [28] Yahweh will attack you with madness, with blindness, and with mental confusion. [29] You will grope about at noonday like the blind grope in the darkness, and you will not prosper in your ways; you will be always oppressed and robbed, and there will be no one to save you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

the boils of Egypt

“the same skin disease with which I cursed the Egyptians”

boils ... ulcers, scurvy, and itch

These are different types of skin diseases.

from which you cannot be healed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “from which no one will be able to heal you” (See: Active or Passive)

You will grope about at noonday like the blind grope in the darkness

"You will be like blind people who grope in darkness even at noonday." The Israelites will have a difficult life even when everyone else is enjoying life. (See: Simile)

you will be always oppressed and robbed

"stronger people will always oppress and rob you"

translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
- darkness
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:30-31

UDB:

30 Some of you men will be engaged to marry a young woman, but someone else will forcibly sleep with her.

You will build houses, but you will never live in them.

You will plant grapevines, but you will not eat the grapes; someone else will eat them.

31 Your enemies will butcher your cattle while you watch them, and you will not get any of the meat to eat.

They will drag away your donkeys while you watch them do it, and they will not give them back to you.

They will take away your sheep; and there will not be anyone to help you rescue them.

ULB:

30 You will become engaged to a woman, but another man will seize her and rape her. You will build a house but not live in it; you will plant a vineyard but not enjoy its fruit. 31 Your ox will be slain before your eyes, but you will not eat its meat; your donkey will be forcibly taken away from before you and will not be restored to you. Your sheep will be given to your enemies, and you will have no one to aid you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Your ox will be slain before your eyes

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You will watch as someone kills your ox” (See: Active or Passive)

your donkey will be forcibly taken away from before you and will not be restored to you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone will take your donkey by force and will not give it back” (See: Active or Passive)

Your sheep will be given to your enemies

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will give your sheep to your enemies” or “I will allow your enemies to take your sheep” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- vineyard, vineyards
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
-
- donkey, mule
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:32

UDB:

[32] While you watch, your sons and daughters will be given to foreigners to become their slaves. Every day you will watch for your children to return, but you will watch in vain.

ULB:

[32] Your sons and your daughters will be given to other peoples; your eyes will look for them the entire day, but will fail with longing for them. There will be no strength in your hand.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Your sons and your daughters will be given to other peoples

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will give your sons and your daughters to other peoples” or “Your enemies will take your sons and daughters” (See: Active or Passive)

your eyes will look for them the entire day, but will fail with longing for them

Here “your eyes” refers to the whole person. AT: “you will grow tired as you constantly watch for them and long to see them again” (See: Synecdoche)

There will be no strength in your hand

Here the metonym “strength in your hand” refers to power. “AT: ”You will be powerless to do anything about it” (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- day, days
- strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:33-35

UDB:

[33] People from a foreign nation will take all the crops that you worked hard to produce,
and they will constantly treat you harshly and cruelly.
[34] The result will be that all these terrible things that you see will cause you to become insane.
[35] Yahweh will cause your legs to be covered with painful boils that cannot be healed,
and you will have boils from the bottom of your feet to the top of your head.

ULB:

[33] The harvest of your land and of all your labors—a nation that you do not know will eat it up; you will always be oppressed and crushed, [34] so that you will become insane by what you have to see happen. [35] Yahweh will attack you in the knees and legs with severe boils from which you cannot be cured, from the bottom of your feet to the top of your head.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

a nation

Here the metonym “a nation” means the people from a nation. AT: “people from a nation” (See: Metonymy)

you will always be oppressed and crushed

The words “oppressed” and “crushed” mean basically the same thing. This can be stated in active form. AT: “they will always oppress and crush you” or “they will oppress you continually” (See: Doublet and Active or Passive)

you will become insane by what you have to see happen

“what you see will make you go crazy”

from which you cannot be cured

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that no one will be able to cure” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers
- nation, nations
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
- cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:36-37

UDB:

[36] Yahweh will cause your king and the rest of you to be taken to another country, to a place in which you and your ancestors have never lived,

and there you will worship and serve gods that are made of wood or stone.

[37] When the people groups in nearby countries see what has happened to you, they will be shocked;

they will taunt you and make fun of you in every place where Yahweh drives you.

ULB:

[36] Yahweh will take you and the king whom you will place over yourself to a nation that you have not known, neither you nor your ancestors; there you will worship other gods of wood and stone. [37] You will become a source of horror, a proverb, and a byword, among all the peoples where Yahweh will lead you away.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

of horror, a proverb, and a byword, among all the peoples where Yahweh will lead you away

Here the words “proverb” and “byword” mean basically the same thing. This can be translated as a new sentence. AT: “of horror. The people, in the places where Yahweh will send you, will make up proverbs and bywords about you” or “of horror. Yahweh will send you to peoples who will laugh at you and ridicule you” (See: Doublet)

byword

a word or phrase that people use to shame others

translationWords

- Yahweh
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- nation, nations
- worship

- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- horror, horrors, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying
- proverb, proverbs
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:38-39

UDB:

[38] You will plant plenty of seeds in your fields, but you will reap only a small harvest, because locusts will eat the crops.

[39] You will plant grapevines and take care of them, but you will not pick any grapes to make wine, because worms will eat the vines.

ULB:

[38] You will take much seed out into the field, but will gather little seed in, for the locusts will consume it. [39] You will plant vineyards and cultivate them, but you will neither drink any of the wine, nor even gather in the grapes, for worms will eat them.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

but will gather little seed in

“but will harvest very little food”

translationWords

- seed, semen
- locust, locusts
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- vineyard, vineyards
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- grape, grapes, grapevine

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:40-41

UDB:

[40] Olive trees will grow everywhere in your land, but you will not get any olive oil to rub on your skin because the olives will drop on the ground before they are ripe.

[41] You will have sons and daughters, but they will not stay with you, because they will be captured and taken away.

ULB:

[40] You will have olive trees within all your territory, but you will not rub any of the oil on yourself, for your olive trees will drop their fruit. [41] You will have sons and daughters, but they will not remain yours, for they will go into captivity.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues describing God's curses if the people disobey him. He speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

but you will not rub any of the oil on yourself

People would rub olive oil on themselves to make their skin healthy.

your olive trees will drop their fruit

You may need to make explicit that the fruit drops before it is ripe. AT: "your olive trees will drop their fruit before the fruit is ripe" or "the olives will fall off your olive trees before they are ripe" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- olive, olives
- oil
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- son, sons
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:42-44

UDB:

[42] Swarms of locusts will eat your crops and the leaves of all your trees.

[43] Foreigners who live in your land will become more and more powerful, and you will become less and less powerful.

[44] They will have money to lend to you, but you will not have any money to lend to them.

They will be superior to you, and you will be inferior to them.

ULB:

[42] All your trees and the fruit of your ground—the locusts will take them over. [43] The foreigner who is among you will rise up above you higher and higher; you yourself will come down lower and lower. [44] He will lend to you, but you will not lend to him; he will be the head, and you will be the tail.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

The foreigner who is ... He will ... to him

This does not mean a specific foreigner but it refers to foreigners in general. AT: “The foreigners who are ... They will ... to them” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

rise up above you higher and higher; you yourself will come down lower and lower

This idiom means foreigners will have more power, money, and honor than the Israelites. (See: Idiom)

he will be the head, and you will be the tail

This means foreigners will have more power and authority than the Israelites. See how you translated a similar phrase in Deuteronomy 28:13. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- locust, locusts
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:45-46

UDB:

45 All these disasters will happen to you and continue to happen to you until you are destroyed, if you do not do what Yahweh your God told you to do, and do not obey all the rules and regulations that he gave to you.

46 These disasters will solemnly warn you and your descendants forever what happens to groups who disobey Yahweh.

ULB:

45 All these curses will come on you and will pursue and overtake you until you are destroyed. This will happen because you did not listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, so as to keep his commandments and his regulations that he commanded you. 46 These curses will be on you as signs and wonders, and on your descendants forever.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

All these curses will come on you and will pursue and overtake you until you are destroyed

Moses describes the curses as a person who would attack them by surprise or chase and catch them. See how you translated something similar in Deuteronomy 28:2. AT: “Yahweh will curse you like this in ways that will completely surprise you, and it will be as if he is chasing you and you cannot escape having him curse you” (See: Metaphor and Personification)

to the voice of Yahweh your God

Here the words “voice of Yahweh” are a metonym for what Yahweh said. AT: “to what Yahweh your God said” (See: Metonymy)

his commandments and his regulations

The words “commandments” and “regulations” are a doublet for “all that Yahweh has commanded you to do.” (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- voice, voices
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:47-48

UDB:

47 Because Yahweh blessed you abundantly in many ways, you should have served him very joyfully, but you did not do that.

48 Therefore, you will work for the enemies whom Yahweh will send to attack you. You will be hungry and thirsty; you will not have clothes to wear; and you will lack everything else that you need. And Yahweh will cause you to become slaves and work hard until he destroys you.

ULB:

47 Because you did not worship Yahweh your God with joyfulness and gladness of heart when you were in prosperity, 48 therefore will you serve the enemies that Yahweh will send against you; you will serve them in hunger, in thirst, in nakedness, and in poverty. He will put a yoke of iron on your neck until he destroys you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

joyfulness and gladness of heart

Here “joyfulness” and “gladness of heart” mean the same thing. They emphasize that the people should have been very glad to worship Yahweh. (See: Doublet)

He will put a yoke of iron on your neck

This is a metaphor for Yahweh allowing the enemy to treat the Israelites cruelly and make them slaves. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- worship
- God
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- heart, hearts
- prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- yoke, yokes, yoked

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:49-51

UDB:

[49] Yahweh will bring against you an army from very far away, soldiers who speak a language that you do not understand. They will swoop down on you quickly like an eagle. [50] They will be fierce looking. They will not act mercifully toward anyone, not even young children and old people. [51] They will kill and eat your livestock, and they will eat your crops, and you will starve. They will not leave for you any grain or wine or olive oil or cattle or sheep; and you will all die from hunger.

ULB:

[49] Yahweh will bring a nation against you from far away, from the ends of the earth, like an eagle flies to its victim, a nation whose language you do not understand; [50] a nation with a fierce face that does not respect the aged and does not show favor to the young. [51] They will eat the young of your cattle and the fruit of your land until you are destroyed. They will leave for you no grain, new wine, or oil, no young of your cattle or of your flock, until they have caused you to perish.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

from far away, from the ends of the earth

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that the enemy will come from a nation that is very far away from Israel. (See: Doublet)

from the ends of the earth

This is an idiom. AT: “from places that you know nothing about” (See: Idiom)

like an eagle flies to its victim

This means the enemy will come suddenly and the Israelites will not be able to stop them. (See: Simile)

a nation with a fierce face that does not respect the aged and does not show favor

The word “nation” is a metonym for the people of that nation. AT: “a nation whose people have fierce expressions, who do not respect the aged and do not show favor” (See: Metonymy)

until you are destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until they destroy you” or “until they leave you with nothing” (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- nation, nations
- earth, earthen, earthly
- eagle, eagles
- understand, understands, understood, understanding
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:52-53

UDB:

[52] Your enemies will surround your towns throughout the land that Yahweh your God is about to give to you, and they will break down the high and strong walls around your towns, walls which you trusted would protect you.

[53] When your enemies are surrounding your towns, you will be extremely hungry, with the result that you will eat the flesh of your own sons and daughters that Yahweh your God has given to you.

ULB:

[52] They will besiege you in all your city gates, until your high and fortified walls come down everywhere in your land, walls in which you had trusted. They will besiege you within all your city gates throughout all the land that Yahweh your God had given you. [53] You will eat the fruit of your own body, the flesh of your sons and of your daughters, whom Yahweh your God gave you, in the siege and in the distress with which your enemies will put upon you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues describing the army that will attack the Israelites if they do not obey Yahweh. He speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you in all your city gates

Here the phrase “city gates” represents a city. AT: “your cities” (See: Synecdoche)

the fruit of your own body, the flesh of your sons and of your daughters

Here “the flesh of your sons and of your daughters” explains the metaphor “the fruit of your own body.” The people will be so hungry after the enemy army surrounds their city that they will eat their own children. (See: Metaphor and Parallelism)

the fruit of your own body

This speaks of children as if they were fruit that was produced by the bodies of their parents. AT: “your own children” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- God
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- body, bodies
- flesh
- son, sons
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:54

UDB:

54-55 When your enemies have surrounded your towns, even the most gentle and sensitive men among you will want food very desperately, with the result that they will kill their own children and eat their flesh, because they will not have anything else to eat. They will not even share any of it with their brothers or wives whom they love very much or with any of their other children who are still alive.

ULB:

54 The man who is tender and very delicate among you—he will be envious of his brother and his own dear wife, and of whatever children he has left. 55 So he will not give to any of them the flesh of his own children that he is going to eat, because he will have nothing left for himself in the siege and in the distress which your enemy will put upon you within all your city gates.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

who is tender and very delicate among you—he

“who is tender and very delicate among you—even he.” Moses is saying that not only those one would expect to eat their children, but even the last person one would expect to eat his own children will eat his children.

all your city gates

Here “city gates” represents the cities themselves. AT: “all your cities” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- envy, covet
- siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:56

UDB:

[56-57] Even the most gentle and kind women among you, who are very rich with the result that they have never been forced to walk anywhere, will do the same thing. When your enemies have surrounded your towns, those women will be extremely hungry, with the result that after they give birth to a child, they will secretly kill the baby and eat its flesh and also eat the afterbirth. And they will not share any of it with their husbands whom they love very much or with any of their other children.

ULB:

[56] The tender and delicate woman among you, who would not venture to put the bottom of her foot on the ground for delicateness and tenderness—she will be envious of her own dear husband, of her son, and of her daughter, [57] and of her own newborn that comes out from between her legs, and of the children whom she will bear. She will eat them in private for lack of anything else, during the siege and in the distress which your enemy will put upon you within your city gates.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

The tender and delicate woman among you ... tenderness—she

“The tender and delicate woman among you ... tenderness—even she.” Moses is saying that not only those one would expect to eat their children, but even women of noble birth and normally very gentle, whom one would never expect to eat their children, will eat their children. The word “you” here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

who would not venture to put the bottom of her foot on the ground for delicateness and tenderness

Moses is exaggerating. He is emphasizing that this noble woman is so rich and lives in such luxury that she would not allow herself to get dirty. (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

for delicateness and tenderness

The abstract nouns “delicateness” and “tenderness” can be stated as adjectives. AT: “because she is so delicate and tender” (See: Abstract Nouns)

within your city gates

Here “city gates” represents the cities themselves. AT: “within your cities” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- envy, covet
- son, sons
- children, child
- siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:58-59

UDB:

58 If you do not faithfully obey all of the laws that I am writing, and if you do not have the utmost respect for Yahweh our glorious God, 59 he will punish you by sending on you and on your descendants great afflictions and plagues which will last for many years.

ULB:

58 If you do not keep all the words of this law that are written in this book, so as to honor this glorious and fearful name, Yahweh your God, 59 then Yahweh will make your plagues terrible, and those of your descendants; they will be great plagues, of long duration, and severe diseases, of long duration.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

that are written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I have written” (See: Active or Passive)

this glorious and fearful name, Yahweh your God

Here the metonym “name” refers to Yahweh himself. AT: “Yahweh your God who is glorious and awesome” (See: Metonymy)

Yahweh will make your plagues terrible, and those of your descendants

“Yahweh will send terrible plagues on you and your descendants” or “Yahweh will make sure that you and your descendants suffer from terrible plagues”

translationWords

- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- written
- honor, honors
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

- fear, fears, afraid
- plague, plagues
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:60-62

UDB:

60 He will bring on you the plagues that he sent on the people of Egypt, and you will never be healed.
61 He will also send on you many other sicknesses and diseases that I have not talked about in these laws, until you all will die. 62 You became as numerous as the stars in the sky, but only a few of you will remain alive, if you do not obey Yahweh your God.

ULB:

60 He will bring on you again all the diseases of Egypt that you were afraid of; they will cling to you.
61 Also every sickness and plague that is not written in the book of this law, those also Yahweh will bring on you until you are destroyed. 62 You will be left few in number, although you were like the stars of the heavens in number, because you did not listen to the voice of Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

He will bring on you again all the diseases of Egypt

This is an idiom. AT: “He will make sure that you again suffer from the diseases of Egypt” (See: Idiom)

they will cling to you

This is an idiom. AT: “the diseases will not stop, and no one will be able to heal you of them” (See: Idiom)

every sickness and plague that is not written

Here “every” is a generalization that means “many.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “even other sicknesses and plagues that I have not written” (See: Hyperbole and Generalization and Active or Passive)

until you are destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until he has destroyed you” (See: Active or Passive)

You will be left ... you were like ... you did not listen

Moses is speaking to the Israelites as a group, so all instances of "you" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

you were like the stars of the heavens in number

This means that in the past there were many Israelites. (See: Simile)

to the voice of Yahweh

Here the metonym "voice of Yahweh" refers to what Yahweh says. AT: "to what Yahweh says" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- plague, plagues
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- voice, voices
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:63-64

UDB:

63 Yahweh was very happy to do good things for you and to cause you to become very numerous, but now he will be happy to ruin you and get rid of you. Those of you who do not die from these plagues will be snatched away from the land that you will soon be entering to possess.

64 Yahweh will scatter you among many people groups, all over the earth, and in those places you will worship other gods that are made of wood or stone, gods which you and your ancestors have never known.

ULB:

63 As Yahweh once rejoiced over you in doing you good, and in multiplying you, so he will rejoice over you in making you perish and in destroying you. You will be plucked off the land that you are going into to possess. 64 Yahweh will scatter you among all peoples from the one end of the earth to the other end of the earth; there you will worship other gods that you have not known, neither you nor your ancestors, gods of wood and stone.

translationNotes

Yahweh once rejoiced over you ... multiplying you ... rejoice over you in making you perish and in destroying you. You will be plucked

Moses is speaking to the Israelites as a group, so all instances of "you" are plural. (See: Forms of You)

Yahweh once rejoiced over you in doing you good, and in multiplying you

"Yahweh once enjoyed doing you good and causing you to become many"

he will rejoice over you in making you perish

"he will enjoy making you die"

You will be plucked off the land that you are going into to possess

Moses uses a metaphor to speak of the people as though they were fruit that Yahweh would take off a bush. This can be stated in active form. AT: "He will remove you from the land which you are entering to possess" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

you are going ... scatter you ... you will worship ... you have not known ... you nor your ancestors

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

from the one end of the earth to the other end of the earth

These two extremes together mean everywhere on earth. AT: "throughout the earth" or "all over the earth" (See: Merism)

translationWords

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- earth, earthen, earthly
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:65-66

UDB:

65 In those areas you will not have any peace. You will feel hopeless and be discouraged. 66 You will always be afraid that your enemies will kill you. You will be very fearful, all day and all night.

ULB:

65 Among these nations will you find no ease, and there will be no rest for the bottoms of your feet; instead, Yahweh will give you there a trembling heart, failing eyes, and a soul that mourns. 66 Your life will hang in doubt before you; you will fear every night and day and will have no certainty at all in your life.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

there will be no rest for the bottoms of your feet

Here the phrase “the bottoms of your feet” refer to the whole person. AT: “you will have to continually wander because you have no permanent home where you can rest” (See: Synecdoche)

Yahweh will give you there a trembling heart, failing eyes, and a soul that mourns

This is an idiom. AT: “Yahweh will cause you to be afraid, without hope, and sad” (See: Idiom)

Your life will hang in doubt before you

This is an idiom. AT: “You will not know whether you will live or die” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- nation, nations
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- heart, hearts
- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 28:67-68

UDB:

67 Because you will be very fearful and because you will very distressed because of the terrible things that you see, each morning you will say 'I wish it were evening already!' and each evening you will say 'I wish it were morning already!' 68 Yahweh will send some of you back to Egypt in ships, even though he promised that you would never be forced to go there again. There in Egypt you will try to sell yourselves to become slaves of your enemies in order to have food to eat, but no one will buy you."

ULB:

67 In the morning you will say, 'I wish it were evening!' and in the evening you will say, 'I wish it were morning!' because of the fear in your hearts and the things your eyes will have to see. 68 Yahweh will bring you into Egypt again by ships, by the route about which I had said to you, 'You will not see Egypt again.' There you will offer yourselves for sale to your enemies as male and female slaves, but no one will purchase you."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

because of the fear in your hearts

This is an idiom. AT: "because of the fear you are feeling" (See: Idiom)

the things your eyes will have to see

Here "eyes" refers to the whole person. AT: "the terrifying things I will force you to see" (See: Synecdoche and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I had said

Here "I" refers to Yahweh.

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- heart, hearts

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a retelling of the covenant Yahweh made with Moses, along with its blessings and cursing. (See: covenant, covenants, new covenant, bless, blessed, blessing and curse, cursed, curses, cursing)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 29:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 29:1

UDB:

[1] These are the covenantal commands of Yahweh that the Israelites were required to obey. When they were in the region of Moab on the east side of the Jordan River, Moses commanded them to keep these regulations. These regulations became part of the covenant that Yahweh had made with them at Mount Sinai.

ULB:

[1] These are the words that Yahweh commanded Moses to tell the people of Israel in the land of Moab, words that were added to the covenant that he had made with them at Horeb.

translationNotes

These are the words that Yahweh commanded Moses to tell

This refers to words that Moses is about to speak.

in the land of Moab

This is on the east side of the Jordan where the Israelites were staying before they entered the land of Canaan. “while they were in the land of Moab”

words that were added to the covenant ... at Horeb

These additional commands were given to make Yahweh’s covenant apply better to the people once they were settled in their new land. These new commands did not belong to a different covenant, but rather were additions to the original covenant.

translationWords

- word, words
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- Horeb

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:2-4

UDB:

[2] Moses summoned all the Israelite people and said to them, "You saw for yourselves what Yahweh did to the king of Egypt and to his officials and to his entire country. [3] You saw all the plagues that Yahweh sent on them, and all the various miracles that he performed. [4] But to this day, Yahweh has not enabled you to understand the meaning of all that you have seen and heard.

ULB:

[2] Moses called to all Israel and said to them, "You have seen everything that Yahweh did before your eyes in the land of Egypt to Pharaoh, to all his servants, and to all his land— [3] the great sufferings that your eyes saw, the signs, and those great wonders. [4] But until today Yahweh has not given you a heart to know, eyes to see, or ears to hear.

translationNotes

You have seen everything that Yahweh did before your eyes

Yahweh expected them to remember what Yahweh had done and they had seen it. Here the "eyes" represent the whole person and emphasize what the person has seen. AT: "You have seen all that Yahweh did so that you would see and remember what he did" (See: Synecdoche)

the great sufferings that your eyes saw

Here "eyes" emphasizes that Yahweh expected them to remember that they had seen it. AT: "you saw for yourselves that the people suffered terribly" (See: Synecdoche)

your eyes

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "your" here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

the signs, and those great wonders

The words "signs" and "wonders" both refer to the plagues that Yahweh had sent upon Egypt. AT: "and all of the powerful things that Yahweh did" (See: Doublet)

Yahweh has not given you a heart to know, eyes to see, or ears to hear

The people do have hearts, eyes, and ears. This metonym says that Yahweh has not enabled them to understand from what they saw and heard who Yahweh is, and how and why they should obey him. (See: Metonymy)

given you a heart to know

This is an idiom. AT: “enabled you to understand” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- Moses
- call, calls, calling, called
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- heart, hearts
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:5-6

UDB:

5 For forty years Yahweh has led you while you traveled through the desert. During that time, your clothes and your sandals have not worn out. 6 You did not have bread to eat or wine or other fermented drinks to drink, but Yahweh took care of you, in order that you would know that he is your God.

ULB:

5 I have led you for forty years in the wilderness; your clothes did not wear out on you, and your sandals did not wear out on your feet. 6 You did not eat any bread, and you did not drink any wine or other alcoholic drinks, so that you might know that I am Yahweh your God.

translationNotes

I have led you

Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel.

forty years

“40 years” (See: Numbers)

your sandals ... your feet

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word “your” here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

other alcoholic drinks

Alcoholic drinks made probably from fermented grains. They were not distilled liquors.

translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- sandal, sandals
- bread
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:7-9

UDB:

[7] And when we came to this place, Sihon, the king who ruled in the city of Heshbon, and Og, the king who ruled the region of Bashan, came out with their armies to attack us, but we defeated them. [8] We took their land and divided it among the tribes of Reuben and Gad, and half of the tribe of Manasseh.

[9] So obey faithfully all of this covenant, in order that you will prosper in everything that you do.

ULB:

[7] When you came to this place, Sihon, the king of Heshbon, and Og, the king of Bashan, came out against us to fight, and we struck them down. [8] We took their land and gave it as an inheritance to the Reubenites, to the Gadites, and to the half tribe of Manasseh. [9] Therefore keep the words of this covenant and do them, so that you may prosper in everything that you do.

translationNotes

Sihon, the king of Heshbon, and Og, the king of Bashan

See how you translated these names in Deuteronomy 1:4.

came out against us

Here “us” refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: Inclusive “We”)

keep the words of this covenant and do them

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that the people were to obey Yahweh’s commands. AT: “obey all the words of this covenant” (See: Parallelism)

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Bashan
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Reuben
- Gad
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Manasseh
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:10-11

UDB:

10 Today all of us are standing in the presence of Yahweh our God—I, the leaders of all your tribes, your elders, your officials, all you Israelite men, 11 your wives, your children, and the foreigners who live among us and cut wood for us and carry water for us.

ULB:

10 You stand today, all of you, before Yahweh your God; your chiefs, your tribes, your elders, and your officers—all the men of Israel, 11 your little ones, your wives, and the foreigner who is among you in your camp, from him who cuts your wood to him who draws your water.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Israel.

among you in your camp ... your wood ... your water

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

the foreigner who is among you in your camp, from him who cuts your wood to him who draws

There were many foreigners among the Israelites. AT: “the foreigners who are among you in your camp, from those who cut your wood to those who get your water” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- chief, chiefs
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- elder, elders
- Israel, Israelites
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:12-13

UDB:

12 You are all here today to agree to accept this covenant with Yahweh, and to bind yourselves to it. 13 He is making this agreement with you in order to make sure that you are his people, and that he is your God. This is what he promised to do for you, and what he solemnly promised to your ancestors Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, that he would do.

ULB:

12 You are here in order to enter into the covenant of Yahweh your God and into the oath that Yahweh your God is making with you today, 13 so that he may make you today into a people for himself, and that he may be God for you, as he spoke to you, and as he swore to your ancestors, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

to enter into the covenant of Yahweh your God and into the oath that Yahweh your God is making with you today

“to agree to the covenant and to swear that you will obey all that Yahweh your God commands”

a people for himself

“a people group that belongs to him alone”

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- God
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- people of God, my people
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:14-16

UDB:

[14] This covenant is not only with you. [15] God is making this agreement with us who are here today and also with our descendants who are not yet born.

[16] You remember the things that our ancestors suffered in Egypt, and how they traveled through the land that belonged to other nations after they came out of Egypt.

ULB:

[14] For it is not only with you that I am making this covenant and this oath— [15] with everyone standing here with us today before Yahweh our God—but also with those who are not here with us today.

[16] You know how we lived in the land of Egypt, and how we came through the midst of the nations through which you passed.

translationNotes

I am making

Here “I” refers to Yahweh. “Yahweh is making”

standing here with us

Here “us” refers to Moses and the people of Israel.

those who are not here

“our future descendants, who are not here”

we lived

“we were slaves”

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- God
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:17-19

UDB:

[17] In those countries they saw those disgusting idols made of wood and stone and decorated with silver and gold. [18] So be sure that no man or woman or family or tribe that is here today turns away from Yahweh our God, to worship any of the gods of those people groups. If you do that, you will bring disaster on yourselves.

[19] Be sure that no one here today who hears the words of this covenant says to himself, 'Everything will go well with me, even if I stubbornly do what I want to.' If you do that, the result will be that Yahweh will eventually destroy all of you, both good people and evil people.

ULB:

[17] You have seen their disgusting idols made of wood and stone, silver and gold, that were among them. [18] Make sure there is not among you any man, woman, clan, or tribe whose heart is turning away today from Yahweh our God, so as to go worship the gods of those nations. Make sure there is not among you any root that produces gall and wormwood. [19] When that person hears the words of this curse, he will bless himself in his heart and say, 'I will have peace, though I walk in the stubbornness of my heart.' This would destroy the wet together with the dry.

translationNotes

whose heart is turning away today from Yahweh our God

Here "heart" refers to the whole person, and "turning away" means to stop obeying. AT: "who no longer obeys Yahweh our God" (See: Synecdoche)

any root that produces gall and wormwood

Moses speaks of someone who secretly worships another God as if he were a root, and the evil deeds he does to serve that god, and which he encourages others to do, as a bitter plant that poisons people. AT: "any person who worships idols and causes others to disobey Yahweh" (See: Metaphor)

that person

The person described in verse 18.

bless himself in his heart

This is an idiom. AT: "congratulate himself" or "encourage himself" (See: Idiom)

though I walk in the stubbornness of my heart

This is an idiom. AT: “even though I still refuse to obey Yahweh” (See: Idiom)

This would destroy the wet together with the dry

Here the words “wet” and “dry” are metaphors for the righteous people and the wicked people. This forms a merism for “everyone.” AT: “This would cause Yahweh to destroy both the righteous people and the wicked people in the land” (See: Metaphor and Merism)

wet ... dry

These nominal adjectives can be translated as nouns. Because the land was usually dry and the people needed rain so their crops would grow, these words are metaphors for “living ... dead” or “good ... bad.” AT: “wet things ... dry things” or “good people ... bad people” (See: Nominal Adjectives and Metaphor)

translationWords

- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- silver
- gold, golden
- family, families
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- heart, hearts
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- God
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- nation, nations
- word, words
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:20-21

UDB:

[20] Yahweh will not forgive anyone who is stubborn like that. Instead, he will be extremely angry with that person, and all the curses that I have told you about will happen to that person, until Yahweh destroys that person and his family forever. [21] From all the tribes of Israel, Yahweh will choose that individual to suffer all the disasters that I have listed in the covenant—all the bad things that will happen to anyone whom Yahweh curses for disobeying the laws that I have written in this scroll.

ULB:

[20] Yahweh will not pardon him, but instead, the anger of Yahweh and his jealousy will smolder against that man, and all the curses that are written in this book will come on him, and Yahweh will blot out his name from under heaven. [21] Yahweh will set him apart for disaster out of all the tribes of Israel, in keeping with all the curses of the covenant that are written in this book of the law.

translationNotes

the anger of Yahweh and his jealousy will smolder

Just as a fire can grow in intensity, so can God's anger and Jealousy grow in intensity. AT: "Yahweh's jealous anger will grow like a fire" (See: Metaphor)

the anger of Yahweh and his jealousy

Here the word "jealousy" describes "the anger of Yahweh." AT: Yahweh's jealous anger" (See: Hendiadys)

that are written

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that I have written" (See: Active or Passive)

the curses that are written in this book will come on him

Moses describes the curses as a person who would attack them by surprise. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 28:15. AT: "Yahweh will curse him with the curses written in this book in ways that will completely surprise him" (See: Metaphor and Personification)

Yahweh will blot out his name from under heaven

This means God will completely destroy the person and his family. In the future people will not remember him. A similar phrase appears in Deuteronomy 7:24.

translationWords

- forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- anger, angered, angry
- jealous, jealousy
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out
- name, names, named
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Israel, Israelites
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:22-24

UDB:

[22] In future years, your descendants and people from other countries will see the disasters and the illnesses that Yahweh has caused to happen to you. [23] They will see that all your land has been ruined by burning sulfur and salt. Nothing will have been planted. Not even weeds will be there. Your land will resemble the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities of Admah and Zeboyim, which Yahweh destroyed when he was very angry with those people. [24] And the people from those other nations will ask, 'Why did Yahweh do this to this land? Why was he so angry with the people who lived here?'

ULB:

[22] The generation to come, your children who will rise up after you, and the foreigner who comes from a distant land, will speak when they see the plagues on this land and the diseases with which Yahweh has made it sick— [23] and when they see that the whole land has become sulfur and burning salt, where nothing is sown or bears fruit, where no vegetation grows, like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah, Admah and Zeboyim, that Yahweh destroyed in his anger and wrath— [24] they will say together with all the other nations, 'Why has Yahweh done this to this land? What does the heat of this great anger mean?'

translationNotes

The generation to come, your children who will rise up after you

The words "your children ... after you" tell who "the generation to come" is.

the plagues on this land and the diseases with which Yahweh has made it sick

"how God cursed the land of Canaan with plagues and disease"

when they see that the whole land has become sulfur and burning salt

People put sulfur and salt on the soil to keep anything from growing. "when they see that Yahweh has burned the land with sulfur and salt"

where nothing is sown or bears fruit

This can be stated in active form. AT: "where no one can sow seed and the crops do not bear fruit" (See: Active or Passive)

like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah

The abstract noun "overthrow" can be translated as a clause. AT: "as when Yahweh completely destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah"

Admah and Zeboyim

These are names of cities that Yahweh destroyed along with Sodom and Gomorrah. (See: How to Translate Names)

in his anger and wrath

The abstract nouns "anger" and "wrath" mean basically the same thing and can be translated as an adjective phrase. AT: "when he was very angry" (See: Doublet)

they will say together with all the other nations ... mean?

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. AT: "they will ask with all the other nations why Yahweh has done this to the land, and what the heat of this great anger means." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

they will say together with all the other nations

"your descendants and the people of all the other nations will say"

What does the heat of this great anger mean?

The writer is communicating one idea through two words. AT: "What does this terrible anger mean?" (See: Hendiadys)

translationWords

- generation
- children, child
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- plague, plagues
- sulfur, sulfurous
- plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- anger, angered, angry

- wrath, fury
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:25-26

UDB:

25 Then other people will reply, 'It is because they refused to obey the covenant that they had made with Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, when he brought them out of Egypt. 26 Instead, they wroshiped other gods that they had never worshiped before, gods that Yahweh had not told them to worship.

ULB:

25 Then people will say, 'It is because they abandoned the covenant of Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, that he made with them when he brought them out of the land of Egypt, 26 and because they went and served other gods and bowed down to them, gods that they had not known and that he had not given to them.

translationNotes

It is because they abandoned the covenant of Yahweh, the God of their ancestors

This is the answer to "Why has Yahweh done this to this land?" (Deuteronomy 29:24). "Yahweh has done this to the land because the Israelites did not follow the promises and the laws of his covenant"

served other gods and bowed down to them

"obeyed other gods and worshiped them"

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- Yahweh
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- worship
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:27-28

UDB:

[27] So Yahweh became very angry with the people of this land, and he has caused to happen to them all the disasters that their leader warned them about. [28] Yahweh became extremely angry with them and took them out of their land, and threw them into another land, and they are still there.'

ULB:

[27] Therefore the anger of Yahweh has been kindled against this land, so as to bring on it all the curses that are written in this book. [28] Yahweh has uprooted them from their land in anger, in wrath, and in great fury, and has thrown them into another land, as today.'

translationNotes

the anger of Yahweh has been kindled against this land

Moses compares Yahweh being angry to someone starting a fire. This emphasizes God's power to destroy whatever makes him angry, and it can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh has became very angry with this land" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

this land, so as to bring on it

Here "land" is a metonym representing the people. AT: "the people of this land, so as to bring on them" (See: Metonymy)

that are written

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that I have written" (See: Active or Passive)

Yahweh has uprooted them from their land ... and has thrown them

Israel is compared to a bad plant that Yahweh has pulled up and thrown out of a garden. AT: "Yahweh has removed them from their land ... and has forced them to go" (See: Metaphor)

in anger, in wrath, and in great fury

The words "anger" and "wrath" and "fury" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the great intensity of Yahweh's anger. AT: "in extremely great anger" or "because he was extremely angry" (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- written
- wrath, fury

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 29:29

UDB:

[29] There are some things that Yahweh our God has kept secret, but he has revealed his law to us, and he expects us and our descendants to obey it forever.

ULB:

[29] The secret matters belong alone to Yahweh our God; but the things that are revealed belong forever to us and to our descendants, so that we may do all the words of this law.

translationNotes

The secret matters belong alone to Yahweh our God

“Some things Yahweh our God has not revealed, and only he knows them”

that are revealed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that he has revealed” (See: Active or Passive)

we may do all the words of this law

“we may do everything that this law commands us to do”

translationWords

- God
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Moses begins to give final instructions to Israel before his death in anticipation of their entrance into the Promised Land. There were warnings and blessings associated with the people's obedience to the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. (See: Promised Land, bless, blessed, blessing and covenant, covenants, new covenant)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 30:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 30:1-3

UDB:

[1] I have now told you about the ways that Yahweh our God will bless you if you obey him and the ways that he will curse you if you disobey him. But if you choose not to obey his laws, some day you will be living in the countries to which he will have scattered you, and you will remember what I told you. [2] Then, if you and your children begin to worship Yahweh our God and faithfully obey all that I have today commanded you to do, [3] he will again act mercifully toward you. He will bring you back from the nations to which he scattered you, and he will cause you to be prosperous again.

ULB:

[1] When all these things have come on you, the blessings and the curses that I have set before you, and when you call them to mind among all the other nations where Yahweh your God has driven you, [2] and when you return to Yahweh your God and obey his voice, following all that I am commanding you today— you and your children—with all your heart and with all your soul, [3] then Yahweh your God will reverse your captivity and have compassion on you; he will return and gather you from all the peoples where Yahweh your God has scattered you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

When all these things have come on you

Here “these things” refer to the blessings and curses described in chapters 28-29. The phrase “have come on you” is an idiom that means to happen. AT: “When all these things happen to you” (See: Idiom)

that I have set before you

This speaks of the blessings and curses that Moses told the people as if they were objects that he set in front of them. AT: “that I have just now told you about” (See: Metaphor)

call them to mind

This is an idiom. AT: “remember them” (See: Idiom)

among all the other nations

“while you are living in the other nations”

has driven you

“has forced you to go”

obey his voice

Here “voice” is referring to what Yahweh says. AT: “obey what he says” (See: Metonymy)

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom “with all … heart” means “completely” and “with all … soul” means “with all your being.” These two phrases have similar meaning. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:29. AT: “with all your being” or “with all your energy” (See: Idiom and Doublet)

reverse your captivity

“free you from your captivity.” The abstract noun “captivity” can be translated as a verbal clause. AT: “free you from those who had captured you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- nation, nations
- Yahweh
- God
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- children, child
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- compassion, compassionate
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:4-5

UDB:

4 Even if you have been scattered to the most distant places on the earth, Yahweh our God will gather you from there and bring you back to your land. 5 He will enable you to possess again the land where your ancestors lived. And he will cause you to be more prosperous and more numerous than you are now.

ULB:

4 If any of your exiled people are in the farthest places under the heavens, from there Yahweh your God will gather you, and from there he will bring you. 5 Yahweh your God will bring you into the land that your forefathers possessed, and you will possess it again; he will do you good and will multiply you more than he did your forefathers.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

If any of your exiled people are in the farthest places

“Even those of your exiled people who are in the farthest places”

under the heavens

“under the sky” or “on the earth”

translationWords

- exile, exiles, exiled
- people of God, my people
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- Promised Land
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:6-8

UDB:

[6] Yahweh our God will change your inner beings, with the result that you will love him with all that you desire and with all that you feel. And then you will continue to live in that land. [7] Yahweh our God will send all the disasters that I have told you about on your enemies and on those who oppressed you. [8] As you did before, you will do what Yahweh wants you to do, and you will obey all the commands that I have given to you today.

ULB:

[6] Yahweh your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, so you will love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul, so that you may live. [7] Yahweh your God will put all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you, those who persecuted you. [8] You will return and obey the voice of Yahweh, and you will do all his commandments that I am commanding you today.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

circumcise your heart

This is not a literal removal of flesh. It means God will remove their sin and enable them to love and obey him. (See: Metaphor)

with all your heart and with all your soul

The idiom “with all … heart” means “completely” and “with all … soul” means “with all your being.” These two phrases have similar meaning. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:29. AT: “with all your being” or “with all your energy” (See: Idiom and Doublet)

obey the voice of Yahweh

Here “voice” means what Yahweh says. AT: “obey what Yahweh says” (See: Metonymy)

will put all these curses on your enemies

Moses speaks of curses as though they were a load or a cover that someone could physically put on top of a person. AT: “will cause your enemies to suffer from these curses” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- heart, hearts
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- love, loves, loving, loved
- soul, souls
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:9-10

UDB:

[9] Yahweh our God will cause you to be very prosperous in all that you do. You will have many children and many cattle, and you will produce abundant crops. He will again be happy to enable you to prosper, just like he was happy to enable your ancestors to prosper. [10] But he will do those things only if you do what he has told you to do, and only if you obey all his rules and regulations that I have written about in this book, and only if you turn to Yahweh with all that you desire and with all that you feel.

ULB:

[9] Yahweh your God will make you abundant in all the work of your hand, in the fruit of your body, in the fruit of your cattle, and in the fruit of your ground, for prosperity; for Yahweh will again rejoice over you for prosperity, as he rejoiced over your fathers. [10] He will do this if you will obey the voice of Yahweh your God, so as to keep his commandments and regulations that are written in this book of the law, if you turn to Yahweh your God with all your heart and all your soul.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

the work of your hand

Here “hand” refers to the whole person. AT: “in all the work you do” (See: Synecdoche)

in the fruit of your body ... in the fruit of your cattle ... in the fruit of your ground

These three phrases are idioms for “in children ... in calves ... in crops.” See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 28:4. (See: Idiom)

that are written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I have written” (See: Active or Passive)

with all your heart and all your soul

The idiom “with all ... heart” means “completely” and “with all ... soul” means “with all your being.” These two phrases have similar meaning. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 4:29. AT: “with all your being” or “with all your energy” (See: Idiom and Doublet)

translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:11-12

UDB:

[11] The commands that I am giving to you today are not very difficult for you to obey, and they are not difficult to know. [12] They are not hidden in heaven. You do not need to say, 'Who can go up to heaven for us to bring them down here to us so we can learn them?'

ULB:

[11] For this commandment that I am commanding you today is not too hard for you, neither is it too far for you to reach. [12] It is not in heaven, so that you should have to say, 'Who will go up for us to heaven and bring it down to us and make us able to hear it, so that we may do it?'

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

neither is it too far for you to reach

Moses speaks of being able to understand what a commandment requires a person to do as if it were that person being able to reach a physical object. AT: "neither is it too difficult for you to understand what Yahweh requires you to do" (See: Metaphor)

Who will go up for us to heaven and bring it down to us and make us able to hear it, so that we may do it?

Here Moses uses a rhetorical question to emphasize that the people of Israel think that Yahweh's commands are too difficult for them to know. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Someone must travel to heaven to learn God's commands and then return to tell us what they are so we can obey them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:13-14

UDB:

13 And they are not on the other side of the sea. You do not need to say, 'Who will cross the sea for us and bring them back to us, so we can learn them?' 14 No, his commands are here with you. You know them, and you can say them again and again. So you can easily obey them.

ULB:

13 Neither is it beyond the sea, so that you should have to say, 'Who will go over the sea for us and bring it to us and make us to hear it, so that we may do it?' 14 But the word is very near to you, in your mouth and your heart, so that you may do it.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Who will go over the sea for us and bring it to us and make us to hear it, so that we may do it?

This rhetorical question continues the idea that the people of Israel think Yahweh's commands are too difficult to know. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Someone must travel across the sea to learn God's commands and then return and tell us what they are." (See: Rhetorical Question)

in your mouth and your heart

This means that the people already know God's commands and can tell them to others. (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- word, words
- heart, hearts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:15-16

UDB:

15 So listen! Today I am allowing you to choose between doing what is evil and doing what is good, between what will enable you to live for a long time and what will cause you to die while you are still young. 16 I say again, if you obey the decrees of Yahweh our God that I am giving to you today, and if you love him and conduct your lives as he wants you to do, and if you obey all his rules and regulations, you will prosper and become very numerous, and Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that you are about to enter and possess.

ULB:

15 See, today I have placed before you life and good, death and evil. 16 If you obey the decrees of Yahweh your God, in which I am commanding you today to love Yahweh your God, to walk in his ways, and to keep his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes, you will live and multiply, and Yahweh your God will bless you in the land that you are entering to possess.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

I have placed before you

Putting something where another person can see it is a metaphor for telling someone about something. AT: “I have told you about” (See: Metaphor)

life and good, death and evil

You can make clear the implicit information. AT: “what is good and will cause you to live, and what is evil and will cause you to die” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

multiply

“have many descendants”

translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- decree, decrees, decreed
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- ordinance, ordinances
- bless, blessed, blessing
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:17-18

UDB:

17 But if you stop worshiping Yahweh, and if you refuse to obey what he says, and if you allow others to persuade you to worship other gods, 18 I am warning you today that you will soon die. Your people will not live for very long in the land that you are about to cross the Jordan River to enter and possess.

ULB:

17 But if your heart turns away, and you do not listen but instead are drawn away and bow down to other gods and worship them, 18 then I announce to you today that you will surely perish; you will not prolong your days in the land that you are passing over the Jordan to go into and possess.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

if your heart turns away ... but instead are drawn away and bow down to other gods and worship them

Here “heart” refers to the whole person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “if you stop being loyal to God ... and the people living in the land convince you to bow down and worship other gods” (See: Synecdoche and Active or Passive)

to you today that you ... you will not prolong your days

Moses speaks to the Israelites as a group. (See: Forms of You)

prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: “be able to live a long time” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- worship
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- Jordan River, Jordan
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 30:19-20

UDB:

[19] I am requesting everyone in heaven and on the earth to testify to you, that today I am allowing you to choose whether you want to live for a long time or to soon die, whether you want Yahweh to bless you or to curse you. So choose to live. [20] Decide to love Yahweh our God and to obey him. If you do that, you and your descendants will live for a long time in the land that Yahweh solemnly promised to your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, that he would give to them."

ULB:

[19] I call heaven and earth to witness against you today that I have set before you life and death, the blessings and the curses; therefore choose life so that you may live, you and your descendants. [20] Do this so as to love Yahweh your God, to obey his voice, and to cling to him. For he is your life and the length of your days; do this so that you may live in the land that Yahweh swore to your ancestors, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so except where noted the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

I call heaven and earth to witness

Possible meanings are 1) Moses is calling on all those who live in heaven and earth to be witnesses to what he says, or 2) Moses is speaking to heaven and earth as if they are people, and he is calling them to be witnesses to what he says (See: Metonymy and Personification and Apostrophe)

to witness against you

"to be willing to say that you have done evil things"

against you today

Moses speaks to the Israelites as a group. (See: Forms of You)

obey his voice

Here "voice" refers to what Yahweh says. AT: "obey what he says" (See: Metonymy)

to cling to him

"to rely on him"

For he is your life and the length of your days

These phrases have the same meaning and are metonyms for Yahweh, emphasizing that he is the one who gives life and determines the length of people's lifetimes. AT: "Yahweh is the only one who can enable you to live a long life" (See: Doublet and Metonymy)

swore to your ancestors

The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: "swore that he would give to your ancestors" (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- love, loves, loving, loved
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- voice, voices
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Final instructions

In the Ancient Near East, it was common for an important leader to give instructions for his people to follow after his death. In this chapter, Moses begins his final words to the people of Israel. These are words that he wants them to remember long after he is gone. This section also helped to make a smooth transition to Joshua's leadership.

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 31:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 31:1-3

UDB:

[1] When Moses finished saying all that to the Israelite people, [2] "I am 120 years old. I am no longer able to go everywhere that you need to go, so I cannot be your leader any longer. Furthermore, Yahweh has told me that I will not cross the Jordan River. [3] But Yahweh our God will go ahead of you. He will enable you to destroy the nations that are living there, in order that you can occupy their land. Joshua will be your leader, which is what Yahweh has already told me.

ULB:

[1] Moses went and spoke these words to all Israel. [2] He said to them, "I am now one hundred twenty years old; I can no more go out and come in; Yahweh has said to me, 'You will not go over this Jordan.' [3] Yahweh your God, he will go over before you; he will destroy these nations from before you, and you will dispossess them. Joshua, he will go over before you, as Yahweh has spoken.

translationNotes

one hundred twenty years old

"120 years old" (See: Numbers)

I can no more go out and come in

Here the extremes "go out" and "come in" used together mean that Moses can no longer do what a healthy person can do. AT: "I am no longer able to go everywhere that you need to go, so I cannot be your leader any longer" (See: Merism)

your God ... before you ... before you ... you will dispossess ... before you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

you will dispossess them

"you will take their land"

Joshua, he will go over before you, as Yahweh has spoken

"Joshua will lead you across the river, as Yahweh promised"

translationWords

- Moses
- word, words
- Israel, Israelites
- year, years
- Yahweh
- Jordan River, Jordan
- God
- nation, nations
- Joshua

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:4-6

UDB:

[4] Yahweh will do to those nations what he did to Sihon and Og, the two kings of the Amor people group when he destroyed their armies and their people groups. [5] Yahweh will enable you to conquer those people groups, but you must kill all of those people, which is what I have commanded you to do. [6] Be brave and confident. Do not be afraid of those people. Do not forget that it is Yahweh our God who will go with you. He will always help you and never abandon you."

ULB:

[4] Yahweh will do to them as he did to Sihon and to Og, the kings of the Amorites, and to their land, which he destroyed. [5] Yahweh will give you victory over them when you meet them in battle, and you will do to them all that I commanded you. [6] Be strong and of good courage, fear not, and do not be afraid of them; for Yahweh your God, he it is who goes with you; he will not fail you nor forsake you."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the Israelites.

he did to Sihon and to Og, the kings of the Amorites

Here "Sihon" and "Og" refer to two Kings of the Amorites and their armies. See how you translated these names in Deuteronomy 1:4. AT: "he did to Sihon and Og, the kings of the Amorites, and to their armies" (See: Synecdoche)

Be strong and of good courage

"Be strong and courageous"

fear not, and do not be afraid of them

"do not fear them at all"

Yahweh your God ... with you ... fail you nor forsake you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

he will not fail you nor forsake you

This can be treated as litotes and translated positively. AT: “he will always fulfill his promise to you and will always be with you” (See: Litotes)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Amorite, Amorites
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- fear, fears, afraid
- God
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:7-8

UDB:

[7] Then Moses called Joshua to his side and said to him, "Be brave and confident. You are the one who will lead these people into the land that Yahweh promised to our ancestors that he would give to them, and you will enable them to occupy it. [8] It is Yahweh who will go ahead of you. He will be with you. He will always help you. He will never abandon you. So do not be afraid or dismayed."

ULB:

[7] Moses called to Joshua and said to him in the sight of all Israel, "Be strong and of good courage, for you will go with this people into the land that Yahweh has sworn to their ancestors to give them; you will cause them to inherit it. [8] Yahweh, he it is who goes before you; he will be with you; he will not fail you nor abandon you; do not be afraid, do not be discouraged."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

in the sight of all Israel

This means that all of the people of Israel were present. AT: "in the presence of all the Israelites" (See: Metonymy)

Be strong and of good courage

"Be strong and courageous." See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 31:5.

you will cause them to inherit it

"you will help them take the land"

translationWords

- Moses
- Joshua
- Israel, Israelites
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:9-11

UDB:

[9] Moses wrote down all these laws and gave the scroll to the priests, who carried the sacred chest. He also gave the scroll to all the Israelite elders. [10] Moses told them, "At the end of every seven years, at the time that all debts are canceled, read this to the people during the Festival of Shelters. [11] Read it to all the Israelite people when they gather at the place that Yahweh chooses for them to worship him.

ULB:

[9] Moses wrote this law and gave it out to the priests, the sons of Levi, who carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; he also gave copies of it to all the elders of Israel. [10] Moses commanded them and said, "At the end of every seven years, at the time fixed for the cancellation of debts, during the Festival of Shelters, [11] when all Israel has come to appear before Yahweh your God in the place that he will choose for his sanctuary, you will read this law before all Israel in their hearing.

translationNotes

gave it out to the priests, the sons of Levi

"gave it out to the Levites, who are the priests"

seven years

"7 years" (See: Numbers)

fixed for the cancellation of debts

"for canceling debts"

Festival of Shelters

Other names for this festival are "Feast of Tabernacles," "Festival of Booths," and "Feast of the Ingathering." During harvest, farmers would set up temporary shelters in the field. This festival took place after the last harvest of the year. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 16:13.

Yahweh your God ... you will read

- Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

in their hearing

"so that they can hear it"

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- elder, elders
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- year, years
- festival, festivals
- God
- sanctuary

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:12-13

UDB:

[12] Gather together everyone—men, women, children, even the foreigners who are living in your towns—in order that they may hear these laws and learn to have an awesome respect for Yahweh our God, and to faithfully obey everything that is written in these laws. [13] If they do that, your descendants, who have never known these laws, will hear them and will also learn to have an awesome respect for Yahweh our God, during all the years that they live in the land that you are about to cross the Jordan River to occupy."

ULB:

[12] Assemble the people, the men, the women, and the little ones, and your foreigner who is within your city gates, so that they may hear and learn, and so that they may honor Yahweh your God and keep all the words of this law. [13] Do this so that their children, who have not known, may hear and learn to honor Yahweh your God, as long as you live in the land that you are going over the Jordan to possess."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the priests and the elders.

your foreigner who is within your city gates

Here "city gates" represents the cities themselves. Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the instances of "your" here are singular. AT: "your foreigners who live in your cities" (See: Synecdoche and Forms of You)

keep all the words of this law

"carefully obey all the commands in this law"

translationWords

- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- honor, honors
- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Jordan River, Jordan
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:14-15

UDB:

14 Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Listen carefully. You will soon die. Summon Joshua, and you will go to the sacred tent with him, in order that I may appoint him to be the new leader.” So Joshua and Moses went to the sacred tent.

15 There Yahweh appeared to them in a pillar of cloud, and that cloud was over the entrance to the tent.

ULB:

14 Yahweh said to Moses, “Look, the day is coming when you must die; call Joshua and present yourselves in the tent of meeting, so that I may give him a command.” Moses and Joshua went and presented themselves in the tent of meeting. 15 Yahweh appeared in the tent in a pillar of cloud; the pillar of cloud stood over the door of the tent.

translationNotes

Look, the

“Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. The”

a pillar of cloud

This was a thick cloud of smoke in the shape of an upright column.

translationWords

- Moses
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- Joshua
- tent of meeting
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- column, columns, pillar, pillars

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:16

UDB:

16 Yahweh said to Moses, "You will soon die. Then these people will become unfaithful to me. They will stop obeying the covenant that I made with them. They will begin to worship the foreign gods that are worshiped by the people of the land that they will enter.

ULB:

16 Yahweh said to Moses, "Look, you will sleep with your fathers; this people will rise up and act like a prostitute going after the strange gods that are among them in the land where they are going. They will forsake me and break my covenant that I have made with them.

translationNotes

Look, you

"Pay attention to what I am going to tell you. You"

you will sleep with your fathers

This is a polite way to say "you will die." AT: "you will die and join your ancestors who have died before you" (See: Euphemism)

will rise up and act like a prostitute

Being a prostitute is a metaphor for worshiping gods other than Yahweh. AT: "will start to be unfaithful to me" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Moses
- asleep, fall asleep, fell asleep, fallen asleep, sleep, sleeps, slept, sleeping, sleeper, sleepless, sleepy
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- covenant, covenants, new covenant

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:17-18

UDB:

[17] When that happens, I will become very angry with them. I will abandon them and refuse to help them any longer. Many bad things will happen to them, and they will be destroyed. Then they will say among themselves, 'These things are happening to us because our God is no longer with us.' [18] And because of all the evil things that they will have done, and especially because they will have started to worship other gods, I will refuse to help them.

ULB:

[17] Then, on that day, my anger will be kindled against them and I will abandon them. I will hide my face from them and they will be devoured. Many disasters and troubles will find them so that they will say on that day, 'Have these disasters not come upon us because our God is not in our midst?' [18] I will surely hide my face from them on that day because of all the evil that they will have done, because they has turned to other gods.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

my anger will be kindled against them

Yahweh compares his anger to someone starting a fire. This emphasizes God's power to destroy whatever makes him angry. This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will kindle my anger against them" or "I will become angry with them" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

I will hide my face from them

This is an idiom. AT: "I will not help them" (See: Idiom)

they will be devoured

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will devour them" or "I will allow their enemies to devour them" (See: Active or Passive)

devoured

This is a metaphor for "completely destroyed." (See: Metaphor)

Many disasters and troubles will find them

This describes the disasters and troubles as if they were human. AT: “They will experience many disasters and troubles” (See: Personification)

Have these disasters not come upon us ... midst?

This describes the disasters and troubles as if they were human. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “These disasters are destroying me ... midst.” (See: Personification and Rhetorical Question)

our God is not in our midst

“God is no longer protecting us” or “God has left us alone”

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- God
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:19-20

UDB:

19 So I am going to give you, Moses, a song. Write it on a scroll and teach it to the Israelite people and make them memorize it. It will be like a witness that accuses them. 20 I am about to take them into a very fertile land, a land that I solemnly promised their ancestors that I would give to them. There they will have plenty to eat, with the result that their stomachs will always be full and they will become fat. But then they will turn to other gods and start to worship them, and they will despise me and break the covenant that I have made with them.

ULB:

19 Now therefore write this song for yourselves and teach it to the people of Israel. Put it in their mouths, so that this song may be a witness for me against the people of Israel. 20 For when I will have brought them into the land that I swore to give to their ancestors, a land flowing with milk and honey, and when they have eaten and become satisfied and fat, then they will turn to other gods and they will serve them and they will despise me and they will break my covenant.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses about the Israelites.

Put it in their mouths

This is an idiom. AT: “Make them memorize and sing it” (See: Idiom)

a land flowing with milk and honey

This is an idiom. AT: “a land where plenty of milk and honey flow” or “a land that is excellent for cattle and farming” See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 6:3.

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- honey, honeycomb

- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- worship
- covenant, covenants, new covenant

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:21

UDB:

21 And many terrible disasters will happen to them. After that happens, their descendants will remember this song, and it will be like a witness that says, 'Now you know why Yahweh punished your ancestors.' I will soon take them into the land that I solemnly promised that I would give to them; but even now, before I do that, I know what they are thinking that they will do when they are living there."

ULB:

21 When many evils and troubles come upon this people, this song will testify before them as a witness (for it will not be forgotten from the mouths of their descendants). For I know the plans that they are forming today, even before I have brought them into the land that I promised them."

translationNotes

When many evils and troubles come upon this people

Here evils and troubles are described as if they were human and could find people. AT: "When this people experiences many evils and troubles" (See: Personification)

this song will testify before them as a witness

This speaks of the song as if it were a human witness testifying in court against Israel. (See: Personification)

it will not be forgotten from the mouths of their descendants

This can be stated in active form. AT: "their descendants will not forget to keep it in their mouths" (See: Active or Passive)

it will not be forgotten from the mouths of their descendants

This can be stated positively. AT: "their descendants will remember to keep it in their mouths" (See: Active or Passive)

it will not be forgotten from the mouths of their descendants

The idiom "forget it from the mouth" means to stop speaking about it. AT: "their descendants will not stop speaking about it to each other" (See: Active or Passive)

the plans that they are forming

What people plan to do is spoken of as if it were a physical object. AT: “what they plan to do” (See: Metaphor)

the land that I promised

God’s promise of the land was to give it to the people of Israel. This can be stated clearly. AT: “the land that I promised I would give to them” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:22-23

UDB:

[22] So on the very day that Yahweh gave Moses that song, Moses also taught it to the Israelite people.

[23] Then Yahweh appointed Joshua as leader and said to him, "Be brave and confident, because you will lead the Israelite people into the land that I solemnly promised that I would give to them. And I will be with you."

ULB:

[22] So Moses wrote this song the same day and taught it to the people of Israel. [23] Yahweh gave Joshua son of Nun a command and said, "Be strong and of good courage; for you will bring the people of Israel into the land that I swore to them, and I will be with you."

translationNotes

Be strong and of good courage

"Be strong and courageous." See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 31:5.

translationWords

- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Joshua
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:24-26

UDB:

[24] Moses finished writing all the law onto a scroll. [25] Then he told the descendants of Levi, who were carrying the Sacred Chest that contained the Ten Commandments, [26] "Take this scroll on which these laws are written, and place it beside the Sacred Chest that contains the covenant that Yahweh our God made with you, in order that it may remain there to testify about what Yahweh will do to the people if they disobey him.

ULB:

[24] It happened that when Moses had finished writing the words of this law in a book, [25] that he commanded the Levites who carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, and he said, [26] "Take this book of the law and put it by the side of the ark of the covenant of Yahweh your God, so that it may be there as a witness against you.

translationNotes

witness against you

Moses speaks to the Levites as if they were one man, so the word "you" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- Moses
- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:27-29

UDB:

[27] I say this because I know that these people are very stubborn. They have rebelled against Yahweh all during the time that I have been with them, and they will rebel much more after I die! [28] So gather all the elders of the tribes and your officials, in order that I can teach them the words of this song, and so that I can request all those who are in heaven and on the earth to be witnesses to testify against these people. [29] I say this, because I know that after I die, the people will become very wicked. They will stop doing everything that I have commanded them to do. And in the future, because of all the evil things that they will do, they will cause Yahweh to become angry with them. Then he will cause them to experience disasters."

ULB:

[27] For I know your rebellion and your stiff neck; look, while I am still alive with you even today, you have been rebellious against Yahweh; how much more after my death? [28] Assemble to me all the elders of your tribes, and your officers, so that I may speak these words in their ears and call heaven and earth to witness against them. [29] For I know that after my death you will utterly corrupt yourselves and turn aside out of the path that I have commanded you; disaster will come on you in the following days. This will happen because you will do what is evil in the sight of Yahweh, so as to provoke him to anger through the work of your hands."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the Levites about all the Israelite people.

your rebellion and your stiff neck

Moses speaks to the Levites as if they were one man, so the word "your" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

your stiff neck

See how you translated "stubborn" in Deuteronomy 9:6.

how much more after my death?

This rhetorical question emphasizes how rebellious the people were. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "you will be even more rebellious after I die." (See: Rhetorical Question)

so that I may speak these words in their ears

Here "in their ears" means the people themselves. AT: "so that I may speak the words of this song to them" (See: Synecdoche)

call heaven and earth to witness against them

Possible meanings are 1) Moses is calling on all those who live in heaven and earth to be witnesses to what he says or 2) Moses is speaking to heaven and earth as if they are people, and he is calling them to be witnesses to what he says. A similar phrase appears in Deuteronomy 30:19. (See: Metonymy and Personification and Apostrophe)

you will utterly corrupt yourselves

"you will do what is completely wrong." See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:16.

turn aside out of the path that I have commanded you

"stop following the instructions I have given to you." See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 9:12.

what is evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. AT: "what is evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

through the work of your hands

Here "your hands" means the people themselves. AT: "because of what you have made" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- elder, elders
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- word, words
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly

- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- anger, angered, angry
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 31:30

UDB:

30 Then, while all the Israelite people listened, Moses sang this entire song to them:

ULB:

30 Moses recited in the ears of all the assembly of Israel the words of this song until they were finished.

translationNotes

Moses recited in the ears of all the assembly of Israel

Here “ears” refers to the whole person. AT: “Moses recited to all the people of Israel” (See: Synecdoche)

recited

Possible meanings are 1) “sang” or 2) “spoke.”

the words of this song

You can make clear the understood information. AT: “the words of the song that Yahweh taught him” (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- Moses
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- Israel, Israelites
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 31 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 32:1-43.

Special concepts in this chapter

Punishment

This chapter prophesies a time when Israel will be disobedient to Yahweh and he will have to punish them. This is meant to serve as a warning to the nation. (See: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 32:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 32:1-2

UDB:

[1] "Listen to me, all you who are in the heavens,
and all you who are on the earth, listen to what I say.
[2] I wish that my song may help you like the rain helps you,
or like the dew on the ground in the morning,
or like a gentle rain on the young plants,
like showers of rain on the grass.

ULB:

[1] Give ear, you heavens, and let me speak.
Let the earth listen to the words of my mouth.
[2] Let my teaching drop down like the rain,
let my speech distill like the dew,
like the gentle rain on the tender grass,
and like the showers on the plants.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

Give ear, you heavens ... Let the earth listen

Yahweh speaks to the heavens and earth as if they are there listening. Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh is speaking to the inhabitants of heaven and earth or 2) Yahweh is speaking to the heavens and earth as if they are persons. (See: Apostrophe)

Let my teaching drop down like the rain ... and like the showers on the plants

This means Yahweh wants the people to eagerly accept his helpful teaching. (See: Simile)

distill

Use the word in your language for the process by which dew appears.

dew

water that forms on leaves and grass on cool mornings

tender grass

“new plants”

showers

heavy rain

translationWords

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:3-4

UDB:

[3] I will praise Yahweh.

And all you people should praise how great our God is.

[4] He is like a rock on top of which we are protected;

everything that he does is perfect and completely just.

He always does what he says that he will do;

he never does anything that is wrong.

ULB:

[3] For I will proclaim the name of Yahweh,

and ascribe greatness to our God.

[4] The Rock, his work is perfect;

for all his paths are just.

He is the faithful God, without iniquity.

He is just and upright.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

proclaim the name of Yahweh

This is an idiom. “tell how good Yahweh is” (See: Idiom)

ascribe greatness to our God

“make sure people know that our God is great”

The Rock

This a proper name that Moses gives to Yahweh, who, like a rock, is strong and able to protect his people. (See: Metaphor)

his work

“everything he does”

all his paths are just

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. AT: “he does everything in a just way” (See: Metaphor)

He is just and upright

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is fair and does what is right. (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
- name, names, named
- Yahweh
- God
- works, deeds, work, acts
- perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- iniquity, iniquities

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:5-6

UDB:

[5] But you Israelite people have been very unfaithful to him;

because of your sins, you no longer deserve to be his children.

You are extremely wicked and deceitful.

[6] You foolish and senseless people,

is this the way that you should repay Yahweh for all that he has done for you?

He is your father; he created you;

he caused you to become a nation.

ULB:

[5] They have acted corruptly against him.

They are not his children. It is their disgrace.

They are a perverted and crooked generation.

[6] Do you reward Yahweh in this way,

you foolish and senseless people?

Is he not your father, the one who has created you?

He made you and established you.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. Moses continues to use parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

acted corruptly against him

"opposed him by doing what is wrong." See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 04:16.

a perverted and crooked generation

The words "perverted" and "crooked" mean basically the same thing. Moses uses them to emphasize how wicked the generation is. AT: "a completely wicked generation" (See: Doublet)

Do you reward Yahweh in this way ... people?

Moses uses a question to scold the people. AT: "You should give Yahweh proper praise ... people." (See: Rhetorical Question)

you foolish and senseless people

The words "foolish" and "senseless" mean the same thing and emphasize how foolish the people are for disobeying Yahweh. AT: "you extremely foolish people" (See: Doublet)

your father ... has created you ... made you and established you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular.

Is he not your father, the one who has created you?

Moses uses a question to scold the people. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Yahweh is your father and the one who created you." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly
- children, child
- generation
- reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder
- Yahweh
- fool, fools, foolish, folly
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- create, creates, created, creation, creator

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:7-8

UDB:

[7] Think about what happened long ago;
consider what happened to your ancestors.
Ask your parents, and they will inform you;
ask the older people, and they will tell you.
[8] When God, who is greater than any other god, long ago divided the people into groups,
he assigned to the nations their land.
He determined where each people group should live
and limited to each people group their own gods.

ULB:

[7] Call to mind the days of ancient times,
think about the years of many ages past.
Ask your father and he will show you,
your elders and they will tell you.
[8] When the Most High gave the nations their inheritance—
when he divided all of mankind,
and he set the boundaries of the peoples,
as he also fixed the number of their gods.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel.

Call to mind ... think about ... your father ... show you ... your elders ... tell you

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words “you” and “your” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: “Remember” (See: Idiom)

days of ancient times

"days of long ago." Moses refers to the time period when the ancestors of the people of Israel were alive.

think about the years of many ages past

This is a repetition of what Moses just said in the previous portion. Moses wants the people of Israel to focus on their history as a nation. (See: Parallelism)

he will show you

"he will make it clear to you" or "he will enable you to understand it"

gave the nations their inheritance

This is an idiom. "put the nations in the places where they would live." Similar words, "giving to you as an inheritance," appear in Deuteronomy 4:21. (See: Idiom)

he set the boundaries of the peoples, as he also fixed the number of their gods

God assigned each people group, together with its gods, to its own territory. In this way, he limited the influence of a people group's idols.

translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- age, ages, aged
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- elder, elders
- Most High
- nation, nations
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:9-10

UDB:

[9] But Yahweh decided that we would be his people;
he chose us, the descendants of Jacob, to belong to him.
[10] He saw our ancestors when they were in a desert,
wandering in a land that was desolate.
He protected them and took care of them,
as every person takes good care of his own eyes.

ULB:

[9] For Yahweh's portion is his people;
Jacob is his apportioned inheritance.
[10] He found him in a desert land,
and in the barren and howling wilderness;
he shielded him and cared for him,
he guarded him as the apple of his eye.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. As he speaks to the Israelites, he talks about them as if they were someone else and as if they were one man. (See: Parallelism)

For Yahweh's portion is his people; Jacob is his apportioned inheritance

These two phrases means basically the same thing and and can be combined. AT: "The descendants of Jacob are Yahweh's inheritance" (See: Parallelism)

He found him ... shielded him and cared for him ... guarded him

"He found Jacob ... shielded him and cared for him ... guarded him" You may need to translate this as if Moses were talking about the Israelites as many people. AT: "He found our ancestors ... shielded them and cared for them ... guarded them"

howling wilderness

Here "howling" refers to the sound the wind makes as it blows through the empty land.

he guarded him as the apple of his eye

This is an idiom. The apple of an eye refers to the dark part inside the eyeball that allows a person to see. This is a very important and sensitive part of the body. This means that the people of Israel are very important to God and something he protects. AT: “he protected him as something very valuable and precious” (See: Idiom and Simile)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- barren
- shield, shields, shielded

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:11-12

UDB:

[11] Yahweh protected his people just like an eagle encourages its babies to fly
and flutters over them,
spreading its wings and catching them if they start to fall.
[12] Yahweh was the only one who led them;
no other foreign god helped them.

ULB:

[11] As an eagle that guards her nest
and flutters over her young,
Yahweh spread out his wings and took them,
and carried them on his pinions.
[12] Yahweh alone led him;
no foreign god was with him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

As an eagle that guards her nest and flutters over her young, Yahweh spread out his wings and took them, and carried them on his pinions

This means Yahweh watched over and protected the Israelites while they were in the desert. (See: Simile)

pinions

the outer edges of a bird's wings

led him ... with him

Moses again speaks of the Israelites as "Jacob" (Deuteronomy 32:9-10). You may need to translate as if Moses were speaking of the Israelites as many people. AT: "led them ... with them" (See: Pronouns)

translationWords

- eagle, eagles
- Yahweh
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:13

UDB:

[13] After they entered the land that Yahweh promised to give to them,
Yahweh enabled them to rule the hill country;
they ate the crops that grew in the fields.
They found honey in the rocks,
and their olive trees grew even in stony ground.

ULB:

[13] He made him ride on high places of the land,
and he fed him the fruits of the field;
he nourished him with honey from the rock,
and oil from the flinty crag.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

He made him ride on high places of the land

This is an idiom. The word "him" refers to the people of Israel. AT: "Yahweh made them ride on high places of the land" or "Yahweh helped them take and occupy the land" (See: Idiom)

made him ride ... fed him ... nourished him

Moses continues to speak of the Israelites as "Jacob" (Deuteronomy 32:9-10). You may need to translate this as though Moses were speaking of the Israelites as many people. "made our ancestors ride ... fed them ... nourished them" (See: Pronouns)

he fed him the fruits of the field

"he brought him to a land with plenty of crops he could eat"

he nourished him with honey from the rock, and oil from the flinty crag

The land had many wild bees, which produce honey, with hives inside rock holes. There were also many olive trees, which provide oil, and grow on rocks, hills, and mountains.

nourished him with honey

This is like a mother giving her breast to an infant. “allowed him to suck honey” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- high place, high places
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- honey, honeycomb
- oil

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:14

UDB:

14 The cows gave them plenty of curds; the goats gave them plenty of milk,

they had well fed sheep and cattle,

they had very good wheat,

and they made delicious wine from their grapes.

ULB:

14 He ate butter from the herd and drank milk from the flock,

with fat of lambs,

rams of Bashan and goats,

with the finest of the wheat—

and you drank foaming wine made from the juice of grapes.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "you" here is singular. (See: Parallelism and Forms of You)

He ate

Moses continues to speak of the Israelites as "Jacob" (Deuteronomy 32:9-10). You may need to translate as though Moses were speaking of the Israelites as many people. "Our ancestors ate" (See: Pronouns)

fat of lambs, rams of Bashan and goats

The people of Israel had many healthy herd animals.

translationWords

- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- lamb, Lamb of God
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- Bashan

- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- wheat
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- grape, grapes, grapevine

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:15-16

UDB:

15 The Israelite people became rich and prosperous,

but then they rebelled against God;

they abandoned him, the one who created them,

the one who powerfully saves them.

16 He abandoned them because they started to worship other gods.

Because of their worshiping disgusting idols,

he became angry.

ULB:

15 But Jeshurun grew fat and kicked—

you grew fat, you were too fat, and you had eaten your fill—

he abandoned the God who made him,

and he rejected the Rock of his salvation.

16 They made Yahweh jealous by their strange gods;

with their abominations they angered him.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues speaking his poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

Jeshurun

Moses speaks of the Israelites as if they were a well-fed animal whose owner named it Jeshurun. You may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Jeshurun' means 'upright one.'" If your language cannot speak of the Israelites as Jeshurun, you may refer to the Israelites as many people, as the UDB does. (See: How to Translate Names)

grew fat and kicked

Jeshurun, the well-fed animal who kicks instead of becoming gentle is a metaphor for the Israelites, who rebelled even though God took care of them. (See: Metaphor)

you grew fat, you were too fat, and you had eaten your fill

Moses scolds the Israelites by speaking in the song to Jeshurun. “you became fat, you became fatter, and you became as fat as you could become”

the Rock of his salvation

This means Yahweh is strong like a rock and able to protect his people. (See: Metaphor)

the Rock

This a proper name that Moses gives to Yahweh, who, like a rock, is strong and able to protect his people. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:4. (See: Metaphor)

They made Yahweh jealous

The Israelites made Yahweh jealous.

translationWords

- God
- reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- Yahweh
- jealous, jealousy
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- detest, detested, detestable
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- abomination, abominations, abominable
- anger, angered, angry

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:17-18

UDB:

[17] They offered sacrifices to gods who were really demons,
gods that their ancestors had never known;
they offered sacrifices to gods that they had recently found out about,
gods whom your ancestors had never had any respect for.
[18] They forgot the true God, the one who protects them,
the one who created them and caused them to live.

ULB:

[17] They sacrificed to demons, which are not God—
gods they had not known,
gods that recently appeared,
gods your fathers did not fear.
[18] You have deserted the Rock, who became your father,
and you forgot the God who gave you birth.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak his song to the Israelites. (See: Forms of You)

They sacrificed

“The people of Israel sacrificed”

gods that recently appeared

This means the Israelites recently learned about these gods.

your fathers

Moses is speaking to the Israelites as many people, so the word “your” is plural. (See: Forms of You)

You have deserted ... your father ... you forgot ... gave you

Moses is speaking to the Israelites as if they were one man, so all instances of "you" and "your" are singular. (See: Forms of You)

You have deserted the Rock

Here Yahweh is called the rock because he is strong and protective. AT: "You have left the protective care of Yahweh" (See: Metaphor)

the Rock

This a proper name that Moses gives to Yahweh, who, like a rock, is strong and able to protect his people. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:4. (See: Metaphor)

who became your father ... who gave you birth

This compares Yahweh to a father and a mother. This means God caused them to live and to be a nation. AT: "who fathered you ... who gave life to you" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- God
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:19-20

UDB:

[19] When Yahweh saw that they had abandoned him, he became angry,
so he rejected the Israelite people who were like his sons and daughters.
[20] He said, 'They are very wicked people,
very unfaithful;
so I will no longer help them,
and then I will watch and see what happens to them.

ULB:

[19] Yahweh saw this and he rejected them,
because his sons and his daughters provoked him so.
[20] "I will hide my face from them," he said,
"and I will see what their end will be;
for they are a perverse generation,
children who are unfaithful.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

his sons and his daughters

This refers to the people of Israel whom Yahweh gave life to and made into a nation. (See: Metaphor)

I will hide my face from them

This is an idiom. AT: "I will turn away from them" or "I will stop helping them" (See: Idiom)

I will see what their end will be

"I will see what happens to them"

translationWords

- Yahweh
- reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection
- son, sons
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting
- generation
- children, child
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:21

UDB:

[21] Because they now are worshiping idols, which are not really gods,
they have caused me to be like a jealous husband because I want them to worship only me.
So now, in order to cause them to become angry,
I will now send to attack them an army of a nation of worthless and foolish people.

ULB:

[21] They have made me jealous by what is not god
and angered me by their worthless things.
I will make them envious by those who are not a people;
by a foolish nation I will make them angry.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

They have made me jealous

Here "me" refers to Yahweh.

what is not god

"what are false gods"

worthless things

You may need to make explicit what the "things" are. AT: "worthless idols" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

those who are not a people

"people who do not belong to one people group"

foolish nation

Translate “foolish” as in Deuteronomy 32:6.

translationWords

- jealous, jealousy
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- anger, angered, angry
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- envy, covet
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation, nations
- understand, understands, understood, understanding

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:22

UDB:

[22] I will be very angry, and I will destroy them

like a fire that will burn all the way down to the place where dead people are;

that fire will destroy the earth and everything that grows on it,

and it will even burn what is down under the mountains.

ULB:

[22] For a fire is kindled by my anger

and is burning to the lowest Sheol;

it is devouring the earth and its harvest;

it is setting on fire the foundations of the mountains.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

For a fire is kindled by my anger ... foundations of the mountains

Yahweh compares his anger to a fire. This emphasizes his power to destroy what makes him angry. (See: Metaphor)

a fire is kindled by my anger and is burning ... it is devouring ... it is setting

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I start a fire because I am angry, and it burns ... it is devouring ... it is setting" or "when I am angry, I destroy my enemies like a fire, and I destroy everything on earth and in ... I devour ... I set" (See: Active or Passive)

to the lowest Sheol

"even to the world of the dead"

translationWords

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- anger, angered, angry
- Hades, Sheol
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- earth, earthen, earthly
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:23-24

UDB:

[23] I will pile up on them many disasters;

they will feel as though I am shooting all my arrows on them.

[24] They will die because of being hungry and because of having hot fevers

and because of terrible diseases;

I will send wild animals to attack them,

and poisonous snakes to bite them.

ULB:

[23] I will heap disasters on them;

I will shoot all my arrows at them;

[24] They will be wasted by hunger and devoured by burning heat

and bitter destruction;

I will send on them the teeth of wild animals,

with the poison of things that crawl in the dust.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

I will heap disasters on them

Yahweh speaks of bad things that would happen to the Israelites as if they were something like dirt that he could pile up on top of the Israelites. AT: "I will make sure that many bad things happen to them" (See: Metaphor)

I will shoot all my arrows at them

Here Yahweh compares the bad things he will make sure happen to the Israelites to someone shooting arrows from a bow. AT: "I will do all I can do to kill them" (See: Metaphor)

They will be wasted by hunger

This can be stated in active form. The abstract noun "hunger" can be translated as the verb "be hungry." AT: "They will grow weak and die because they are hungry" (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

They will ... hunger and devoured by burning heat and bitter destruction

Possible meanings of "burning heat" are 1) the Israelites will suffer from fevers or 2) the weather will be unusually hot during a drought or famine. This can be stated in active form. AT: "They will ... hunger, and burning heat and terrible disasters will devour them" or "They will ... hunger, and they will die from burning heat and terrible disasters" (See: Active or Passive)

I will send on them the teeth of wild animals, with the poison of things that crawl in the dust

The teeth and the poison are synecdoches for the animals that use these things to kill. AT: "I will send wild animals to bite them, and things that crawl in the dust to bite and poison them" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- bow and arrow, bows and arrows
- waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:25-26

UDB:

[25] Outside their houses, their enemies will kill them with swords,
and in their homes, their enemies will cause them to be terrified.
Their enemies will kill young men and young women,
and they will kill infants and old people with gray hair.
[26] I wanted only to scatter them to distant countries
in order that no one would ever remember them.

ULB:

[25] Outside the sword will bereave,
and in the bedrooms terror will do so.
It will destroy both young man and virgin,
the nursing baby, and the man of gray hairs.
[26] I said that I would scatter them far away,
that I would make the memory of them to cease from among mankind.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

Outside the sword will bereave

Here "sword" represents the army of the enemy. AT: "When the Israelites are outside, the enemy army will kill them" (See: Metonymy)

terror will do so

Yahweh speaks of being afraid as if it were a person who comes into a house and kills those who live in it. AT: "you will die because you are afraid" (See: Personification)

young man and virgin, the nursing baby, and the man of gray hairs

These terms describing people of different ages are combined to mean that all kinds of people will die. (See: Merism)

I said that I would ... away, that I would ... mankind

This can be translated as a direct quote. AT: "I said, 'I will ... away, and I will ... mankind'" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

I would make the memory of them to cease from among mankind

"I would make all people forget about them"

translationWords

- sword, swords, swordsmen
- terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying
- virgin, virgins, virginity

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:27

UDB:

[27] But if I did that, their enemies would wrongly boast
that they were the ones who had gotten rid of my people;
they would say, "We are the ones who defeated them;
it was not Yahweh who has done all these things."'

ULB:

[27] Were it not that I feared the provocation of the enemy,
and that their enemies would judge mistakenly,
and that they would say, 'Our hand is exalted,'
I would have done all this.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

Were it not that I feared the provocation of the enemy

"I was afraid of the provocation of the enemy"

the provocation of the enemy

This abstract noun can be translated as a verb. AT: "that the enemy would provoke me" or "that the enemy would cause me to be angry" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the enemy

Yahweh speaks of his enemies as if they are one man. AT: "my enemy" or "my enemies" (See: Pronouns)

judge mistakenly

"misunderstand"

Our hand is exalted

Here “hand” represents the strength or power of a person. To be exalted is an idiom for defeating an enemy. AT: “We have defeated them because we are more powerful” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:28-29

UDB:

[28] You Israelites are a nation of people who do not have any sense.

None of you are wise.

[29] If you were wise, you would understand why you would be punished;

you would have realized what was going to happen to you.

ULB:

[28] For Israel is a nation devoid of wisdom,

and there is no understanding in them.

[29] Oh, that they were wise, that they understood this,

that they would consider their coming fate!

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

Oh, that they were wise, that they understood this, that they would consider their coming fate

Moses states something that he wishes were true, but he knows that they are not wise and do not understand that their disobedience will cause Yahweh to bring this disaster on them. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

their coming fate

The abstract noun "fate" can be translated as a verb. AT: "what is going to happen to them" (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- nation, nations
- wise, wisdom
- understand, understands, understood, understanding

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:30-31

UDB:

[30] You would have realized why a thousand of your soldiers would be defeated by only one of the enemy soldiers,

and why two of your enemies would chase away ten thousand Israelite soldiers.

You would realize that this would happen only if God, the one who always defended you, had put you in the hands of your enemies,

that Yahweh had abandoned you.

[31] Your enemies know that their gods are not powerful like Yahweh, our God,

so their gods could not have defeated us Israelites.

ULB:

[30] How could one chase a thousand,

and two put ten thousand to flight,

unless their Rock had sold them,

and Yahweh had given them up?

[31] For our enemies' rock is not like our Rock,

just as even our enemies admit.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words and tell them more of what they would have understood if they were wise (Deuteronomy 32:29). (See: Parallelism)

How could one chase a thousand ... Yahweh had given them up?

Moses uses a question to scold the people for not being wise enough to understand why their enemies are defeating them. This question can be translated as a statement as in the UDB. (See: Rhetorical Question)

How could one chase a thousand, and two put ten thousand to flight

You can make clear the understood information. AT: "How could 1 enemy soldier chase 1,000 of your men, and 2 enemy soldiers cause 10,000 of your men to run away" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

unless their Rock had sold them

The word “Rock” refers to Yahweh who is strong and able to protect his people. AT: “unless Yahweh, their Rock, had handed them over” (See: Metaphor)

their Rock ... our Rock

“The Rock” here is a proper name that Moses gives to Yahweh, who, like a rock, is strong and able to protect his people. Translate “Rock” as in Deuteronomy 32:4. (See: Metaphor)

our enemies’ rock is not like our Rock

The enemies’ idols and false gods are not powerful like Yahweh.

just as even our enemies admit

“not only do we say so, but our enemies say so also”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:32

UDB:

[32] Your enemies are like grapevines planted near the ruins of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah;
the grapes from those vines are bitter and poisonous.

ULB:

[32] For their vine comes from the vine of Sodom,
and from the fields of Gomorrah;
their grapes are grapes of poison;
their clusters are bitter.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

For their vine comes from the vine of Sodom ... clusters are bitter

Moses compares enemies who worship false gods to the wicked people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah and to grapevines that produce poisonous fruit. This means their enemies are wicked and will cause the Israelites to die if the Israelites start to act like the people who live around them. (See: Metaphor)

their vine comes from the vine of Sodom, and from the fields of Gomorrah

The vine is a metaphor for the people group. "it is as if their vine were a branch of the vines that grew in the fields of Sodom and Gomorrah" or AT: "they do evil the same way the people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah did" (See: Metaphor)

their clusters

"their clusters of grapes"

translationWords

- vine, vines
- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- grape, grapes, grapevine

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:33-34

UDB:

[33] The wine from those grapes is like the poison of snakes.

[34] Yahweh says, 'I know what I have planned to do to the Israelite people and to their enemies,

and I have locked up those plans as someone would lock up his valuable possessions.

ULB:

[33] Their wine is the poison of serpents

and the cruel venom of asps.

[34] Is not this plan secretly kept by me,

sealed up among my treasures?

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. He continues to quote Yahweh's words. (See: Parallelism)

Their wine is the poison of serpents and the cruel venom of asps

Moses continues comparing the enemies of the people of Israel to grapevines that produce poisonous fruit and wine. This means their enemies are wicked. (See: Metaphor)

asps

"snakes"

Is not this plan secretly kept by me, sealed up among my treasures?

This question emphasizes that Yahweh's plans for the people of Israel are kept secret like a valuable treasure. The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. AT: "I know what I have planned to do to the Israelite people and to their enemies, and I have locked up those plans as someone would lock up his valuable possessions." (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers
- seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:35

UDB:

35 I am the one who will get revenge and pay those enemies back for what they have done to my people,

at the right time for them to be punished;

they will soon experience disasters,

and I will punish them quickly.'

ULB:

35 Vengeance is mine to give, and recompense,

at the time when their foot slips;

for the day of disaster for them is near,

and the things that are to come on them will hurry to happen."

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. This is the end of Moses's quotation of Yahweh's words that begins in Deuteronomy 32:20. (See: Parallelism)

Vengeance is mine to give, and recompense

The words "vengeance" and "recompense" mean basically the same thing. AT: "I will have vengeance and punish Israel's enemies" (See: Doublet)

recompense

to punish or reward a person for what he has done

their foot slips

Something bad has happened to them. AT: "they are helpless" (See: Idiom)

the day of disaster for them

"the time for me to destroy them"

the things that are to come on them will hurry to happen

Yahweh speaks of the bad things that will happen to his enemies as if the bad things were people running eagerly to punish them. AT: “I will punish them quickly” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- time, timely, times, untimely

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:36

UDB:

[36] But Yahweh will say that you who are truly his people are innocent,

and he will act mercifully toward you who serve him,

when he sees that you are helpless,

and that there are very few of you, slaves or free people, who are still alive.

ULB:

[36] For Yahweh will give justice to his people,

and he will pity his servants.

He will see that their power is gone,

and no one remains, either slaves or free people.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to speak a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

For Yahweh will give justice to his people

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated as an adjective or as an adverb. AT: “For Yahweh will do what is just for his people” or “For Yahweh will act justly towards his people” (See: Abstract Nouns)

he will pity his servants

“he will feel that he needs to help his servants”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- people of God, my people
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- power, powers
- free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:37-38

UDB:

[37] Then Yahweh will ask you, 'Where are the gods
that you thought would protect you?
[38] You gave to those gods the best parts of the animals that you sacrificed,
and you poured out wine for them to drink.
So they should rise and help you;
they should be the ones who will protect you!

ULB:

[37] Then he will say, "Where are their gods,
the rock in whom they took refuge?—
[38] The gods who ate the fat of their sacrifices
and drank the wine of their drink offerings?
Let them rise up and help you;
let them be your protection.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

Where are their gods, the rock in whom they took refuge?

Yahweh scolds the people of Israel for seeking protection from other gods. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Look, the gods that the Israelites thought would protect them have not come to help them." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

The gods who ate the fat of their sacrifices and drank the wine of their drink offerings?

Here Yahweh mocks the people of Israel for offering sacrifices to other gods. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "The gods to whom the Israelites offered meat and wine have not come to help them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Let them rise up and help you; let them be your protection

Yahweh says this to mock the Israelites. He knows these gods cannot help them. AT: “These idols are not even able to get up and help or to protect you” (See: Irony)

translationWords

- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- drink offering
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:39-40

UDB:

[39] But now you will realize that I, only I, am God;
there is no other god who is a real god.
I am the one who can kill people and who can cause people to live;
I can wound people, and I can heal people,
and there is no one who can prevent me from doing those things.
[40] I raise my hand toward heaven and solemnly declare
that just as sure as I live forever, I will act.

ULB:

[39] See now that I, even I, am God,
and that there is no god besides me;
I kill, and I make alive;
I wound, and I heal,
and there is no one who can save you from my might.
[40] For I lift up my hand to heaven
and say, 'As I live forever, I will act.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

I, even I

"I, I myself" or "I, I alone." Yahweh repeats "I" to emphasize that only he is God.

I lift up my hand to heaven and say

"I lift up my hand to heaven and swear" or "I have taken an oath." Lifting up the hand is a sign of making an oath.

As I live forever

"As certainly as I live forever" or "I swear by my life which is never-ending." This statement assures the people that what God says in Deuteronomy 32:41-Deuteronomy 32:42 will happen.

translationWords

- God
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:41

UDB:

41 When I sharpen my sword
and prepare to punish people,
I will get revenge on my enemies,
and I will pay back those who hate me.

ULB:

41 When I sharpen my glittering sword,
and when my hand begins to bring justice,
I will render vengeance on my enemies,
and I will pay back those who hate me.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

When I sharpen my glittering sword

"When I sharpen my shining sword." This means God is preparing to judge and punish his enemies. AT: "When I am ready to judge my enemies" (See: Metonymy)

when my hand begins to bring justice

Here "hand" represents the whole person. AT: "when I get ready to judge the wicked" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- sword, swords, swordsmen
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:42

UDB:

[42] I will kill all of my enemies with a sword;
it will be as though I had arrows that were covered with their blood.
I will kill all those whom I capture
and cut off their heads.'

ULB:

[42] I will make my arrows drunk with blood,
and my sword will devour flesh
with the blood of the killed and the captives,
and from the heads of the leaders of the enemy.'"

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks a poetic song to the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

I will make my arrows drunk with blood, and my sword will devour flesh with the blood

Yahweh speaks of arrows as if they were people to whom he could give alcohol and make them drunk, and of a sword as if it were a person who was so hungry that he would eat an animal before draining the blood out. These metaphors are metonyms for a soldier using arrows and a sword to kill many enemies. This in turn is a metaphor for Yahweh killing his enemies in war. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy and Personification)

from the heads of the leaders of the enemy

A possible meaning is "from the long-haired heads of the enemy."

translationWords

- bow and arrow, bows and arrows
- drunk, drunkard
- blood
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring

- flesh
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:43

UDB:

[43] You people of all nations, you should praise Yahweh's people,
because Yahweh gets revenge on those who kill the people who serve him,
and he cleanses his people's land
which has become defiled because of their sins."

ULB:

[43] Rejoice, you nations, with God's people,
for he will avenge the blood of his servants;
he will render vengeance on his enemies,
and he will make atonement for his land, for his people.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the end of Moses' song. (See: Parallelism)

Rejoice, you nations

Moses addresses the peoples of all the nations as if they were there listening. (See: Metonymy and Apostrophe)

for he will avenge the blood of his servants; he will render vengeance on his enemies

Here "blood of his servants" represents the lives of his innocent servants who were killed. AT: "for he will take revenge on his enemies, who killed his servants" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- nation, nations
- people of God, my people
- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- blood
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:44-45

UDB:

44 Joshua and Moses sang that song while the Israelite people were listening. 45 Then they finished singing to them this song.

ULB:

44 Moses came and recited all the words of this song in the ears of the people, he, and Joshua son of Nun. 45 Then Moses finished reciting all these words to all Israel.

translationNotes

recited ... reciting

Possible meanings are 1) “spoke ... speaking” or 2) “sang ... singing.”

in the ears of the people

Here “ears” represents the people themselves and emphasizes that Moses wanted to make sure they heard the song clearly. AT: “to the people so they would be sure to hear it” (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Moses
- word, words
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Joshua
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:46-47

UDB:

[46] Moses said, "Never forget all these commands that I have been giving you today. Teach these laws to your children, in order that they will faithfully obey all of them. [47] These instructions are very important. If you obey them, you will live a long time in the land that you are about to cross the Jordan River to occupy."

ULB:

[46] He said to them, "Fix your mind on all the words that I have witnessed to you today, so that you may command your children to keep them, all the words of this law. [47] For this is no trivial matter for you, because it is your life, and through this thing you will prolong your days in the land that you are going over the Jordan to possess."

translationNotes

He said to them

"Moses said to the people of Israel"

Fix your mind on

This is an idiom. AT: "Pay attention to" or "Think about" (See: Idiom)

I have witnessed to you

Possible meanings are 1) "I have testified to you," referring to what Yahweh has said he will do to the Israelites if they disobey, or 2) "I have commanded you," referring to what Yahweh was commanding them to do.

your children

"your children and descendants"

this is

"this law is"

no trivial matter

This litotes can be stated positively. AT: "something very important" (See: Litotes)

because it is your life

The abstract noun “life” can be translated as the verb “live.” You may need to make explicit the metonymy of obeying the law, which represents the law itself. AT: “because you will live if you obey it” (See: Metonymy)

prolong your days

Long days are a metaphor for a long life. See how you translated these words in Deuteronomy 4:26. AT: “be able to live a long time.” (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- word, words
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- children, child
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Jordan River, Jordan
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:48-49

UDB:

[48] On that same day, Yahweh said to Moses, [49] "Go to the Abarim mountain range here in the region of Moab, across from Jericho. Climb Mount Nebo and look toward the west to see Canaan, the land that I am about to give to the Israelite people.

ULB:

[48] Yahweh spoke to Moses on that same day and said, [49] "Go up into this range of the mountains of Abarim, up Mount Nebo, which is in the land of Moab, opposite Jericho. You will look at the land of Canaan, which I am giving to the people of Israel as their possession.

translationNotes

mountains of Abarim

This is the name of a mountain range in Moab. (See: How to Translate Names)

Abarim, up Mount Nebo

"Abarim and climb up Mount Nebo"

Mount Nebo

This is the highest place in the Abarim Mountains. (See: How to Translate Names)

opposite Jericho

"on the other side of the river from Jericho"

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jericho
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Israel, Israelites
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 32:50-52

UDB:

[50] You will die on that mountain, like your older brother Aaron died on Mount Hor. [51] You will die because both of you disobeyed me in the presence of the Israelite people, when you all were at the springs of Meribah near Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin. You did not honor and respect me in the presence of the Israelite people in the way that I deserve because I am God. [52] When you are on that mountain where I told you to go, you will see in the distance in front of you the land that I am about to give to the Israelite people, but you will not enter it."

ULB:

[50] You will die on the mountain that you go up, and you will be gathered to your people, as Aaron your fellow Israelite died on Mount Hor and was gathered to his people. [51] This will happen because you were unfaithful to me among the people of Israel at the waters of Meribah in Kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin; because you did not treat me with honor and respect among the people of Israel. [52] For you will see the land before you, but you will not go there, into the land that I am giving to the people of Israel."

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh finishes speaking to Moses.

be gathered to your people

This is a polite way of saying Moses' spirit would join the spirits of his relatives in the world of the dead. AT: "join your ancestors who died before you" (See: Euphemism)

Mount Hor

This is the name of a mountain on the border of Edom. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meribah

This is the name of the place in the desert where Moses disobeyed God. (See: How to Translate Names)

wilderness of Zin

This is the name of a wilderness on the southern border of Judah. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Aaron
- Israel, Israelites
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- water, waters, watered, watering
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- honor, honors

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetic lines of Moses' blessings in 33:1-29.

Special concepts in this chapter

Families

Moses gives a series of prophecies or instructions for each of the tribes of Israel and Israel overall. (See: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 33:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 33:1-2

UDB:

[1] Before God's prophet Moses died, he asked God to bless the Israelite people. [2] This is what he said:

"Yahweh came and spoke to us at Mount Sinai;

he came like the sun rises in the region of Edom

and like his light shone on us when we were in the desert near Mount Paran after we left Mount Sinai.

He came with ten thousand angels,

and there was a flaming fire at his right side.

ULB:

[1] This is the blessing with which Moses the man of God blessed the people of Israel before his death.
[2] He said:

Yahweh came from Sinai

and rose from Seir upon them.

He shined out from Mount Paran,

and he came with ten thousands of holy ones.

In his right hand were flashes of lightning.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses begins to bless the tribes of Israel. Moses speaks the blessing in the form of short poems. (See: Parallelism)

Yahweh came from Sinai and rose from Seir upon them. He shined out from Mount Paran

Moses compares Yahweh to the rising sun. AT: "When Yahweh came from Sinai, he looked to them like the sun when it rises from Seir and shines out from Mount Paran" (See: Metaphor)

upon them

"upon the people of Israel"

ten thousands of holy ones

"10,000 angels" (See: Numbers)

In his right hand were flashes of lightning

Other possible meanings are 1) “In his right hand were flames of fire” or 2) “He gave them a law of fire” or 3) “He came from the south, down his mountain slopes.”

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Moses
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Paran
- Holy One
- right hand

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:3-4

UDB:

[3] Yahweh truly loves his people
and protects all those who belong to him.
So they prostrate themselves in front of him,
and they listen to his instructions.
[4] I gave them laws to obey,
laws that would forever be for the descendants of Jacob.

ULB:

[3] Indeed, he loves the peoples;
all his holy ones are in your hand,
and they bowed down at your feet;
they received your words.
[4] Moses commanded us a law,
an inheritance for the assembly of Jacob.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:2. Moses speaks the blessing in the form of short poems. (See: Parallelism)

General Information:

These verses are difficult to understand.

the peoples

“the people of Israel”

all his holy ones are in your hand ... your feet ... your words

The pronouns “his” and “your” refer to Yahweh. AT: “all Yahweh’s holy ones are in his hand ... his feet ... his words” (See: Pronouns)

all his holy ones are in your hand

The hand is a metonym for power and protection. AT: “you protect all his holy people” (See: Metonymy)

an inheritance

“a possession” or “a precious possession”

translationWords

- love, loves, loving, loved
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:5-6

UDB:

[5] So Yahweh became the king of his Israelite people
when all the tribes and their leaders had gathered together.
[6] I say this about the tribe of Reuben:
I desire that their tribe will never disappear,
but that they will never become numerous.

ULB:

[5] Then there was a king in Jeshurun,
when the heads of the people had gathered,
all the tribes of Israel together.
[6] Let Reuben live and not die,
but may his men be few.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:2. The blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

General Information:

Verse 5 is difficult to understand.

there was a king

“Yahweh became king”

Jeshurun

This is another name for Israel. Translated as in Deuteronomy 32:15.

Let Reuben live

This begins Moses’ blessings to the individual tribes of Israel.

but may his men be few

Other possible meanings are 1) “and may his men not be few” or 2) “even though his men are few.”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Reuben
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:7

UDB:

[7] I say this about the tribe of Judah:

Yahweh, listen to them when they call out for help;

and after they separate from the other tribes, unite them with the other tribes again.

Fight for them,

and help them to fight against their enemies.

ULB:

[7] This is the blessing for Judah. Moses said:

Listen, Yahweh, to the voice of Judah,

and bring him to his people again.

Fight for him;

be a help against his enemies.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:2. The blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

to the voice of Judah

Here "voice of Judah" refers to the cries and prayers of the people of Judah. AT: "when the people of Judah pray to you" (See: Metonymy)

be a help

The abstract noun "help" can be translated as a verb. AT: "help him to fight" (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Judah
- voice, voices
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:8

UDB:

[8] I say this about the tribe of Levi:

Yahweh, give to those who are dedicated to you the sacred stones that they will use to find out what you want to be done;

You tested them at a spring in the desert, a spring that they named Massah and also named Meribah

to find out if they would remain loyal to you.

ULB:

[8] About Levi, Moses said:

Your Thummim and your Urim belong your loyal one,

the one whom you tested at Massah,

with whom you struggled at the waters of Meribah.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:2. The blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

Your Thummim and your Urim

These were sacred stones the high priest carried on his breastplate and used at times to determine God's will. Here "your" refers to Yahweh. (See: Forms of You and Translate Unknowns)

your loyal one

"your holy one" or "the one who seeks to please you." This refers to the tribe of Levi.

Massah

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 6:16. Translator may add a footnote that says: "The name 'Massah' means 'testing.'"

Meribah

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:51. Translator may add a footnote that says: "The name 'Meribah' means 'argue' or 'quarrel.'"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- test, tests, tested
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:9

UDB:

[9] The tribe of Levi did what you told them to do
and obeyed the covenant that you had made with the Israelite people;
those laws were more important to them
than their siblings and parents and children.

ULB:

[9] The man who said about his father and mother, “I have not seen them.”
Neither did he acknowledge his brothers,
nor did he take account of his own children.
For he guarded your word
and kept your covenant.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:2. The blessings are short poems. He continues describing the tribe of Levi, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:8. (See: Parallelism)

your word

“your commands”

guarded ... kept

These words both mean to watch over and to protect. They are often metaphors for “obeyed,” but here they should be translated literally because they refer to a time when the Levites literally killed people who were rebelling against Yahweh. (See: Doublet and Metaphor)

translationWords

- acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- covenant, covenants, new covenant

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:10

UDB:

[10] The tribe of Levi will teach the Israelite people your decrees and your laws,

and they are the ones who will burn incense and who will completely burn on the altar the offerings that the people bring.

ULB:

[10] He teaches Jacob your decrees

and Israel your law.

He will put incense before you

and whole burnt offerings on your altar.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He continues to describe the tribe of Levi, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:8. (See: Parallelism)

your ... your ... you ... your

Moses is speaking to Yahweh, so all these words are singular.

translationWords

- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- decree, decrees, decreed
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- incense, incenses
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- altar, altars

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:11

UDB:

[11] Yahweh, bless their work

and accept all that they do.

Crush all their enemies;

do not enable their enemies to be able to fight against them again.

ULB:

[11] Bless, Yahweh, his possessions,

and accept the work of his hands.

Shatter the loins of those who rise up against him,

and those of the people who hate him, so that they do not rise up again.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He continues describing the tribe of Levi, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:8. (See: Parallelism)

accept

"be pleased with" or "be pleased to accept"

the work of his hands

Here the word "hands" refers to the whole person. AT: "all the work that he does" (See: Synecdoche)

Shatter the loins of

The loins were considered the center of strength, and are here represent strength. AT: "Take away the strength of" or "Utterly destroy" (See: Metonymy)

rise up ... rise up

This phrase is used twice as a metaphor. AT: "rise up to fight ... cause any more trouble" (See: Metaphor)

rise up against

This is an idiom. AT: “fight against” (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- loins
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:12

UDB:

[12] I say this about the tribe of Benjamin:

They are the tribe that Yahweh loves;

he keeps them safe.

He protects them continually,

and he lives among their hills.

ULB:

[12] About Benjamin, Moses said:

The one loved by Yahweh lives in security beside him;

Yahweh shields him all the day long,

and he lives between Yahweh's arms.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

The one loved by Yahweh lives

Here Moses is referring to the members of the tribe of Benjamin. This can be stated in active form. AT: "The ones whom Yahweh loves live" (See: Active or Passive)

lives in security

The abstact noun "security" can be translated using a verb phrase. AT: "lives where no one can harm him" (See: Abstract Nouns)

he lives between Yahweh's arms

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh protects the tribe of Benjamin with his power or 2) Yahweh lives in the hill region of the tribe of Benjamin. In both translations, it means Yahweh takes care of them.

translationWords

- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- Moses
- love, loves, loving, loved

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:13

UDB:

[13] I say this about the tribes of Joseph:

I desire that Yahweh will bless their land

by giving them rain from the sky

and water from deep down in the ground.

ULB:

[13] About Joseph, Moses said:

May his land be blessed by Yahweh

with the precious things of heaven, with the dew,

and with the deep that lies beneath.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

About Joseph

This refers to the tribe of Ephraim and the tribe of Manasseh. Both tribes descended from Joseph.

May his land be blessed by Yahweh

The word "his" refers to Joseph which represents the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh. This can be stated in active form. AT: "May Yahweh bless their land" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

with the precious things of heaven, with the dew

"with the precious dew from the sky" or "with the precious rain from the sky"

dew

water that forms on leaves and grass on cool mornings. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:2.

the deep that lies beneath

This refers to the water under the ground.

translationWords

- Joseph (OT)
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:14-15

UDB:

[14] I desire that Yahweh will bless their land by giving them good fruit ripened by the sun
and good crops in the right months.
[15] I desire that Yahweh give them that very nice fruit that will grow on trees in their ancient mountains.

ULB:

[14] May his land be blessed with the precious things of the harvest of the sun,
with the precious things of the produce of the months,
[15] with the finest things of the ancient mountains,
and with the precious things of the everlasting hills.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He continues to describe the tribe of Joseph, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:13. (See: Parallelism)

May his land be blessed

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 33:13. AT: "May Yahweh bless his land" (See: Active or Passive)

with the precious things of the harvest of the sun

"with the best crops that the sun causes to grow"

with the precious things of the produce of the months

"with the best crops that grow month to month"

finest things ... precious things

Moses is probably referring to food crops. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "the best fruits ... the precious fruits" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ancient mountains

“the mountains that existed long ago”

everlasting hills

“the hills that will exist forever”

translationWords

- precious
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:16

UDB:

[16] I desire that Yahweh will bless their land and that he fill the land with many good crops.
I desire that Yahweh will bless the tribes of Joseph in all those ways,
because he was the leader over his older brothers when they were in Egypt.

ULB:

[16] May his land be blessed with the precious things of the earth and its abundance,
and with the good will of him who was in the bush.
Let the blessing come on the head of Joseph,
and on the top of the head of him who was prince over his brothers.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He continues to describe the tribe of Joseph, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:13. (See: Parallelism)

May his land be blessed

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 33:13. AT: “May Yahweh bless his land” (See: Active or Passive)

its abundance

The abstract noun “abundance” can be translated as a verb phrase. AT: “what it produces in large amounts”

him who was in the bush

The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “Yahweh, who spoke to Moses from the burning bush” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Let the blessing come on the head of Joseph

This metaphor is of a man putting his hand on the head of a son and asking God to bless the son. The man here is Yahweh. AT: “May Yahweh bless Joseph as a father blesses his son” (See: Metaphor)

come on the head of Joseph, and on the top of the head of him

Here “head” and “top of the head” represent the whole person. Also, Joseph represents his descendants. AT: “be upon the descendants of Joseph” (See: Synecdoche and Metonymy)

top of the head

Another possible meaning is “brow” or “forehead.”

translationWords

- precious
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- brother, brothers

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:17

UDB:

[17] The descendants of Joseph will be as strong as a bull;

with their weapons they will wound their enemies like a wild ox gores other animals with its horns.

They will push other people groups,

all of them, to the most distant places on the earth.

That is what the descendants of the two sons of Joseph will do,

the ten thousands of the tribe of Ephraim and the thousands of the tribe of Manasseh.

ULB:

[17] The firstborn of an ox, majestic is he,

and his horns are the horns of a wild ox.

With them he will push the peoples, all of them, to the ends of the earth.

These are the ten thousands of Ephraim;

these are the thousands of Manasseh.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He continues to describe the tribe of Joseph, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:13. (See: Parallelism)

The firstborn of an ox, majestic is he

The ox is a metaphor for something large and strong. The word “firstborn” is a metaphor for honor. AT: “People will honor Joseph’s descendants, who are many and powerful” (See: Metaphor)

his horns are the horns of

The horn is a metaphor for strength. AT: “he is as strong as” (See: Metaphor)

With them he will push

Pushing with his horns is a metaphor for strength. AT: “He is so strong that he will push” (See: Metaphor)

ten thousands of Ephraim ... the thousands of Manasseh

This means the tribe of Ephraim will be stronger than the tribe of Manasseh. AT: “the people of Ephraim, who number many times 10,000 ... the people of Manasseh, who number many times 1,000” (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- firstborn
-
- majesty
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Manasseh

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:18-19

UDB:

[18] I say this about the tribes of Zebulun and Issachar:

I desire that the people of Zebulun will prosper in their travels across the seas,

and that the people of Issachar will prosper while they stay at home and take care of their cattle and crops.

[19] They will invite people from the other Israelite tribes to the mountain where they worship Yahweh,

and they will offer correct sacrifices to him.

They will become rich from the trade that they carry out on the seas

and from using the sand along the sea to make things.

ULB:

[18] About Zebulun, Moses said:

Rejoice, Zebulun, in your going out,

and you, Issachar, in your tents.

[19] They will call the peoples to the mountains.

There will they offer sacrifices of righteousness.

For they will suck the abundance of the seas,

and from the sand on the seashore.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless each tribe of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He speaks to the tribes of Zebulun and Issachar as if they were one man, so the word “your” and the command “rejoice” here are singular. (See: Parallelism and Forms of You)

Rejoice, Zebulun, in your going out, and you, Issachar, in your tents

The people of Zebulun were located near the Mediterranean Sea. They traveled by sea and traded with other people. The people of Issachar preferred peaceful living and working the land and raising cattle. You can make clear the understood information. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

There will they offer

"It is there that they will offer"

sacrifices of righteousness

"acceptable sacrifices" or "proper sacrifices"

For they will suck the abundance of the seas, and from the sand on the seashore

Possible meanings are 1) they will trade with people across the sea or 2) they were beginning to use sand in making pottery.

For they will suck the abundance of the seas

The Hebrew word translated "suck" here refers to how a baby nurses at its mother's breast. It means the people will gain wealth from the sea like a baby gets milk from its mother. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Zebulun
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- Issachar
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- call, calls, calling, called
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:20

UDB:

[20] I say this about the tribe of Gad:

Praise Yahweh, the one who made their territory large.

The people of their tribe will attack their enemies fiercely like a lion that crouches,

waiting to tear off the arm or the scalp of some animal.

ULB:

[20] About Gad, Moses said:

Blessed be he who enlarges Gad.

He will live there like a lioness,

and he will tear off an arm or a head.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

Blessed be he who enlarges Gad

This can stated in active form. AT: Possible meanings are 1) “May Yahweh bless Gad and give him much land to live in” or 2) “People should say that Yahweh is good because he has given Gad much land to live in” (See: Active or Passive)

He will live there like a lioness, and he will tear off an arm or a head

This means the people of Gad are strong and secure, and they will defeat their enemies in war. (See: Simile)

translationWords

- Gad
- lions, lion, lioness, lionesses

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:21

UDB:

[21] They chose the best part of the land for themselves;

a large share of the land, a share that should be given to a leader was allotted to them.

When the leaders of the tribes of Israel gathered together,

they decided that the tribe of Gad should have a large share of the land.

The tribe of Gad obeyed the commands of Yahweh and the things that he decided that they should do.

ULB:

[21] He provided the best part for himself,

for there was the leader's portion of land reserved.

He came with the heads of the people.

He carried out the justice of Yahweh

and his decrees with Israel.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He continues to describe the tribe of Gad as one man, which he began to do in Deuteronomy 33:20. (See: Parallelism)

the leader's portion

This means a larger piece of land that a leader normally took.

He came with the heads of the people

"They met with all the leaders of the Israelites"

He carried out the justice of Yahweh and his decrees with Israel

"They obeyed all that Yahweh had commanded the Israelites"

translationWords

- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:22

UDB:

[22] I say this about the tribe of Dan:

The people of the tribe of Dan are like a young lion;

they leap out from their caves in the region of Bashan to attack their enemies.

ULB:

[22] About Dan, Moses said:

Dan is a lion cub

that leaps out from Bashan.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

Dan is a lion cub that leaps out from Bashan

The people of Dan are strong like a lion cub, and they attack their enemies who live in Bashan. You can make clear the understood information. (See: Metaphor and Ellipsis)

translationWords

- Dan
- Bashan

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:23

UDB:

[23] I say this about the tribe of Naphtali:

The people of the tribe of Naphtali have been blessed by Yahweh, who has been very kind to them;

their land extends far south from Lake Galilee.

ULB:

[23] About Naphtali, Moses said:

Naphtali, satisfied with favor,

and full of the blessing of Yahweh,

take possession of the land to the west and south.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. He speaks of the descendants of Naphtali as if they were one man. (See: Parallelism)

satisfied with favor

Yahweh being pleased with Naphtali is spoken of as if "favor" were food that Naphtali ate until he was no longer hungry. AT: "who has all the good things he desires because Yahweh is pleased with him" (See: Metaphor)

full of the blessing of Yahweh

Blessings are spoken of as if they were food that Naphtali ate until he could hold no more. AT: "whom Yahweh has blessed so that he has all he needs"

take possession

Moses speaks as if the tribe of Naphtali is one man, so these words are singular. (See: Forms of You)

the land to the west and south

This refers to the land around Lake Galilee. The full meaning of this statement may be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Naphtali
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- bless, blessed, blessing
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:24-25

UDB:

[24] I say this about the tribe of Asher:

Yahweh will bless the descendants of Asher more than he will bless the other tribes.

Yahweh will favor them most of all.

I desire that their land will be filled with olive trees that will produce a lot of olives to make olive oil.

[25] Their towns will be protected by high walls with gates that have bronze and iron bars;

I desire all the time that they live and not be harmed by anyone.

ULB:

[24] About Asher, Moses said:

Blessed be Asher more than the other sons;

let him be acceptable to his brothers,

and let him dip his foot in olive oil.

[25] May your city bars be iron and bronze;

as long as will be your days, so long will your security be.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses continues to bless the tribes of Israel; the blessings are short poems. (See: Parallelism)

dip his foot in olive oil

Olive oil was used for food and for the skin of the face and arms. Feet were dirty, so to put the foot in olive oil was to ruin valuable oil. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “have so much olive oil that he can afford to waste it” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

your city bars ... your days ... your security

Moses speaks to the tribe of Asher as if they are one man, so all instances of “your” are singular. (See: Forms of You)

May your city bars be iron and bronze

Cities had large bars across their gates to keep enemies out. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “May you be safe from attacks by your enemies” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Asher
- olive, olives
- oil
- bronze

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:26

UDB:

[26] You people of Israel, there is no god like your God,

who rides majestically across the sky to help you.

ULB:

[26] There is no one like God, Jeshurun—the upright one,

who rides through the heavens to your help,

and in his majesty on the clouds.

translationNotes

Jeshurun

This is another name for the people of Israel. It means "upright one." See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:15. (See: How to Translate Names)

rides through the heavens ... on the clouds

This is an image of Yahweh riding on clouds through the sky like a king on his chariot riding through a battlefield. AT: "rides through the heavens like a king rides through a battlefield ... on the clouds like a king on his chariot" (See: Metaphor)

to your help

"to help you." Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word "you" here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- majesty

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:27

UDB:

[27] God, who lives forever, is the one who gives you refuge;

it is as though he puts his everlasting arms under you to support you.

He will drive out your enemies while you advance;

he has told you to destroy all of them.

ULB:

[27] The eternal God is a refuge,

and underneath are the everlasting arms.

He thrust out the enemy from before you,

and he said, “Destroy!”

translationNotes

The eternal God is a refuge

The abstract noun “refuge,” which means a shelter or a place safe from danger, can be stated as a verb. AT: “The eternal God will protect his people” (See: Abstract Nouns)

underneath are the everlasting arms

The words “everlasting arms” are a metaphor for Yahweh’s promise to protect his people forever. AT: “he will support and take care of his people forever” (See: Metaphor)

He thrust out … he said

Moses speaks of the future as if it were the past to emphasize that what he is saying will come true. AT “He will thrust out … he will say” (See: Predictive Past)

before you … Destroy

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the word “you” and the command “destroy” here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

he said, “Destroy!”

If this direct quotation would not work well in your language, you may change it to an indirect quotation. AT: “he will tell you to destroy them!” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

translationWords

- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:28

UDB:

[28] So you Israelite people will live safely;

you descendants of Jacob will not be disturbed by others;

in the land where you will live, there will be plenty of grain and wine,

and plenty of rain will fall from the sky.

ULB:

[28] Israel dwelt in safety.

Jacob's spring was secure

in a land of grain and new wine;

indeed, let his heavens drop dew on him.

translationNotes

Israel dwelt ... Jacob's spring was secure

Possible meanings are 1) Moses speaks of the future as if it were the past to emphasize that what he is saying will come true, "Israel will dwell ... Jacob's spring will be secure" or 2) Moses is blessing Israel, "May Israel dwell ... and may Jacob's spring be secure." (See: Predictive Past)

Jacob's spring

Possible meanings are 1) Jacob's home or 2) Jacob's descendants. (See: Metonymy)

let his heavens drop dew

The dew is spoken of as being so much that it is as if it were raining. Possible meanings are 1) Moses is blessing Israel, "may much dew cover the land like rain" or 2) Moses is telling what will happen in the future, "much dew will cover the land like rain." (See: Metaphor)

dew

water that forms on leaves and grass on cool mornings. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:2.

translationWords

- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 33:29

UDB:

[29] You people of Israel, how fortunate are you.

There is certainly no nation like your nation,

whom Yahweh has rescued from being slaves in Egypt.

He will be like a shield to protect you

and like a sword to enable you to defeat your enemies.

Your enemies will come to you begging for you to act mercifully toward them,

but you will trample on their backs."

ULB:

[29] Your blessings are many, Israel!

Who is like you, a people saved by Yahweh,

the shield of your help,

and the sword of your majesty?

Your enemies will come trembling to you;

you will trample down their high places.

translationNotes

General Information:

Moses speaks to the Israelites as if they were one man, so the words "you" and "your" here are singular. (See: Forms of You)

Who is like you, a people saved by Yahweh ... majesty?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. AT: "There is no other people group like you, a people whom Yahweh has saved ... majesty." (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

the shield ... the sword

This merism speaks of Yahweh defending the Israelites from their enemies and enabling them to attack their enemies. (See: Merism)

the shield of your help

The word “shield” is a metaphor for Yahweh protecting and defending the Israelites. The abstract noun “help” can be translated as a verb. AT: “the one who protects you and helps you” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

the sword of your majesty

The word “sword” is a metaphor for the power to kill with the sword in order to win battles. AT: “the one who enables you to win battles and so have majesty” (See: Metaphor)

you will trample down their high places

Possible meanings are 1) the Israelites will destroy the places where the other people worship false gods or 2) the Israelites will walk on the backs of their enemies when the Israelites defeat them.

translationWords

- bless, blessed, blessing
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- shield, shields, shielded
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- majesty
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- high place, high places

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 34 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter may have been written by Joshua, since it recorded Moses' death. This chapter officially ends the revelation of the law of Moses, and life in the Promised Land is about to begin again. (See: reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation, law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh and Promised Land)

Links:

- **Deuteronomy 34:01 Notes**

Deuteronomy 34:1-3

UDB:

[1] Then Moses climbed up from the plains in the region of Moab to Mount Nebo, to the highest point on Mount Pisgah, which is across the Jordan River from Jericho. There Yahweh showed him all the land that the Israelites would occupy. He showed him the region of Gilead as far north as the city of Dan; [2] all the land that the tribe of Naphtali would occupy; all the land that the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh had occupied; all the land that the tribe of Judah would occupy as far west as the Mediterranean Sea; [3] the desert area in the south part of Judah; and the Valley of the Jordan that extends from Jericho in the north to the city of Zoar in the south.

ULB:

[1] Moses went up from the plains of Moab to Mount Nebo, to the top of Pisgah, which is opposite Jericho. There Yahweh showed him all the land of Gilead as far as Dan, [2] and all Naphtali, and the land of Ephraim and Manasseh, and all the land of Judah, to the western sea, [3] and the Negev, and the plain of the Valley of Jericho, the City of Palms, as far as Zoar.

translationNotes

Mount Nebo

This is the highest point of Mount Pisgah which is in the northern part of the Abarim mountain range. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 32:49.

Pisgah

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 3:17.

the City of Palms

This is another name for Jericho. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Moses
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jericho
- Yahweh
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Dan
- Naphtali

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Manasseh
- Judah
- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea
- Negev
- Zoar

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 34 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 34:4-6

UDB:

[4] Then Yahweh said to him, "You have now seen this land that I solemnly promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, saying 'I will give it to your descendants.' I have allowed you to see it from a distance, but you will not go there."

[5] So Moses, who always served Yahweh faithfully, died there in the land of in Moab, which is what Yahweh said would happen. [6] Yahweh buried Moses' body in the valley in the land of Moab, across from the town of Beth Peor, but to this day no one knows where he is buried.

ULB:

[4] Yahweh said to him, "This is the land that I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, 'I will give it to your descendants.' I have allowed you to look at it with your eyes, but you will not go over there." [5] So Moses the servant of Yahweh, died there in the land of Moab, as the word of Yahweh promised. [6] Yahweh buried him in the valley in the land of Moab opposite Beth Peor, but no one knows where his grave is to this day.

translationNotes

Beth Peor

This was a town in Moab. See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 3:29.

look at it with your eyes

"see it for yourself"

to this day

This refers to the time that this was written or edited, not to the present time in the twenty-first century.

translationWords

- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

- word, words
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 34 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 34:7-8

UDB:

[7] Moses was 120 years old when he died, but he was still very strong, and he could still see very well. [8] The Israelite people mourned for him in the plains of Moab for thirty days.

ULB:

[7] Moses was one hundred twenty years old when he died; his eye was not dim, nor his natural force abated. [8] The people of Israel mourned for Moses in the plains of Moab for thirty days, and then the days of mourning for Moses were finished.

translationNotes

one hundred twenty years old ... thirty days

"120 years old ... 30 days" (See: Numbers)

his eye was not dim, nor his natural force abated

This means his eyes and body were still strong and healthy.

translationWords

- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 34 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 34:9

UDB:

[9] God caused Joshua to be very wise, because Moses had put his hands on Joshua to appoint him to be their new leader. The Israelite people obeyed Joshua, and they obeyed all the commands that Yahweh had given to Moses to tell to the Israelite people.

ULB:

[9] Joshua son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom, for Moses had laid his hands on him. The people of Israel listened to him and did what Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes

son of Nun

See how you translated this in Deuteronomy 1:38.

Joshua ... was full of the spirit of wisdom

The writer speaks as if Joshua were a container and the spirit were a physical object that could be put into a container. AT: "Yahweh enabled Joshua ... to be very wise" (See: Metaphor)

Moses had laid his hands on him

The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "Moses had laid his hands on him to set Joshua apart so Joshua would serve Yahweh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Joshua
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- wise, wisdom
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 34 translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 34:10-12

UDB:

10 Since the time that Moses lived, there has never been a prophet in Israel like him, for Yahweh spoke with him face to face. 11 No other prophet has performed all the kinds of powerful miracles that Yahweh caused him to do against Pharaoh, king of Egypt, against all his servants, and against the people of Egypt. 12 No other prophet has been able to perform all the great and terrifying deeds that Moses performed while all the Israelites watched.

ULB:

10 There has not arisen a prophet since in Israel like Moses, whom Yahweh knew face to face. 11 There has never been any prophet like him in all the signs and wonders that Yahweh sent him to do in the land of Egypt, to Pharaoh, and to all his servants, and to all his land. 12 There has never been any prophet like him in all the great, fearsome deeds that Moses did in the sight of all Israel.

translationNotes

Yahweh knew face to face

This is an idiom. It means Yahweh and Moses had a very close relationship. (See: Idiom)

in all the great

“who did all the great”

translationWords

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- fear, fears, afraid
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy

- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 34 translationQuestions

translationQuestions

Deuteronomy 1

Where was Moses when he spoke to Israel?

Moses was beyond the Jordan in the wilderness, in the plain of the Jordan river valley. [1:1]

When did Moses speak to the people of Israel, telling them all that Yahweh commanded him?

It was the fortieth year, the first day of the eleventh month, on the first day of the month. [1:3]

To whom had Yahweh sworn to give the land?

Yahweh had sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob to give the land to them and to their descendants after them. [1:8]

Why did Moses feel he could not carry the people alone?

God had multiplied them, made them as the stars of heaven. [1:9]

Why did Moses feel he could not carry the people alone?

God had multiplied them, made them as the stars of heaven. [1:10]

Who would help Moses carry the loads, burdens, and disputes of the people?

They would take wise understanding men of good repute, tribe by tribe, and make these men heads over them. [1:12]

Who would help Moses carry the loads, burdens, and disputes of the people?

They would take wise understanding men of good repute, tribe by tribe, and make these men heads over them. [1:13]

What did Moses command the judges to do?

He commanded them to hear the disputes between brothers, and the foreigner who is with him. [1:16]

What did Israel travel through as they journeyed from Horeb to the hill country?

They traveled through all the great and terrible wilderness. [1:19]

Why did the people ask Moses to send men ahead of them?

They asked Moses to send men ahead to search out the land and bring back word about how they should attack and about the cities. [1:22]

Who did Moses choose to scout out the land in the hill country?

He chose twelve men, one man for every tribe. [1:23]

What did the men report back about the land?

They said, “It is a good land that Yahweh our God is giving to us.” [1:25]

Why did the men say Yahweh brought them out of the land of Egypt?

They said Yahweh hated them and he brought them out of the land of Egypt to destroy them. [1:27]

What did their brothers say about the people of the land?

They said that the people of the land were bigger and taller than the Israelites. [1:28]

What did Moses say was there reason the people did not need to be afraid?

He told them not to be afraid, because Yahweh would go before them and would fight for them like he did in Egypt and in the wilderness. [1:29]

What did Moses say was there reason the people did not need to be afraid?

He told them not to be afraid, because Yahweh would go before them and would fight for them like he did in Egypt and in the wilderness. [1:30]

What did Moses say was there reason the people did not need to be afraid?

He told them not to be afraid, because Yahweh would go before them and would fight for them like he did in Egypt and in the wilderness. [1:31]

What did Yahweh say because he was angry?

He swore and said, “Surely not one of these men of this evil generation will see the good land except Caleb.” [1:34]

What did Yahweh say because he was angry?

He swore and said, “Surely not one of these men of this evil generation will see the good land except Caleb.” [1:35]

What did Yahweh tell Moses to do for Joshua the son of Nun?

Yahweh told Moses to encourage Joshua for he will lead Israel to inherit the land. [1:38]

Who did Yahweh say will go into the land and possess it?

He said their little children will go in and will possess it. [1:39]

What did the people do when Yahweh told them not to attack the hill country?

They were arrogant and attacked the hill country, and the Amorites came against the men, and chased them like bees. [1:43]

What did the people do when Yahweh told them not to attack the hill country?

They were arrogant and attacked the hill country, and the Amorites came against the men, and chased them like bees. [1:44]

Deuteronomy 2

Where did Moses say they took their journey?

They took their journey into the wilderness, by way to the Red Sea. [2:1]

What did Yehweh command the people to be careful not to do?

They were to to be careful not to fight the descendants of Esau, for Yahweh would not give them any of their land. [2:4]

What did Yehweh command the people to be careful not to do?

They were to to be careful not to fight the descendants of Esau, for Yahweh would not give them any of their land. [2:5]

How were they to get food and water?

They were to buy food and water from the people of Seir so they could eat and drink. [2:6]

What did Yahweh tell them they were not to do in Moab?

They were not to trouble Moab or fight with them because Yahweh was not giving them that land. [2:9]

How long did it take Israel to go from Kadesh Barnes to the brook Zered?

It took them 38 years to go to the brook Zered. [2:14]

What happened to all the men who were fit for fighting?

All the men who were fit for fighting were dead and gone from among the people. [2:16]

To whom had Yahweh given the land of the people of Ammon?

Yahweh had given that land to the descendants of Lot. [2:19]

What will the people of the land do when they hear news about the Israelites?

They will tremble and be in anguish because of the Israelites. [2:25]

What words of peace did Moses send to the King of Hashbon?

Moses asked that he be allowed to pass through the land on the highway, not turning to the right or left. [2:26]

What words of peace did Moses send to the King of Hashbon?

Moses asked that he be allowed to pass through the land on the highway, not turning to the right or left. [2:27]

What did Moses plan to get food and water for the people?

He asked the king of Hashbon to sell him food and water for money so they could eat and drink. [2:28]

What did Moses plan to get food and water for the people?

He asked the king of Hashbon to sell him food and water for money so they could eat and drink. [2:29]

What happened when Sihon came out against Moses?

Yahweh gave him over to Moses and they defeated him, killing him, his sons and all his people. [2:32]

What happened when Sihon came out against Moses?

Yahweh gave him over to Moses and they defeated him, killing him, his sons and all his people. [2:33]

What happened to all the inhabited cities?

Moses took all the king's cities and destroyed them, including women and children; none were left remaining. [2:34]

Deuteronomy 3

What did Og, the king of Bashan do to Israel as they approached his land?

On the way to Bashan, the king of Bashan and all his people came and attacked Israel. [3:1]

What did Israel do to the king of Bashan and his people?

They struck the king of Bashan dead until not one of his people remained, and took all his cities. [3:3]

What did Israel do to the king of Bashan and his people?

They struck the king of Bashan dead until not one of his people remained, and took all his cities. [3:4]

What did Israel do with the cattle and the spoils of the cities?

They took for themselves all the cattle and the spoil of the cities. [3:7]

To whom did Moses give the land that they had taken possession?

He gave it to the Reubenites and the Gadites and the half tribe of Manasseh. [3:12]

To whom did Moses give the land that they had taken possession?

He gave it to the Reubenites and the Gadites and the half tribe of Manasseh. [3:13]

What did Moses command the men of war of the the Reubenites and the Gadites and the half tribe of Manasseh to do?

He commanded them to pass over armed before their brothers, the people of Israel. [3:18]

When did Yahweh say the the Reubenites and the Gadites and the half tribe of Manasseh could return to their own property?

Yahweh said they could return after Yahweh gave rest to their brothers, until they also possess their land. [3:20]

What did Moses tell Joshua not to do?

He told Joshua not to fear the enemy because Yahweh would be the one who would fight for him. [3:22]

Where did Moses beg to go and see?

He begged Yahweh to let him go and see the good land beyond Jordan and also Lebanon. [3:25]

How did Yahweh answer Moses' request to go and see the land?

Yahweh was angry with him because of the people and and did not listen to Moses. [3:26]

What did Yahweh do to allow Mosses to see the land?

Yahweh told him to go up to the top of Pisgah and lift his eyes all around him for he would not go over the Jordan. [3:27]

What did Yahweh tell Moses to do for Joshua?

He told Moses to instruct Joshua, encourage and strengthen him, bacause he would go over before the people and will cause them to inherit the land that you see. [3:28]

What did Yahweh tell Moses to do for Joshua?

He told Moses to instruct Joshua, encourage and strengthen him, bacause he would go over before the people and will cause them to inherit the land that you see. [3:29]

Deuteronomy 4

What must the people of Israel do so that they may live, and go in and possess the land that Yahweh is giving them?

They must listen and obey the laws that Moses is going to teach them so that they may possess the land. [4:1]

What must the people not do?

They must not add to nor diminish the words that Moses commanded them so they may keep the commandments of Yahweh. [4:2]

What men did Yahweh destroy?

Yahweh destroyed the men that followed Baal Peor. [4:4]

Why should Israel keep the laws that Moses commanded them?

They should keep and do them so that they will have wisdom and understanding in the sight of the peoples. [4:6]

Why should the people pay attention and guard their soul?

They should pay attention and guard their soul so they do not forget what they have seen, but keep those things in their hearts and make them known to their children and their children's children. [4:9]

Why should the people pay attention and guard their soul?

They should pay attention and guard their soul so they do not forget what they have seen, but keep those things in their hearts and make them known to their children and their children's children. [4:10]

What did the people hear out of the middle of the fire on the mountain?

They heard Yahweh's voice out of the middle of the fire, but saw no form. [4:11]

What did the people hear out of the middle of the fire on the mountain?

They heard Yahweh's voice out of the middle of the fire, but saw no form. [4:12]

What was the covenant that Yahweh commanded them to perform and on what was it written?

Yahweh commanded Moses to teach them the Ten Commandments that were written on two tablets of stone. [4:13]

What were the people told not to do?

They were told to not corrupt themselves by making carved figures of any form, including men, women, birds, things that creep, and fish. [4:15]

What were the people told not to do?

They were told to not corrupt themselves by making carved figures of any form, including men, women, birds, things that creep, and fish. [4:16]

What were the people told not to do?

They were told to not corrupt themselves by making carved figures of any form, including men, women, birds, things that creep, and fish. [4:17]

What were the people told not to do?

They were told to not corrupt themselves by making carved figures of any form, including men, women, birds, things that creep, and fish. [4:18]

Why did Moses tell the people to be careful about the sun, moon and stars?

He told them that they should be careful to not be drawn away to worship the heavens, sun, moon, or stars. [4:19]

Why did Yahweh bring the people out of the iron furnace, Egypt?

He brought them out of Egypt to be a people of his own inheritance. [4:20]

What did Yahweh do to Moses because he was angry with Moses?

He would not let Moses go into the good land over Jordan, but Moses must die outside the land. [4:21]

What did Yahweh do to Moses because he was angry with Moses?

He would not let Moses go into the good land over Jordan, but Moses must die outside the land. [4:22]

Why did Yahweh forbidden Israel to make any carved image?

Yahweh their God is a devouring fire, a jealous God. [4:24]

What does Moses say will happen if the people corrupt themselves and do evil in Yahweh's sight?

They will perish from the land over the Jordan, and be completely destroyed. [4:26]

What does Moses say Yahweh will do to the people?

Yahweh will scatter the people and they will be few in number among the nations where they will serve gods made of wood and stone. [4:27]

What does Moses say Yahweh will do to the people?

Yahweh will scatter the people and they will be few in number among the nations where they will serve gods made of wood and stone. [4:28]

When will the people find Yahweh?

They will find him when they search after him with all their heart and all their soul. [4:29]

What will make the people return to Yahweh their God and listen to his voice?

When they are in distress, and when all the things have come on them they will return to Yahweh. [4:30]

What did God do for the people when they were in Egypt?

God took him a nation from the midst of another nation, by trials, signs, wonders, war, a mighty hand, a display of great power, and great terrors. [4:34]

What did Yahweh make happen to the people so they would know he is God?

He made them hear his voice out of the heavens, and on earth he made them see his great fire. [4:35]

What did Yahweh make happen to the people so they would know he is God?

He made them hear his voice out of the heavens, and on earth he made them see his great fire. [4:36]

What did Yahweh do for Israel because he loved their fathers?

He chose their descendants, brought them out of Egypt with his presence and power. He gave them their land after driving out the greater nations. [4:37]

What did Yahweh do for Israel because he loved their fathers?

He chose their descendants, brought them out of Egypt with his presence and power. He gave them their land after driving out the greater nations. [4:38]

Where could a person flee if he killed another person accidently?

He could flee to one of the three cities that Moses had selected on the east side of the Jordan river. [4:41]

Where could a person flee if he killed another person accidently?

He could flee to one of the three cities that Moses had selected on the east side of the Jordan river. [4:42]

What did Moses place before the people of Israel?

He placed the law; covenant decrees, laws, and other decrees that he spoke to them when they came out of Egypt. [4:44]

What did Moses place before the people of Israel?

He placed the law; covenant decrees, laws, and other decrees that he spoke to them when they came out of Egypt. [4:45]

How far did the land of the two kings of the Amorites extend?

This territory went from Aroer, on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, to Mount Sion (or Mount Hermon), and included all of the plain of the Jordan River valley, eastward beyond the Jordan, to the Sea of the Arabah, to the slopes of Mount Pisgah.” [4:48]

How far did the land of the two kings of the Amorites extend?

This territory went from Aroer, on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, to Mount Sion (or Mount Hermon), and included all of the plain of the Jordan River valley, eastward beyond the Jordan, to the Sea of the Arabah, to the slopes of Mount Pisgah.” [4:49]

Deuteronomy 5

With whom did Yahweh make a covenant at Horeb?

Yahweh made a covenant with Israel at Horeb, not with their ancestors, but with the ones alive. [5:2]

With whom did Yahweh make a covenant at Horeb?

Yahweh made a covenant with Israel at Horeb, not with their ancestors, but with the ones alive. [5:3]

Why did Moses stand between Yahweh and the people when Yahweh revealed his word to them?

Because they were afraid of the fire from which God was speaking. [5:4]

Why did Moses stand between Yahweh and the people when Yahweh revealed his word to them?

Because they were afraid of the fire from which God was speaking. [5:5]

Who does Yahweh tell Israel he is?

He said, “I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.” [5:6]

What does God tell Israel not make, bow down to, or serve?

They should not make carved figures or any likeness that is in heaven, earth or in the water. [5:8]

How will Yahweh punish the ancestors’ wickedness they bow down to or serve idols?

Yahweh will punish the ancestors’ wickedness by bringing punishment on their children’s children. [5:9]

What will Yahweh do for those who love him and keep his commandments?

He will show covenant faithfulness to them. [5:10]

Who will Yahweh not hold guiltless?

He will not hold guiltless those who take his name in vain. [5:11]

What does Yahweh say about the seventh day?

The seventh day is a Sabbath to Yahweh their God, so they must keep it holy and not do any work. [5:12]

What does Yahweh say about the seventh day?

The seventh day is a Sabbath to Yahweh their God, so they must keep it holy and not do any work. [5:13]

What does Yahweh say about the seventh day?

The seventh day is a Sabbath to Yahweh their God, so they must keep it holy and not do any work. [5:14]

Why does Yahweh command them to keep the Sabbath day?

He wants them to remember that they were a servant in the land of Egypt and that God brought them out by his mighty hand his display of power. [5:15]

What did Yahweh say would happen to the people if they honor their father and mother?

They will live a long time in the land that God gave them and it may go well with them. [5:16]

What were they commanded not to do?

They should not murder, commit adultery, steal, or give false witness against their neighbor. [5:17]

What were they commanded not to do?

They should not murder, commit adultery, steal, or give false witness against their neighbor. [5:18]

What were they commanded not to do?

They should not murder, commit adultery, steal, or give false witness against their neighbor. [5:19]

What were they commanded not to do?

They should not murder, commit adultery, steal, or give false witness against their neighbor. [5:20]

On what did Yahweh write down his words?

He wrote them down on two tablets of stone and gave them to Moses. [5:22]

What did the people say would happen to them if they heard the voice of Yahweh any longer?

The people would be consumed by the great fire and would die. [5:25]

What did the people say they would do when Moses repeated to them the words of Yahweh?

They said they will listen and obey Yahweh's word. [5:27]

How did Yahweh say about the response of the people?

He said he heard the words of the people and they were good. [5:28]

What did Moses say would happen to the people if they kept all Yahweh's statutes and commandments that Moses was commanding them?

If they keep the commandments, they will live, and it will go well with them, so they may prolong their days in the land. [5:33]

Deuteronomy 6

What will happen if the Israelites and their children keep all Yahweh's statutes and commandments all the days of your lives?

If they keep his statutes and commandments, their days will be prolonged. [6:2]

How did Moses describe the land into which the people were going?

He said that it was a land flowing with milk and honey. [6:3]

With what should Israel love Yahweh?

They should love Yahweh with all their heart, all their soul, and all their might. [6:5]

When should the people diligently teach the commandments that are in their hearts to their children?

They should teach the commandments to their children when they sit in the house, walk on the road, lie down, and when they get up. [6:6]

When should the people diligently teach the commandments that are in their hearts to their children?

They should teach the commandments to their children when they sit in the house, walk on the road, lie down, and when they get up. [6:7]

When should Isreal not forget Yahweh?

They should not forget Yahweh when they eat and are satisfied in the land that Yahweh swore to their fathers. [6:10]

When should Isreal not forget Yahweh?

They should not forget Yahweh when they eat and are satisfied in the land that Yahweh swore to their fathers. [6:11]

When should Isreal not forget Yahweh?

They should not forget Yahweh when they eat and are satisfied in the land that Yahweh swore to their fathers. [6:12]

What will happen to Israel if they serve other gods and cause Yahweh, a jealous God, to be angry?

If Yahweh's anger is kindled against them, he will destroy them from the surface of the earth. [6:15]

What did they do at Massah that they should not repeat?

They tested Yahweh at Massah. [6:16]

How should the people respond when their son asks about the covenant decrees, the statutes, and the other decrees that Yahweh commanded?"

They should tell their sons that they were Pharaoh's slaves when Yahweh brought them out of Egypt and gave them the land that he swore to their fathers. [6:20]

How should the people respond when their son asks about the covenant decrees, the statutes, and the other decrees that Yahweh commanded?"

They should tell their sons that they were Pharaoh's slaves when Yahweh brought them out of Egypt and gave them the land that he swore to their fathers. [6:21]

How should the people respond when their son asks about the covenant decrees, the statutes, and the other decrees that Yahweh commanded?"

They should tell their sons that they were Pharaoh's slaves when Yahweh brought them out of Egypt and gave them the land that he swore to their fathers. [6:22]

How should the people respond when their son asks about the covenant decrees, the statutes, and the other decrees that Yahweh commanded?"

They should tell their sons that they were Pharaoh's slaves when Yahweh brought them out of Egypt and gave them the land that he swore to their fathers. [6:23]

Why should the people fear Yahweh?

They should fear him for their good, so that he might keep them alive. [6:24]

Deuteronomy 7

What must the people do to the people of the land that Yahweh is giving them to possess?

They must attack and utterly destroy them. [7:2]

What must the Israelites not do with the people of those nations?

They are not to make covenant wiith them, show them mercy, or arrange any marriages with them for their sons or daughters. [7:2]

What must the Israelites not do with the people of those nations?

They are not to make covenant wiith them, show them mercy, or arrange any marriages with them for their sons or daughters. [7:3]

How should Isreal deal with the people of these nations?

They should break down their altars, dash their sacred stone pillars, cut down their Asherah poles, and burn their cast idols. [7:5]

How did Yahweh keep his oath to the chosen people?

Yahweh kept his oath and redeemed them out of the house of bondage, from Pharaoh's hand. [7:8]

What will happen to those who love Yahweh and keep his commandments?

To those that love him, God will keep his covenants and be faithful for a thousand generations. [7:9]

In what ways will the people be blessed by Yahweh if they keep his decrees?

God will bless them by multiplying them, and the fruit of their ground, grain, wine, oil, and multiply their animals. [7:12]

In what ways will the people be blessed by Yahweh if they keep his decrees?

God will bless them by multiplying them, and the fruit of their ground, grain, wine, oil, and multiply their animals. [7:13]

What will God do to the nations whom Israel fears?

God will bring on them the same great sufferings and other displays of his power that they saw in Egypt. [7:17]

What will God do to the nations whom Israel fears?

God will bring on them the same great sufferings and other displays of his power that they saw in Egypt. [7:18]

What will God do to the nations whom Israel fears?

God will bring on them the same great sufferings and other displays of his power that they saw in Egypt. [7:19]

How long did God send the hornet among them?

God sent the hornet until those who were left and hiding from Israel perished. [7:20]

Why should the people not be frightened among the people?

God, who is great and fearsome, is among the Israelites. [7:21]

Why should the people not be frightened among the people?

God, who is great and fearsome, is among the Israelites. [7:22]

How will God give the people victory over the nations?

God will greatly confuse the nations in battle until they are destroyed. [7:23]

What are they to do to the gods of the nations?

They are to burn the carved figures of the gods. [7:25]

What are they to do to the gods of the nations?

They are to burn the carved figures of the gods. [7:26]

Deuteronomy 8

What should the people of Israel call to mind?

They should call to mind how God humbled and tested them for forty years in the wilderness. [8:2]

Why did Yahweh humble, make hungry, and feed the people with manna?

He did these things to make the people know that they could not live by bread alone but rather by everything that proceeds out of the mouth of Yahweh. [8:3]

How did the people survive the forty years in the wilderness?

Their clothing did not grow old on them and their feet did not swell. [8:4]

How did Yahweh correct the Israelites?

As a man corrects his son, so Yahweh corrected them. [8:5]

What is in the good land into which God is bringing them?

The land will be filled with brooks of water, fountains and springs, wheat and barley, vines, fig trees, pomegrantes, olive trees, and honey. [8:7]

What is in the good land into which God is bringing them?

The land will be filled with brooks of water, fountains and springs, wheat and barley, vines, fig trees, pomegrantes, olive trees, and honey. [8:8]

Why will the people bless Yahweh?

They will bless him because of the good land that he has given them. [8:10]

What were the people reminded not to do?

They were reminded not to forget Yahweh and neglect his commandments. [8:11]

Why might the people forget Yahweh who brought them out of Egypt?

When their herds and flocks multiply, and their silver and gold increases, their hear may be lifted up and they might forget Yahweh. [8:13]

Why might the people forget Yahweh who brought them out of Egypt?

When their herds and flocks multiply, and their silver and gold increases, their hear may be lifted up and they might forget Yahweh. [8:14]

How did Yahweh provide water and food in the terrible wilderness for the people of Israel?

Yahweh brought water out of the rock of flint for them and provided manna for them. [8:15]

How did Yahweh provide water and food in the terrible wilderness for the people of Israel?

Yahweh brought water out of the rock of flint for them and provided manna for them. [8:16]

What would cause the people to perish like the nations before them?

They would perish if they forgot where their wealth came from, walk after other gods, and not listen to the voice of Yahweh. [8:19]

What would cause the people to perish like the nations before them?

They would perish if they forgot where their wealth came from, walk after other gods, and not listen to the voice of Yahweh. [8:20]

Deuteronomy 9

Where are the people of Israel preparing to go?

Israel is about to cross over the Jordan. [9:1]

What will happen before Israel crosses Jordan?

Yahweh will go before them and will destroy the nations like a devouring fire. [9:3]

What did Moses tell the people not to think in think in their heart after Yahweh thrust their enemies out of the land?

He told Israel not to think it was because of Israel's righteousness that Yahweh gave them possession of the land. [9:4]

What is the reason God driving the nations out before Israel crosses the Jordan?

He is driving them out because of their wickedness, and to keep his word that he swore to Israel's ancestors, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. [9:5]

Why was Yahweh angry with the people of Israel?

He was angry enough to destroy them because they provoked him and were rebellious against him. [9:7]

Why was Yahweh angry with the people of Israel?

He was angry enough to destroy them because they provoked him and were rebellious against him. [9:8]

What did Moses eat and drink on the mountain?

He did not eat or drink for forty days and forty nights on the mountain. [9:9]

Why did Yahweh tell Moses to quickly go down from the mountain?

Yahweh told him the people had corrupted themselves by turning away from the path that Yahweh commanded and made themselves an idol. [9:12]

Why did Yahweh say he would blot out Israel and make a mightier nation than they were?

Yahweh said he had seen that they were a stubborn people. [9:13]

Why did Yahweh say he would blot out Israel and make a mightier nation than they were?

Yahweh said he had seen that they were a stubborn people. [9:14]

What had Israel made in their sin?

They had sinned against Yahweh by molding a calf as an idol. [9:15]

What had Israel made in their sin?

They had sinned against Yahweh by molding a calf as an idol. [9:16]

What did Moses do after he saw that the people had done evil in the sight of Yahweh?

He threw the tablets and broke them before their eyes, he laid face down before Yahweh for forty days and nights, and did not eat or drink. [9:17]

What did Moses do after he saw that the people had done evil in the sight of Yahweh?

He threw the tablets and broke them before their eyes, he laid face down before Yahweh for forty days and nights, and did not eat or drink. [9:18]

Why did Moses pray for the people and Aaron?

He prayed because Yahweh was angry and displeased with the people and Aaron, enough to destroy them. [9:19]

Why did Moses pray for the people and Aaron?

He prayed because Yahweh was angry and displeased with the people and Aaron, enough to destroy them. [9:20]

What did Moses do to the calf that the people had made?

Moses burned it, beat it, and ground it very small and threw its dust into the stream that came down from the mountain. [9:21]

How did the people provoke Yahweh to wrath?

They rebelled against the commandment of Yahweh and they did not believe or listen to his voice. [9:22]

How did the people provoke Yahweh to wrath?

They rebelled against the commandment of Yahweh and they did not believe or listen to his voice. [9:23]

How did the people provoke Yahweh to wrath?

They rebelled against the commandment of Yahweh and they did not believe or listen to his voice. [9:24]

What was Moses' prayer as he laid face down for forty days and nights?

He prayed that Yahweh's people and inheritance would not be destroyed. [9:25]

What was Moses' prayer as he laid face down for forty days and nights?

He prayed that Yahweh's people and inheritance would not be destroyed. [9:26]

What did Moses ask Yahweh not to let the people of the land say?

He asks Yahweh not to let the people say that Yahweh brought Israel into the wilderness to kill them because he hated them. [9:27]

What did Moses ask Yahweh not to let the people of the land say?

He asks Yahweh not to let the people say that Yahweh brought Israel into the wilderness to kill them because he hated them. [9:28]

Deuteronomy 10

Where did Yahweh tell Moses to place two tablets of stone on which he would write Yahweh's words?

Yahweh told him he to place the two tablets of stone into the chest of wood that Moses would make. [10:2]

What did Yahweh write on the tablets of stone when Moses went up the mountain with them?

Yahweh wrote the Ten Commandments on the tablets like the first writing. [10:4]

Where did Moses put the two tablets when he returned from the mountain?

He put them into the chest that he had made as Yahweh commanded him. [10:5]

What happened to Aaron in Moserah?

Aaron died and was buried in Moserah. [10:6]

What tribe had Yahweh chosen to bear the ark of the testimony and to stand before Yahweh?

Yahweh chose the Tribe of Levi to bear the ark and to stand before him to serve him and to bless people in his name. [10:8]

How long did Moses stay on the mountain this time?

He stayed on the mountain forty days and forty nights, as at the first time. [10:10]

What does Moses say that Yahweh requires of Israel?

Yahweh requires Israel to fear him, walk in all his ways, love him, worship him with all their heart and soul, and to keep his commandments. [10:12]

What does Moses say that Yahweh requires of Israel?

Yahweh requires Israel to fear him, walk in all his ways, love him, worship him with all their heart and soul, and to keep his commandments. [10:13]

Why did Moses tell the people to circumcise?

He told them to circumcise the foreskin of their hearts. [10:16]

Why should Israel love the foreigner?

Israel should love the foreigner because they were foreigners in the land of Egypt. [10:19]

How has God blessed the fathers that went down into Egypt?

They went down into Egypt as seventy people and God multipled them to be as many as the stars of the heavens. [10:22]

Deuteronomy 11

What four things of Yahweh does Moses tell the people to always keep?

He tells them to always keep Yahweh's instructions, his statutes, his decrees, and his commandments. [11:1]

Who did not know or see the punishment of Yahweh and the display of his power in Egypt?

The children of the Israelites did not know or did not see Yahweh's punishment or power in Egypt. [11:2]

What did Yahweh use to overwhelm the army of Egypt when they pursued after Israel?

Yahweh made the water of the Red Sea overwhelm the army as they pursued after Israel. [11:4]

What have the eyes of the Israelites seen?

The eyes of the Israelites have seen all the great works that Yahweh did. [11:7]

What will happen to the people if they keep all the commandments?

If they keep all the commandments, they will be strong, go in and possess the land, and their days will be prolonged. [11:8]

What will happen to the people if they keep all the commandments?

If they keep all the commandments, they will be strong, go in and possess the land, and their days will be prolonged. [11:9]

How and why is the promised land different from the land of Egypt?

The land is a land of hills and valleys, and drinks water of the rain of the heavens. [11:11]

What would Yahweh give them if they listen to his commandments, love and serve him with their heart and soul?

Yahweh will give them the former and latter rain, that they may gather their grain, new wine, and oil. [11:14]

What will Yahweh do if the people turn aside and worship other gods?

He will become angry and shut up the heavens so there will not be any rains. [11:17]

When should the people of Israel teach their children the commandments of Yahweh?

They should teach their children the commandments when they sit, and walk, and lie down, and get up. [11:19]

What should the people do so that their days and the days of their children may be multiplied?

They will write the commandments on the doorposts of their house and on their city gates. [11:21]

If the people keep all the commandments of Yahweh and cling to him, what will he do for them?

Yahweh will drive out all the nations before them and they will dispossess larger and mightier nations than themselves. [11:22]

If the people keep all the commandments of Yahweh and cling to him, what will he do for them?

Yahweh will drive out all the nations before them and they will dispossess larger and mightier nations than themselves. [11:23]

Why would no man be able to stand before Israel?

Yahweh will put the fear and terror of Israel upon all that land. [11:25]

What did Moses set before Israel that day?

He set before them a blessing and a curse. [11:26]

Where must the people go in order to possess the land?

They must cross over the Jordan to possess and live in the land. [11:31]

Deuteronomy 12

What places did Moses tell Israel to destroy?

They were to destroy all the places where the nations that Israel dispossessed had worshiped their gods. [12:2]

What does Yahweh instruct the people of Israel do to the name of the gods of the nations?

He told Israel to destroy their name out of that place. [12:3]

In what place were the people of Israel to go and bring their burnt offerings, their sacrifices, their tithes, and the offerings.

They were to go to the place that Yahweh their God would choose. [12:5]

What kinds of things were the people of Israel doing?

They were doing whatever was right in their own eyes. [12:8]

What kind of rest will Yahweh give to Israel when they go over the Jordan?

He will give them rest from all their enemies round about, so they will live in safety. [12:10]

What animals can Israel kill and eat?

Israel can kill and eat animals within all their gates. [12:15]

What was Israel not allowed to eat?

Israel was not allowed to eat the blood, but must pour it out on the earth like water. [12:16]

Where was Israel told they could not eat their tithes and sacrifices?

They could not eat them within their gates. [12:17]

Where were the people of Israel to eat their tithes and sacrifices?

They were to eat them before Yahweh their God in the place that he will choose. [12:18]

What was Israel told not to forget?

They were told to not forget the Levite as long as they live in the land of Israel. [12:19]

What can Israel eat when Yahweh their God enlarges their borders as he has promised them?

Israel can eat meat, as their soul desires. [12:20]

What can Israel eat if the place that Yahweh their God chooses to put his name is too far from them?

If the place that Yahweh Israel's God chooses to put his name is too far from Israel, then Israel may kill some of their flock that Yahweh has given them. [12:21]

What is Israel supposed to do with the blood of life?

Israel should not eat the blood of life, but should pour it out on the earth like water. [12:23]

What is Israel supposed to do with the blood of life?

Israel should not eat the blood of life, but should pour it out on the earth like water. [12:24]

What is Israel instructed to take and go to the place that Yahweh chooses?

Israel is to take the consecrated things that they have and the offerings of their vows to the place that Yahweh chooses. [12:26]

Where is Israel to offer their burnt offerings, the meat and the blood, on the altar of Yahweh your God?

Israel is to go to the place that Yahweh chooses to offer their burnt offerings, the meat and the blood,on the altar of Yahweh their God. [12:27]

What is Israel instructed to do so that it may go well with them and with their children after them forever?

Israel is to observe and listen to all the words that Yahweh commands them and do what is good and right in the eyes of Yahweh their God so that it may go well with them and with their children after them forever. [12:28]

What does Yahweh instruct Israel to watch out for when God cuts off the nations before them and when Israel goes in to dispossess them and live in their land?

Israel is to pay attention so that they are not trapped into following or investigating the gods of those nations from before them. [12:30]

What have the other nations done to their sons and daughters in order to worship the gods?

The other nations have even burned their sons and daughters in fire for these other gods. [12:31]

Deuteronomy 13

Why should the people of Israel not listen to the words of a prophet or dreamer of dreams who gives a sign or a wonder and says "Let us go after other gods, that you have not known and let us worship them."

The people of Israel should not listen because Yahweh is testing the them to know whether they love him with all their heart and with all their soul. [13:3]

What should the people of Israel do to the prophet or dreamer of dreams who tells them to worship other gods?

They should put to death that prophet or dreamer of dreams. [13:5]

What have the people of Israel been instructed to do to anyone who secretly entices them and says "Let us go and worship other gods that you have not known?

They must surely kill anyone who entices them to worship other gods. [13:9]

How should the people of Israel kill the person who tries to draw them away from Yahweh their God?

They should stone that person to death with stones. [13:10]

What shall the people of Israel do if they hear anyone say that wicked fellows have gone out from one of their cities and said "Let us go and worship other gods?"

They should make search and investigate it thoroughly, so see if it is true. [13:14]

What should Israel do to a city if they learn it is true that the inhabitants said to go and worship other gods?

They should attack the inhabitants of that city with the edge of the sword and destroy it completely. [13:15]

Why must not happen to the things consigned for destruction?

Those things must not stick to Israel's hand, so that Yahweh will turn from the fierceness of his anger. [13:17]

Deuteronomy 14

What does Moses instruct the people of Yahweh not to do?

They are not to cut themselves, nor shave any part of their face for the dead. [14:1]

What are the two characteristics of the animals that the Israelites are allowed to eat?

Israel may eat any animal that parts the hoof and that also chews the cud. [14:6]

Why is the pig not to be eaten?

The pig is unclean for the Israelites because he parts the hoof but does not chew the cud. [14:8]

What are the characteristics of the things from the water that the Israelites are allowed to eat?

They may eat whatever has both fins and scales. [14:9]

Are the Israelites allowed to eat winged swarming things?

All winged, swarming things are unclean for the Israelites and must not be eaten. [14:19]

May the Israelites eat anything that dies of itself?

They may not eat anything that dies of itself, but they may give it to a foreigner. [14:21]

Why could the Israelites not do to a young goat?

They must not boil a young goat in its mother's milk. [14:21]

What are the Israelites to do with all the yield of their seed?

Israelites must surely tithe all the yield of their seed. [14:22]

Where must the Israelites eat the tithe of their grain, of their new wine, and of their oil, and the firstborn of their herd and their flock?

Israel must eat the tithe of their grain, of their new wine, and of their oil, and the firstborn of their herd and their flock in the place that he will choose as his sanctuary. [14:23]

What are the Israelites allowed to do with the tithe if the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary is too far away?

They can convert the offering into money, tie up the money in their hand, and go to the place that Yahweh has chosen if the journey is too long for them so that they can not carry the tithe. [14:24]

What are the Israelites allowed to do with the tithe if the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary is too far away?

They can convert the offering into money, tie up the money in their hand, and go to the place that Yahweh has chosen if the journey is too long for them so that they can not carry the tithe. [14:25]

Who has no inheritance with the Israelites and must not be forsaken?

The Levite who is within their gates has no inheritance and must not be forsaken. [14:27]

What are the Israelites instructed to do at the end of every three years?

At the end of every three years the Israelites are to present all the tithe of their produce in the same year to the Levite, the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. [14:28]

What are the Israelites instructed to do at the end of every three years?

At the end of every three years the Israelites are to present all the tithe of their produce in the same year to the Levite, the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. [14:29]

Deuteronomy 15

What must the Israelites do at the end of every seven years?

At the end of every seven years the Israelites must cancel debts. [15:1]

Why is every debt to be canceled every seven years?

Every creditor will cancel that which he has lent to his neighbor or his brother because Yahweh's cancellation of debt has been proclaimed. [15:2]

From whom can Israelites continue to demand payment at the end of every seven years?

The Israelites can continue to demand payment of a debt from a foreigner. [15:3]

Why will there be no poor among the Israelites?

Yahweh will surely bless them in the land that he gives to Israel as an inheritance to possess. [15:4]

What will happen to the Israelites to demonstrate that Yahweh the God of Israel has blessed them?

Israel will lend to many nations, but will not borrow; Israel will rule over many nations, but the other nations will not rule over Israel. [15:6]

What are the Israelites told to do if there is a poor man among them?

The Israelites are told not to harden their heart nor shut their hand from their poor brother. [15:7]

What should the Israelites be careful to not to do when the seventh year, the year of release is near?

They should not refuse to give to a poor brother at a time when the seventh year, the year of release, is near. [15:9]

What will Yahweh do for the Israelites in return for giving to the poor at a time when the seventh year is near?

Yahweh will bless the Israelites in all their work and everything to which they put their hand. [15:10]

Why is Israel commanded to open their hands to their brother, to the needy and the poor in their land?

the poor will never cease to exist in the land. [15:11]

What are Israelites instructed to give a Hebrew man or a Hebrew woman who is released to go free in the seventh year?

They must provide for them freely out of the flock, out of the threshing floor and out of the wine press just as Yahweh their God has blessed the Israelite. [15:14]

What are the Israelites to remember as they give to the one they set free?

The Israelites are told to remember that they were slaves in the land of Egypt. [15:15]

What is an Israelite to do to a male or female servant who says "I will not go away from you"?

the Israelite is to take an awl and thrust it through the slave's ear to a door, and he or she will be that Israelite's servant forever. [15:16]

What is an Israelite to do to a male or female servant who says "I will not go away from you"?

the Israelite is to take an awl and thrust it through the slave's ear to a door, and he or she will be that Israelite's servant forever. [15:17]

Why should it not seem difficult for the Israelite to let the slave go free?

It should not be difficult because he has served them for six years and given twice the value of a hired person. [15:18]

What must the people of Israel do with the firstborn males in their herd and their flock?

They must eat the firstborn before Yahweh year by year with their household in the place that Yahweh will choose. [15:19]

What must the people of Israel do with the firstborn males in their herd and their flock?

They must eat the firstborn before Yahweh year by year with their household in the place that Yahweh will choose. [15:20]

What are the Israelites to do with the firstborn animal if it is lame or blind or has any blemish whatever?

They must not sacrifice it to Yahweh, but instead they should eat it within their gates. [15:21]

What are the Israelites to do with the blood of the firstborn that is blemished?

They must pour the blood of the firstborn that is blemished on the ground like water. [15:23]

Deuteronomy 16

Why are the Israelites to observe the month of Abib and keep the Passover for Yahweh their God?

Yahweh he brought Israel out of Egypt by night in the month of Abib. [16:1]

What will the Israelites do to observe the Passover?

The Israelites will sacrifice some of the flock and the herd in the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary. [16:2]

Why are the Israelites to eat no leavened bread or have yeast among all of their borders for seven days?

They are to eat no leavened bread or have yeast because they came out of the land of Egypt in haste. [16:3]

Why are the Israelites to eat no leavened bread or have yeast among all of their borders for seven days?

They are to eat no leavened bread or have yeast because they came out of the land of Egypt in haste. [16:4]

What are the Israelites to do with any meat that they sacrifice in the evening on the first day?

The Israelites are to get rid of any of the meat that they sacrifice on the evening of the first day so that it does not remain until the morning. [16:4]

Where are the Israelites to sacrifice the Passover?

They are to sacrifice at the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary. [16:6]

When will the sacrifice of the Passover be performed?

The sacrifice of the Passover is to be performed in the evening at the going down of the sun, at the time of year that you came out of Egypt. [16:6]

What are the Israelites supposed to do on the first six days as they celebrate Passover?

The Israelites are to eat unleavened bread for six days. [16:8]

What are the Israelites supposed to do on the seventh day as they celebrate Passover?

On the seventh day, they are to have a solemn assembly and do no work. [16:8]

How do the Israelites determine the start of the Festival of Weeks for Yahweh?

The Israelites will count seven weeks from the time they begin to put the sickle to the standing grain. [16:9]

How do the Israelites determine the start of the Festival of Weeks for Yahweh?

The Israelites will count seven weeks from the time they begin to put the sickle to the standing grain. [16:10]

What contribution do the Israelites give on the Festival of Weeks?

They must give Yahweh a free will offering according as Yahweh has blessed them. [16:10]

What must everyone in Israel, including the foreigners, call to mind during the Festival of Weeks?

They must call to mind when they were slaves in Egypt. [16:12]

What festival are the Israelites instructed to keep for seven days after they have gathered in the harvest from the Israelite's threshing floor and from their wine press?

They are to keep the Festival of Shelters for seven days after they begin have gathered in their harvest. [16:13]

At what the three festivals must all the males of Israel appear before Yahweh at the place that Yahweh chooses?

They must appear before him at the Festival of Unleavened Bread, the Festival of Weeks, and at the Festival of Shelters. [16:16]

What is every male Israelite supposed to give to Yahweh instead of coming empty-handed?

Every male Israelite is to give what he is able to Yahweh. [16:17]

Where are the Israelites to find their judges and officers?

The judges and officers will be taken from each of their tribes to judge the people with righteous judgement. [16:18]

Why are the judges and officers not to force justice or show partiality by taking a bribe?

A bribe blinds the eyes of the wise and perverts the words of the righteous [16:19]

What do the judges and officers gain by following justice.

They must follow after justice and justice alone, so that they may live and inherit the land that Yahweh is giving them. [16:20]

What are the Israelites not to set up for themselves?

They are not to set up an Ashera, or any sort of pole, or any sacred stone pillar. [16:21]

What are the Israelites not to set up for themselves?

They are not to set up an Ashera, or any sort of pole, or any sacred stone pillar. [16:22]

Deuteronomy 17

Why must the Israelites not sacrifice an ox or a sheep with any blemish or anything bad to Yahweh?

It would be disgusting to Yahweh if they sacrificed an animal with a blemish or anything bad. [17:1]

What are the Israelites told to do if they hear that a man or woman within their cities have done what is evil in the sight of Yahweh?

The Israelites are to make careful investigation to know if this is true and certain. [17:4]

What are the Israelites to do with a man or woman who has done such a wicked thing as worshiping other gods and bowing down to them?

The Israelites are to stone them to death. [17:5]

How many witnesses are needed to convict a person to death?

Two or three witnesses are needed to to convict a person to death. [17:6]

Who must throw the first stones when putting a person to death?

The hand of the witnesses must be the first to throw the stones, followed by the rest of the people of Israel. [17:7]

Why must the Israelites stone the person to death who has done this wicked thing of worshiping other gods?

This will remove the evil from among them. [17:7]

Who is to judge if the Israelites have a matter that is too hard for them to judge?

They must go to the priests and Levites and to the judge who is serving at that time to seek the advice of the priests. [17:9]

What man must die in order to put away the evil from Israel?

Anyone who acts arrogantly and does not listen to the priest, or does not listen to the judge, must die to put away the evil from Israel. [17:12]

Who will the Israelites set up as a king over them at the time when they are in the land?

Israelites will select from among their brothers someone who Yahweh will choose. [17:15]

Why must the king of Israel not multiply horses for himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt so that the king may multiply horses?

He must not to multiply horses or cause the people to return to Egypt because Yahweh has told the Israelites to never return that way again. [17:16]

Why is the king told not to multiply wives for himself?

He is not to multiply wives for himself so that his heart does not turn away from Yahweh. [17:17]

What is the king instructed to keep with him and read all the days of his life, so that he may learn to honor Yahweh his God, and keep and observe all the words of this law and these statutes?

He must write for himself a copy of this law which is to stay will him and be read by him all the days of his life. [17:18]

What is the king instructed to keep with him and read all the days of his life, so that he may learn to honor Yahweh his God, and keep and observe all the words of this law and these statutes?

He must write for himself a copy of this law which is to stay will him and be read by him all the days of his life. [17:19]

Why is the king instructed to keep the scroll of the law with him?

He must keep the scroll with him so that his heart is not lifted up above his brothers, and so that he does not turn away from the commandments. [17:20]

Deuteronomy 18

Why would the Levite priests have to eat the offerings of Yahweh as their inheritance?

The Levite priests would have to eat the offerings because they would have no inheritance among their brothers. [18:1]

Why would the Levite priests have to eat the offerings of Yahweh as their inheritance?

The Levite priests would have to eat the offerings because they would have no inheritance among their brothers. [18:2]

What was to be given to the priests from the sacrifices of the people?

The priests were to be given the shoulder, two cheeks, and inner parts of the oxen and sheep and the first fruits of grain, new wine, oil, and fleece of the sheep from the sacrifices of the people. [18:3]

What was to be given to the priests from the sacrifices of the people?

The priests were to be given the shoulder, two cheeks, and inner parts of the oxen and sheep and the first fruits of grain, new wine, oil, and fleece of the sheep from the sacrifices of the people. [18:4]

Why were the priests supposed to receive these portions from the sacrifices of the people?

They were to receive these portions because Yahweh chose them to stand to serve in the name of Yahweh. [18:5]

When can a Levite serve in the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary?

A Levite can serve in the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary when he comes out of any of the city gates of Israel with the desire of his soul to serve Yahweh. [18:6]

When can a Levite serve in the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary?

A Levite can serve in the place that Yahweh will choose as his sanctuary when he comes out of any of the city gates of Israel with the desire of his soul to serve Yahweh. [18:7]

What were some of the disgusting practices followed by the nations?

Some of the disgusting practices were making their children pass through the fire, using divination, practicing augury, using sorcery and talking with the dead or spirits. [18:9]

What were some of the disgusting practices followed by the nations?

Some of the disgusting practices were making their children pass through the fire, using divination, practicing augury, using sorcery and talking with the dead or spirits. [18:10]

What were some of the disgusting practices followed by the nations?

Some of the disgusting practices were making their children pass through the fire, using divination, practicing augury, using sorcery and talking with the dead or spirits. [18:11]

Why will Yahweh drive out the nations from the land?

Yahweh will drive out the nations from the land because they listen to those who practice sorcery and divination. [18:12]

Why will Yahweh drive out the nations from the land?

Yahweh will drive out the nations from the land because they listen to those who practice sorcery and divination. [18:13]

Why will Yahweh drive out the nations from the land?

Yahweh will drive out the nations from the land because they listen to those who practice sorcery and divination. [18:14]

Who did Yahweh promise to raise up from among the people?

Yahweh promised he would raise up a prophet like Moses in the future from Israel. [18:15]

What would cause a prophet to die?

A prophet will die if he speaks a word arrogantly in Yahweh's name, a word that Yahweh has not commanded him to speak, or he speaks in the name of other gods. [18:20]

What does it mean if a prophecy spoken in Yahweh's name does not happen?

If a prophecy does not happen, then the prophecy is something that Yahweh has not spoken. [18:22]

Deuteronomy 19

Why did Yahweh instruct the people to select three cities in the middle of the land?

He instructed the people to select three cities so that everyone who kills another person could flee there. [19:1]

Why did Yahweh instruct the people to select three cities in the middle of the land?

He instructed the people to select three cities so that everyone who kills another person could flee there. [19:2]

Why did Yahweh instruct the people to select three cities in the middle of the land?

He instructed the people to select three cities so that everyone who kills another person could flee there. [19:3]

What provision does Yahweh make for the person who kills his neighbor unawares, and did not previously hate him?

Yahweh provided three cities of refuge to which the man could flee and live. [19:4]

What provision does Yahweh make for the person who kills his neighbor unawares, and did not previously hate him?

Yahweh provided three cities of refuge to which the man could flee and live. [19:5]

Why should the one who kills another flee to a city of refuge?

He should flee so that the deceased relative does not pursue in anger, catch, and kill him. [19:6]

Why should the one who kills another flee to a city of refuge?

He should flee so that the deceased relative does not pursue in anger, catch, and kill him. [19:7]

What would be the conditions for adding three more cities of refuge?

If Yahweh enlarged their borders, then they must add three more cities of refuge. [19:8]

What would be the conditions for adding three more cities of refuge?

If Yahweh enlarged their borders, then they must add three more cities of refuge. [19:9]

What should happen if a person hates his neighbor, lies in wait for him, mortally wounds him, and then flees to one of the cities of refuge?

The elders of this man's city must bring him back and turn him over to the responsible relative so that he may die as punishment for the blood guilt from Israel. [19:11]

What should happen if a person hates his neighbor, lies in wait for him, mortally wounds him, and then flees to one of the cities of refuge?

The elders of this man's city must bring him back and turn him over to the responsible relative so that he may die as punishment for the blood guilt from Israel. [19:12]

What should happen if a person hates his neighbor, lies in wait for him, mortally wounds him, and then flees to one of the cities of refuge?

The elders of this man's city must bring him back and turn him over to the responsible relative so that he may die as punishment for the blood guilt from Israel. [19:13]

How many witnesses are needed for a matter to be confirmed?

It is necessary for two or three witnesses to speak for a matter to be confirmed. [19:15]

What should be done when controversy exists between two men?

Then both men, the ones between whom the controversy exists, must stand before Yahweh, before the priests and the judges who serve in those days. The judges must make diligent inquiries; see, if the witness is a false witness and has testified falsely against his brother. [19:17]

What should be done when controversy exists between two men?

Then both men, the ones between whom the controversy exists, must stand before Yahweh, before the priests and the judges who serve in those days. The judges must make diligent inquiries; see, if the witness is a false witness and has testified falsely against his brother. [19:18]

What must be done if the testimony of a witness is found to be false?

If the testimony of a witness is found to be false, then they must do to him as he had wished to do to his brother. [19:19]

Deuteronomy 20

Why must the people of Israel not be afraid when they march out to battle against their enemies?

The people of Israel must not be afraid because Yahweh their God, who brought them out of the land of Egypt, will be with them. [20:1]

What must happen when the people of Israel draw near to the battle?

The priest must speak to the people and tell them not to be afraid, but Yahweh is with them to fight for them. [20:2]

What must happen when the people of Israel draw near to the battle?

The priest must speak to the people and tell them not to be afraid, but Yahweh is with them to fight for them. [20:3]

What must happen when the people of Israel draw near to the battle?

The priest must speak to the people and tell them not to be afraid, but Yahweh is with them to fight for them. [20:4]

What should a man do if he as built a new house and not yet dedicated it?

He should return to his house so he does not die in battle and another man dedicate it. [20:5]

What should a man do if he is engaged to a woman and not yet married her?

He should return and marry her so he does not die in battle and another man marry her. [20:7]

What will happen if the people in a faraway city accept an offer of peace when Israel attacks it?

All the people in the city must become forced labor and serve Israel. [20:10]

What will happen if the people in a faraway city accept an offer of peace when Israel attacks it?

All the people in the city must become forced labor and serve Israel. [20:11]

What must happen if the city does not accept the offer of peace, but instead makes war against Israel?

Israel must attack it and when Yahweh gives Israel victory they must kill every man in the town. [20:12]

What must happen if the city does not accept the offer of peace, but instead makes war against Israel?

Israel must attack it and when Yahweh gives Israel victory they must kill every man in the town. [20:13]

Why must the people of Israel utterly destroy everything that breathes in the cities of the land which Yahweh will give them as an inheritance?

They must destroy everything so that the people of the land do not teach them to act in any of disgusting ways and sin against Yahweh. [20:16]

Why must the people of Israel utterly destroy everything that breathes in the cities of the land which Yahweh will give them as an inheritance?

They must destroy everything so that the people of the land do not teach them to act in any of disgusting ways and sin against Yahweh. [20:17]

Why must the people of Israel utterly destroy everything that breathes in the cities of the land which Yahweh will give them as an inheritance?

They must destroy everything so that the people of the land do not teach them to act in any of disgusting ways and sin against Yahweh. [20:18]

What should Israel do with the trees in the cities which they have attacked?

Israel should not cut down the trees that are used for food, but they can cut down the trees that are not used for food to build bulwarks against a city. [20:19]

What should Israel do with the trees in the cities which they have attacked?

Israel should not cut down the trees that are used for food, but they can cut down the trees that are not used for food to build bulwarks against a city. [20:20]

Deuteronomy 21

What should happen if someone who has been killed is found lying in a field and it is not known who attacked him?

The elders and judges should measure to determine the nearest city to the killed man. [21:1]

What should happen if someone who has been killed is found lying in a field and it is not known who attacked him?

The elders and judges should measure to determine the nearest city to the killed man. [21:2]

How did Yahweh want the people of Israel to respond to the words of his priests?

Yahweh wanted them to accept the advice of his priests as the verdict in every dispute and in cases of assault. [21:5]

What ritual must the elders of the city nearest to the killed man perform so that this bloodshed will be forgiven?

The elders of the city must wash their hands over the heifer whose neck was broken and say, “Our hands have not shed this blood nor have our eyes seen it.” [21:6]

What ritual must the elders of the city nearest to the killed man perform so that this bloodshed will be forgiven?

The elders of the city must wash their hands over the heifer whose neck was broken and say, “Our hands have not shed this blood nor have our eyes seen it.” [21:7]

What did Moses tell the people of Israel to do when they went out to battle against their enemies and Yahweh gave them victory?

They were told to take their enemies away as captives. [21:10]

How was an Israelite man to respond to the women who were taken captive?

If a man saw a beautiful woman who he wanted to take for his wife, then he was to bring her home where she would shave her head and cut her nails. [21:11]

How was an Israelite man to respond to the women who were taken captive?

If a man saw a beautiful woman who he wanted to take for his wife, then he was to bring her home where she would shave her head and cut her nails. [21:12]

How long was the captive woman allowed to mourn for her mother and father?

She would remain in mourning for her father and mother for a month before she would become the wife of the man. [21:13]

How was an Israelite man to treat a captive that he had taken as a wife if he did not delight in her?

He must let her go rather than sell her for money. [21:14]

If a man has two wives, and he hates the one who has borne him his firstborn son, how must he distribute what he owns to his heirs?

This man must acknowledge the firstborn son of the hated wife by giving him a double portion of all that he possesses. [21:15]

If a man has two wives, and he hates the one who has borne him his firstborn son, how must he distribute what he owns to his heirs?

This man must acknowledge the firstborn son of the hated wife by giving him a double portion of all that he possesses. [21:16]

If a man has two wives, and he hates the one who has borne him his firstborn son, how must he distribute what he owns to his heirs?

This man must acknowledge the firstborn son of the hated wife by giving him a double portion of all that he possesses. [21:17]

Who must a man take his stubborn and rebellious son to if the son will not obey the voice of his father or mother?

The man and his wife must bring the son to the elders at the gate of the city. [21:18]

What must the father and mother of the rebellious son say to the elders of his city?

The father and mother of the rebellious son must tell the elders, “This son of ours is stubborn and rebellious, a glutton and a drunkard and will not obey our voice”. [21:20]

Why must the elders of the city respond by stoning the son to death?

They must stone the son to death to eradicate the evil from within them, and cause all Israel to hear of it and fear. [21:21]

What must happen if a man commits a sin worthy of death and is hanged on a tree?

The man's body must not remain all night on the tree, but must be buried the same day so the land will not be defiled. [21:22]

What must happen if a man commits a sin worthy of death and is hanged on a tree?

The man's body must not remain all night on the tree, but must be buried the same day so the land will not be defiled. [21:23]

Deuteronomy 22

What did Moses tell the people of Israel to do when they would see an animal of a fellow Israelite go astray?

They must not bring the animal to their own house, but return it to their fellow Israelite. [22:2]

What did Moses tell the people of Israel to do when they would see an animal of a fellow Israelite fallen down in the road?

They must help their fellow Israelite lift it up again. [22:4]

What behavior does Yahweh find disgusting?

Yahweh is disgusted when a woman wears men's clothing or a man puts on women's clothing. [22:5]

What should the people of Israel do if they find a mother in a bird's nest with her young or sitting on the eggs?

They must let the mother go, but the young they may take for themselves. [22:6]

What should the people of Israel do if they find a mother in a bird's nest with her young or sitting on the eggs?

They must let the mother go, but the young they may take for themselves. [22:7]

What was required when an Israelite would build a house?

It was required that he would make a railing for the roof so he would not bring blood on his house if anyone would fall from there. [22:8]

Why were the Israelites instructed to not plant their vineyards with two kinds of seeds?

The Israelites were not to plant with two kinds of seeds so that the whole harvest would not be confiscated by the sanctuary. [22:9]

What must you put on the foul corners of the cloak with which you clothe yourself?

You must make yourself fringes on the four corners of the cloak with which you clothe yourself. [22:12]

What must happen if a man has made a false accusation against his wife?

The elders of the city must punish him by fining him one hundred shekels of silver which would be given to the father of the wife and the man could never send his wife away. [22:18]

What must happen if a man has made a false accusation against his wife?

The elders of the city must punish him by fining him one hundred shekels of silver which would be given to the father of the wife and the man could never send his wife away. [22:19]

What should happen if the proof of the wife's virginity is not found?

If the proof of her virginity is not found, then she must be brought out and stoned to death because she has committed a disgraceful action. [22:20]

What should happen if the proof of the wife's virginity is not found?

If the proof of her virginity is not found, then she must be brought out and stoned to death because she has committed a disgraceful action. [22:21]

What must happen if a man is found lying with a woman married to another man?

Both the man and the woman must be stoned to death to erase the evil. [22:22]

Why are the people of Israel instructed to stone to death both a girl who is a virgin engaged to a man and another man if they are found lying together?

They are instructed to stone both of them because the girl did not cry out when she was in the city and the man humiliated the wife of a fellow Israelite. [22:23]

Why are the people of Israel instructed to stone to death both a girl who is a virgin engaged to a man and another man if they are found lying together?

They are instructed to stone both of them because the girl did not cry out when she was in the city and the man humiliated the wife of a fellow Israelite. [22:24]

What must happen if the man would force the girl to lie with him when they are out in a field?

If this happens out in a field, then the man must die, but nothing must be done to the girl because he found her out in the field and there was no one there to save her. [22:25]

What must happen if the man would force the girl to lie with him when they are out in a field?

If this happens out in a field, then the man must die, but nothing must be done to the girl because he found her out in the field and there was no one there to save her. [22:26]

What must happen if the man would force the girl to lie with him when they are out in a field?

If this happens out in a field, then the man must die, but nothing must be done to the girl because he found her out in the field and there was no one there to save her. [22:27]

What must happen if a man lies with a girl who is a virgin, but who is not engaged and they are discovered?

Then the man must give fiifty shekels of silver to the girl's father and take the girl as his wife rather than sending her away. [22:28]

What must happen if a man lies with a girl who is a virgin, but who is not engaged and they are discovered?

Then the man must give fiifty shekels of silver to the girl's father and take the girl as his wife rather than sending her away. [22:29]

Why must a man not take his father's wife as his own?

A man must not take his father's wife as his own because he would be taking away his father's marriage rights. [22:30]

Deuteronomy 23

Who would not be allowed to enter into the assembly of Yahweh?

Any male whose private parts have been crushed or cut off, or the illegitimate child is not allowed to enter into the assembly of Yahweh. [23:1]

Who would not be allowed to enter into the assembly of Yahweh?

Any male whose private parts have been crushed or cut off, or the illegitimate child is not allowed to enter into the assembly of Yahweh. [23:2]

Why must neither an Ammonite nor a Moabite enter into the assembly of Yahweh?

They can enter into the assembly because they did not meet the Israelites with bread and water on the road when they came out of Egypt and they hired Balaam to curse them. [23:3]

Why must neither an Ammonite nor a Moabite enter into the assembly of Yahweh?

They can enter into the assembly because they did not meet the Israelites with bread and water on the road when they came out of Egypt and they hired Balaam to curse them. [23:4]

What evidence showed that Yahweh did not listen to Balaam?

Yahweh turned the curse of Balaam into a blessing for Israel. [23:5]

Why were Edomites and Egyptians allowed to enter into the assembly of Yahweh?

An Edomite was allowed to be in the assembly because he was a fellow Israelite and an Egyptian was allowed in the assembly since Israel was once a foreigner in his land. [23:7]

Why were Edomites and Egyptians allowed to enter into the assembly of Yahweh?

An Edomite was allowed to be in the assembly because he was a fellow Israelite and an Egyptian was allowed in the assembly since Israel was once a foreigner in his land. [23:8]

How could a man in the Israelite army who had become unclean because of what had happened to him at night became clean again so he could come back inside the camp?

He could bathe himself in water in the evening and then be allowed to come back inside the camp. [23:9]

How could a man in the Israelite army who had become unclean because of what had happened to him at night became clean again so he could come back inside the camp?

He could bathe himself in water in the evening and then be allowed to come back inside the camp. [23:10]

How could a man in the Israelite army who had become unclean because of what had happened to him at night became clean again so he could come back inside the camp?

He could bathe himself in water in the evening and then be allowed to come back inside the camp. [23:11]

Why did Yahweh give instructions to the people of Israel about where and how to relieve themselves?

Yahweh was walking in the midst of their camp, so the camp must be holy in order that Yahweh would not see any unclean thing and turn away from them. [23:12]

Why did Yahweh give instructions to the people of Israel about where and how to relieve themselves?

Yahweh was walking in the midst of their camp, so the camp must be holy in order that Yahweh would not see any unclean thing and turn away from them. [23:13]

Why did Yahweh give instructions to the people of Israel about where and how to relieve themselves?

Yahweh was walking in the midst of their camp, so the camp must be holy in order that Yahweh would not see any unclean thing and turn away from them. [23:14]

How were the instructions Yahweh gave about slaves unusual?

A slave who escaped from his master was not to be returned, but allowed to live with them in whatever town he chose. [23:15]

How were the instructions Yahweh gave about slaves unusual?

A slave who escaped from his master was not to be returned, but allowed to live with them in whatever town he chose. [23:16]

Why did Yahweh not allow any prostitutes or sodomites among the Israelites nor allow their wages to be used as a vow in his house?

Yahweh was disgusted with anything connected with the evil behavior of the prostitutes or sodomites. [23:17]

Why did Yahweh not allow any prostitutes or sodomites among the Israelites nor allow their wages to be used as a vow in his house?

Yahweh was disgusted with anything connected with the evil behavior of the prostitutes or sodomites. [23:18]

How was the policy of lending money different when it involved foreigners instead of fellow Israelites?

They were never to lend on interest to their fellow Israelites, but they were allowed to lend on interest to foreigners. [23:19]

How was the policy of lending money different when it involved foreigners instead of fellow Israelites?

They were never to lend on interest to their fellow Israelites, but they were allowed to lend on interest to foreigners. [23:20]

How important was it for an Israelite to fulfill a vow he made to Yahweh?

An Israelite was not to be slow in fulfilling a vow he made to Yahweh, but he was to observe what he freely promised with his mouth so that he would not be sinning against Yahweh. [23:21]

How important was it for an Israelite to fulfill a vow he made to Yahweh?

An Israelite was not to be slow in fulfilling a vow he made to Yahweh, but he was to observe what he freely promised with his mouth so that he would not be sinning against Yahweh. [23:22]

How important was it for an Israelite to fulfill a vow he made to Yahweh?

An Israelite was not to be slow in fulfilling a vow he made to Yahweh, but he was to observe what he freely promised with his mouth so that he would not be sinning against Yahweh. [23:23]

How generous were the instructions from Yahweh about what the Israelites could eat from their neighbor's vineyard and fields?

They could eat their fill of grapes from their neighbor's vineyard as long as they did not put any in containers and they could pluck the ears of grain from their neighbor's field as long as they did not use a sickle. [23:24]

How generous were the instructions from Yahweh about what the Israelites could eat from their neighbor's vineyard and fields?

They could eat their fill of grapes from their neighbor's vineyard as long as they did not put any in containers and they could pluck the ears of grain from their neighbor's field as long as they did not use a sickle. [23:25]

Deuteronomy 24

How does Yahweh make it possible for a man to divorce his wife?

If a man has found some unsuitable thing in his wife, he can write her a bill of divorcement, put it in her hand, and send her out of his house where she can go and become another man's wife. [24:1]

How does Yahweh make it possible for a man to divorce his wife?

If a man has found some unsuitable thing in his wife, he can write her a bill of divorcement, put it in her hand, and send her out of his house where she can go and become another man's wife. [24:2]

What does Yahweh not allow if the second husband writes her a bill of divorce and sends her out of the house or if he dies?

Yahweh does not allow for the first husband who sent her away to take her again to be his wife. [24:3]

What does Yahweh not allow if the second husband writes her a bill of divorce and sends her out of the house or if he dies?

Yahweh does not allow for the first husband who sent her away to take her again to be his wife. [24:4]

What are the benefits for a man who has taken a new wife?

He does not have to go to war or be commanded to go on forced duty, but he can stay home for one year to make his new wife happy. [24:5]

Why was no man allowed to take a mill or an upper millstone as a pledge?

No man was allowed to take them, for he would be taking a man's livelihood as a pledge. [24:6]

What are the circumstances when a man would be declared a thief and must die?

A man would be declared a thief who must die if he would kidnap any of his Israelite brothers and treat him as a slave or sell him. [24:7]

What word of caution from Yahweh about leprosy did Moses pass on to the people of Israel?

Moses told the people of Israel to carefully observe and follow every instruction which Yahweh gave to the priests and Levites regarding any plague of leprosy. [24:8]

What word of caution from Yahweh about leprosy did Moses pass on to the people of Israel?

Moses told the people of Israel to carefully observe and follow every instruction which Yahweh gave to the priests and Levites regarding any plague of leprosy. [24:9]

What restrictions were given when a loan was made to a neighbor?

When a loan was made to a neighbor, they were not to go into the house to get the pledge, but stand outside and wait for the man who received the loan to bring out the pledge. [24:10]

What restrictions were given when a loan was made to a neighbor?

When a loan was made to a neighbor, they were not to go into the house to get the pledge, but stand outside and wait for the man who received the loan to bring out the pledge. [24:11]

What must happen if the man who gives the pledge is a poor man?

If the man is a poor man, the man who gives him the loan must not sleep with the pledge in his possession, but restore him the pledge by the time the sun goes down so he may sleep in his cloak. [24:12]

What must happen if the man who gives the pledge is a poor man?

If the man is a poor man, the man who gives him the loan must not sleep with the pledge in his possession, but restore him the pledge by the time the sun goes down so he may sleep in his cloak. [24:13]

What must the people of Israel do to not oppress a hired servant who is poor and needy?

They must give him his wages every day because he is poor and is counting on it. [24:14]

What must the people of Israel do to not oppress a hired servant who is poor and needy?

They must give him his wages every day because he is poor and is counting on it. [24:15]

How did Yahweh make it clear that everyone was responsible for their own sins?

Yahweh told the people of Israel that the parents must not be put to death for the sins of their children and the children must not be put to death for the sins of their parents. [24:16]

Why were the people of Israel reminded about their time of slavery in Egypt and how Yahweh rescued them from there?

They were reminded so they would not force away the justice due the foreigner or the fatherless, nor take the widow's cloak as a pledge. [24:17]

Why were the people of Israel reminded about their time of slavery in Egypt and how Yahweh rescued them from there?

They were reminded so they would not force away the justice due the foreigner or the fatherless, nor take the widow's cloak as a pledge. [24:18]

What were the people of Israel commanded to do when they harvested their field or shook their olive tree?

When the people of Israel harvested their field they were not to go back for a forgotten sheaf in the field or to shake their olive tree a second time, but to leave them for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. [24:19]

What were the people of Israel commanded to do when they harvested their field or shook their olive tree?

When the people of Israel harvested their field they were not to go back for a forgotten sheaf in the field or to shake their olive tree a second time, but to leave them for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. [24:20]

Deuteronomy 25

How will a judge resolve a dispute between two men in court?

He will acquit the righteous and condemn the wicked to be beaten in his presence. [25:1]

Why will a judge limit number of blows a wicked man will receive?

He will order number of blows to not exceed forty blows so the wicked will not be humiliated. [25:3]

What safeguard did Yahweh institute so that the name of a man would not perish from Israel?

If a brother died without having a son, his brother must take the dead man's widow as his wife so that the firstborn she bears will succeed in the name of that man's dead brother. [25:5]

What safeguard did Yahweh institute so that the name of a man would not perish from Israel?

If a brother died without having a son, his brother must take the dead man's widow as his wife so that the firstborn she bears will succeed in the name of that man's dead brother. [25:6]

What punishment did Yahweh give to the people of Israel if the man's brother did not wish to take his brother's wife?

The brother's wife will in the presence of the elders take off his sandal, spit in his face, and tell him that this is what is done when a man does not build up his brother's house. [25:9]

What punishment did Yahweh give to the people of Israel if the man's brother did not wish to take his brother's wife?

The brother's wife will in the presence of the elders take off his sandal, spit in his face, and tell him that this is what is done when a man does not build up his brother's house. [25:10]

What would cause a wife to have one of her hands cut off?

If two men were fighting and the wife of one of the men grabs the private part of the other man in an attempt to rescue her husband, then her hand must be cut off. [25:11]

What would cause a wife to have one of her hands cut off?

If two men were fighting and the wife of one of the men grabs the private part of the other man in an attempt to rescue her husband, then her hand must be cut off. [25:12]

What kind of unrighteous act is disgusting to Yahweh?

It is disgusting to Yahweh when a man has a large and a small weight to measure rather than a perfect and just weight. [25:15]

What kind of unrighteous act is disgusting to Yahweh?

It is disgusting to Yahweh when a man has a large and a small weight to measure rather than a perfect and just weight. [25:16]

Why must the people of Israel blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven?

Amalek did not honor God when Amalek met Israel on the road and attacked those who were faint and weary at the rear as they came out of Egypt. [25:17]

Why must the people of Israel blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven?

Amalek did not honor God when Amalek met Israel on the road and attacked those who were faint and weary at the rear as they came out of Egypt. [25:18]

Why must the people of Israel blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven?

Amalek did not honor God when Amalek met Israel on the road and attacked those who were faint and weary at the rear as they came out of Egypt. [25:19]

Deuteronomy 26

What must the people of Israel do when they possess the land which Yahweh has given them?

The people of Israel must take some of the first of all the harvest of the land in a basket and go to the place Yahweh has chosen as his sanctuary. [26:1]

What must the people of Israel do when they possess the land which Yahweh has given them?

The people of Israel must take some of the first of all the harvest of the land in a basket and go to the place Yahweh has chosen as his sanctuary. [26:2]

What must the people of Israel say to the priest when they give him the basket?

The people of Israel must say to him, “I acknowledge today to Yahweh that I have come to the land that he swore to give to our ancestors.” [26:3]

What must the people of Israel say was their father?

The people of Israel must say their father was a wandering Aramean. [26:5]

How did the Egyptians treat the Israelites when they were in Egypt?

They treated the Israelites badly and afflicted them, making them do the work of slaves. [26:6]

How did Yahweh bring Israel out of Egypt?

He brought them out with a mighty hand, with a display of his power, with great fearsome power, with signs, and with wonders. [26:8]

How did Yahweh bring Israel out of Egypt?

He brought them out with a mighty hand, with a display of his power, with great fearsome power, with signs, and with wonders. [26:9]

What is the purpose for setting down the basket before Yahweh?

The purpose is to worship Yahweh and rejoice in all the good that he has done for Israel, their house, the Levite, and the foreigner among them. [26:10]

What is the purpose for setting down the basket before Yahweh?

The purpose is to worship Yahweh and rejoice in all the good that he has done for Israel, their house, the Levite, and the foreigner among them. [26:11]

What must the people of Israel do after they have finished giving all the tithe from their harvest?

The people of Israel must give it to the Levite, to the foreigner, to the fatherless, and to the widow so they may eat and be filled. [26:12]

What do the people of Israel want Yahweh to do for them?

The people of Israel want Yahweh to look down from heaven and bless them in the land which he has given to them. [26:15]

What is Yahweh commanding the people of Israel to do?

He is commanding the people of Israel to obey his statues and decrees with all their heart and soul. [26:16]

What have the people of Israel acknowledged before Yahweh?

They have acknowledged that Yahweh is their God and that they will walk in his ways, keep his commandments, and listen to his voice. [26:17]

What has Yahweh acknowledged to the people of Israel?

Yahweh has acknowledged that Israel is his own possession and he will set them high above all the other nations in respect to praise, reputation, and honor so they will be a people that is holy to him. [26:18]

What has Yahweh acknowledged to the people of Israel?

Yahweh has acknowledged that Israel is his own possession and he will set them high above all the other nations in respect to praise, reputation, and honor so they will be a people that is holy to him. [26:19]

Deuteronomy 27

What did Moses and the elders of Israel command the people of Israel to keep?

Moses and the elders of Israel told the people to keep all the commandments that Moses commanded them that day. [27:1]

What must the people of Israel do after they pass over the Jordan to the land which Yahweh would give them?

They must set up some large stones with plaster and write on them all the words of the law. [27:4]

What must the people of Israel build on Mount Ebal?

The people of Israel must build an altar of stone to Yahweh without using iron tools to offer burned offerings to him. [27:5]

What were the people of Israel to write on the stones they had plastered?

They were to write on the stones very plainly all the words of the law. [27:8]

Why was it important for the people of Israel to hear the voice of Yahweh and obey his commandments that day?

It was important because on that day they became the people of Yahweh. [27:9]

Why was it important for the people of Israel to hear the voice of Yahweh and obey his commandments that day?

It was important because on that day they became the people of Yahweh. [27:10]

Why were six of the tribes of Israel commanded to stand on Mount Gerizim?

Moses told the people that six of the tribes of Israel must stand on Mount Gerizim to bless the people. [27:11]

Why were six of the tribes of Israel commanded to stand on Mount Gerizim?

Moses told the people that six of the tribes of Israel must stand on Mount Gerizim to bless the people. [27:12]

Why were six of the tribes of Israel commanded to stand on Mount Ebal?

Six of the tribes of Israel were commanded to stand on Mount Ebal to pronounce curses. [27:13]

What is one thing that is disgusting to Yahweh?

One thing that is disgusting to Yahweh is a carved or cast figure made by a craftsman who sets it up in secret. [27:15]

Why is a man cursed if he lies with his father's wife?

A man is cursed if he sleeps with his father's wife, because he has taken away his father's rights. [27:20]

What did the Levites say would happen to the man who secretly kills his neighbor or takes a bribe to kill an innocent person?

That the man would be cursed. [27:24]

What did the Levites say would happen to the man who secretly kills his neighbor or takes a bribe to kill an innocent person?

That the man would be cursed. [27:25]

Why did the Levites say a man should confirm the words of this law by obeying them?

A man should obey the words of this law so he would not be cursed. [27:26]

Deuteronomy 28

What did the people of Israel have to do in order to be blessed by Yahweh and to be set above all the other nations of the earth?

The people of Israel needed to listen carefully to the voice of Yahweh and keep all his commandments. [28:1]

What did the people of Israel have to do in order to be blessed by Yahweh and to be set above all the other nations of the earth?

The people of Israel needed to listen carefully to the voice of Yahweh and keep all his commandments. [28:2]

What will Yahweh do for the people of Israel if they will obey his commandments?

Yahweh will cause their enemies to be struck down before them. [28:7]

What will Yahweh make the people of Israel become if they will obey his commandments?

He will establish them as a people holy to himself. [28:9]

What will Yahweh open for the people of Israel if they will obey his commandments?

Yahweh will open to them his storehouse of the heavens to give the rain for their land at the right time, and to bless all the work of their hand. [28:12]

What will happen to the people of Israel if they will not listen to the voice of Yahweh and keep all his commandments?

All the curses will come upon them and overtake them. [28:15]

What will the skies and the earth become to the Israelites if they do not obey the commandments?

The skies will be bronze and the earth will be iron. [28:23]

What will happen Israel when they fight their enemies if they do not obey the commandments?

They will be struck down before their enemies, and flee seven ways before them. [28:25]

With what will Yahweh attack the people of Israel if they are disobedient?

He will attack them with boils, ulcers, scurvy, and itch, and also with madness, blindness, and mental confusion. [28:27]

With what will Yahweh attack the people of Israel if they are disobedient?

He will attack them with boils, ulcers, scurvy, and itch, and also with madness, blindness, and mental confusion. [28:28]

What will happen if am Israelite is engaged to a woman, or builds a house or vineyard?

He will not sleep with the woman, or live in the house, or enjoy the fruit of the vineyard. [28:30]

What will happen to the sons and daughters of the Israelites?

Their sons and daughters will be given to other peoples, and they will look for them but not find them. [28:32]

What will the people of Israel become among all the peoples?

They will become a source of horror, a proverb, and a byword, among all the peoples. [28:37]

How will the disobedience of the people of Israel affect the crops which they plant?

They will plant much seed, and vineyards, but they will not enjoy the fruit of their labors because the worms and the locusts will take over. [28:38]

How will the disobedience of the people of Israel affect the crops which they plant?

They will plant much seed, and vineyards, but they will not enjoy the fruit of their labors because the worms and the locusts will take over. [28:39]

How will the foreigner be more important than the people of Israel?

The foreigner will lend to them and become the head while the people of Israel will not be able to lend and become the tail. [28:43]

How will the foreigner be more important than the people of Israel?

The foreigner will lend to them and become the head while the people of Israel will not be able to lend and become the tail. [28:44]

What will happen because the people of Israel did not listen to the voice of Yahweh and keep his commandments?

All the curses will come on them and overtake them until they are destroyed. [28:45]

What will happen because the people of Israel did not listen to the voice of Yahweh and keep his commandments?

All the curses will come on them and overtake them until they are destroyed. [28:46]

Why will the people of Israel serve the enemies of Yahweh?

They will serve the enemies of Yahweh because they did not worship Yahweh with joyfulness and gladness of heart when they were in prosperity. [28:47]

Why will the people of Israel serve the enemies of Yahweh?

They will serve the enemies of Yahweh because they did not worship Yahweh with joyfulness and gladness of heart when they were in prosperity. [28:48]

What did Moses prophesy about the people of Israel?

Yahweh would bring a nation from far away to attack them with no respect for the aged or young, as well as taking all the food from them and their cattle. [28:49]

What did Moses prophesy about the people of Israel?

Yahweh would bring a nation from far away to attack them with no respect for the aged or young, as well as taking all the food from them and their cattle. [28:50]

What did Moses prophesy about the people of Israel?

Yahweh would bring a nation from far away to attack them with no respect for the aged or young, as well as taking all the food from them and their cattle. [28:51]

During the siege of the city what will the man who is tender and delicate among them not give to his brother or his own dear wife or whatever children he has left?

He will not give to any of them the flesh of his own children that he is going to eat. [28:54]

During the siege of the city what will the man who is tender and delicate among them not give to his brother or his own dear wife or whatever children he has left?

He will not give to any of them the flesh of his own children that he is going to eat. [28:55]

During the siege of the city what will a woman do with her own newborn and the children whom she will bear?

During the siege of the city a woman will eat her own newborn and the children whom she will bear. [28:56]

During the siege of the city what will a woman do with her own newborn and the children whom she will bear?

During the siege of the city a woman will eat her own newborn and the children whom she will bear. [28:57]

What will happen if the people of Israel do not honor the name of Yahweh by keeping the words in the book of the law?

They will experience terrible plagues and severe diseases. [28:59]

How many of the few people of Israel will be left after Yahweh punishes them?

They will be few in number and will be scattered from one end of the earth to the other end. [28:62]

Will the people of Israel find rest when they are scattered among the nations?

They will find no ease, and there will be no rest for the bottoms of their feet. [28:65]

Deuteronomy 29

With whom did Yahweh make a covenant?

Yahweh made a covenant with Israel in the land of Moab. [29:1]

What previous covenant had Yahweh made with the people of Israel?

Yahweh previously made a covenant with Israel at Horeb. [29:1]

Of what did Moses remind all the people of Israel?

Moses reminded all the people of Israel of everything that Yahweh had done before their eyes in the land of Egypt to Pharaoh, to all his servants, and to all his land. [29:2]

Why did Moses say that the people of Israel needed to be reminded of the great sufferings that their eyes had seen, the signs and those great wonders?

Moses said that until today Yahweh had not given then a heart to know, eyes to see, or ears to hear about those things. [29:4]

Why did Yahweh lead Israel for forty years in the wilderness where their clothes and sandals did wear out and they did not eat any bread or drink any wine or alcoholic drinks?

He did those things so that they might know that he is Yahweh their God. [29:5]

Why did Yahweh lead Israel for forty years in the wilderness where their clothes and sandals did wear out and they did not eat any bread or drink any wine or alcoholic drinks?

He did those things so that they might know that he is Yahweh their God. [29:6]

Why did Israel need to do in order to prosper in everything?

They needed to keep the words of this covenant and do them and so that they might prosper in everything that they did. [29:9]

Before whom were all of the Israelites standing?

All of the Israelites were standing before Yahweh their God. [29:10]

Before whom were all of the Israelites standing?

All of the Israelites were standing before Yahweh their God. [29:11]

Why were the Israelites standing before Yahweh their God?

They were standing before Yahweh in order to enter into the covenant of Yahweh and into the oath that Yahweh was making with them on that day. [29:12]

What did Yahweh want to do for the people of Israel through this covenant?

He wanted to make the people of Israel into a people for himself. [29:13]

What people were included in the covenant and oath that Yahweh was making with Israel that day in Moab?

Everyone standing that day in Moab and also those who were not there with them were included in the covenant and oath that Yahweh was making with Israel. [29:14]

What people were included in the covenant and oath that Yahweh was making with Israel that day in Moab?

Everyone standing that day in Moab and also those who were not there with them were included in the covenant and oath that Yahweh was making with Israel. [29:15]

About what were the people of Israel being reminded again?

They were being reminded how they had lived in the land of Egypt and how they had come through the midst of the nations through which they had passed. [29:16]

Why were the people being reminded of the disgusting things they had seen when they left Egypt?

They were being reminded of the disgusting things they had seen so that there would not be any among them whose heart would turn away from Yahweh, worship the gods of those nations and so that there would not be any root producing gall and wormwood among them. [29:17]

Why were the people being reminded of the disgusting things they had seen when they left Egypt?

They were being reminded of the disgusting things they had seen so that there would not be any among them whose heart would turn away from Yahweh, worship the gods of those nations and so that there would not be any root producing gall and wormwood among them. [29:18]

What should the person who hears the words of the curse not say in his heart?

The person who hears the words of the curse should not say that he will have peace though he walks in the stubbornness of his heart. [29:19]

What would happen to the man who says that he will have peace though he walks in the stubbornness of his heart?

Yahweh will not pardon him, Yahweh's anger and jealousy will smolder against him, all the curses written in the book will come on him and Yahweh will blot out his name from under heaven. [29:20]

What will the generation to come ask when they see the plagues on this land and the diseases with which Yahweh has made it sick?

They will ask why Yahweh did this to this land and what does the heat of this great anger mean. [29:22]

What will the generation to come ask when they see the plagues on this land and the diseases with which Yahweh has made it sick?

They will ask why Yahweh did this to this land and what does the heat of this great anger mean. [29:24]

How will people reply when the generation to come ask why Yahweh did this to the land?

The people will say that it is because they abandoned the covenant of Yahweh and because they went and worshiped other gods and bowed down to them, gods that they had not known and that he had not given to them. [29:25]

How will people reply when the generation to come ask why Yahweh did this to the land?

The people will say that it is because they abandoned the covenant of Yahweh and because they went and worshiped other gods and bowed down to them, gods that they had not known and that he had not given to them. [29:26]

What will the people say was kindled against this land?

The people will say that the anger of Yahweh was kindled against this land. [29:27]

What will the people say that Yahweh will do with those who he has uprooted from their land in anger?

The people will say that Yahweh, in anger, wrath and great fury has thrown them into another land. [29:28]

To whom do the secret matters belong?

The secret matters belong to Yahweh alone. [29:29]

To whom do things that are revealed belong?

the things that are revealed belong forever to the people of Israel and to their descendants so that they may do all the words of the law. [29:29]

Deuteronomy 30

What must the people of Israel do so that Yahweh will reverse their captivity and have compassion on them and return and gather them from all the peoples where Yahweh had scattered them?

They must return to Yahweh and obey his voice, follow all that he has commanded them with all their heart and with all their soul. [30:2]

What must the people of Israel do so that Yahweh will reverse their captivity and have compassion on them and return and gather them from all the peoples where Yahweh had scattered them?

They must return to Yahweh and obey his voice, follow all that he has commanded them with all their heart and with all their soul. [30:3]

From where will Yahweh gather Israel's exiled people?

Yahweh will gather Israel's exiled people from the farthest places under the heavens. [30:4]

To what place will Yahweh bring the exiled Israelites?

Yahweh will bring them into the land that their forefathers possessed. [30:5]

Why will Yahweh circumcise the hearts of the Israelites and their descendants?

Yahweh will circumcise their hearts so that they will love Yahweh their God with all their heart and with all of their soul and so that they could live. [30:6]

On whom will Yahweh put the curses that had been on the people of Israel?

Yahweh will put the curses on their enemies and on those who hate the people of Israel and have persecuted them. [30:7]

What will happen when the people of Israel return to Yahweh?

They will obey the voice of Yahweh and will do all his commandments that Moses commanded them. [30:8]

What will Yahweh do when he makes the people of Israel abundant in all the work of their hand, in the fruit of their body, in the fruit of their cattle and in the fruit of their ground, for prosperity?

Yahweh will rejoice over the people of Israel as he rejoiced over their fathers. [30:9]

What do the people of Israel need to do so that Yahweh will rejoice over them?

The people of Israel need to obey the voice of Yahweh their God, keep his commandments and statures that were written in the book of the law and turn to Yahweh with all their heart and all their soul. [30:10]

What does Moses say is not too hard for the people or too far for them to reach?

Moses says that the commandment that he is commanding to the people of Israel is not too hard for them or too far for them to reach. [30:11]

Where is the word located?

The word is very near to you, in your mouth and your heart, so that you may do it. [30:14]

What has Moses placed before the people of Israel?

Moses has placed life and good, death and evil before the people of Israel. [30:15]

What will happen if the people of Israel obey the decrees of Yahweh their God which Moses commanded them?

They will live and multiply and Yahweh will bless them in the land where they were going. [30:16]

What will happen to the people if their heart turns away and they do not listen, but instead their heart is drawn away, and if it bows down to other gods and worships them?

They will surely perish and they will not prolong their days in the land. [30:17]

What will happen to the people if their heart turns away and they do not listen, but instead their heart is drawn away, and if it bows down to other gods and worships them?

They will surely perish and they will not prolong their days in the land. [30:18]

What is Moses asking the people of Israel to choose as he calls heaven and earth to witness?

Moses is asking the people to choose life so that they and their descendants could live. [30:19]

Why should the people choose life?

They should choose life so as to love Yahweh their God, to obey his voice and to cling to him because he is their life and the length of their days. [30:20]

Deuteronomy 31

What did Moses tell all Israel about his advancing age?

He told them that he was now one hundred twenty years old and that he could no more go out and come in. [31:1]

What did Moses tell all Israel about his advancing age?

He told them that he was now one hundred twenty years old and that he could no more go out and come in. [31:2]

What did Yahweh tell Moses about going over the Jordan?

He told Moses that he would not be going over Jordan but God would go over Jordan ahead of Moses and would destroy the nations from before Israel. [31:2]

What did Yahweh tell Moses about going over the Jordan?

He told Moses that he would not be going over Jordan but God would go over Jordan ahead of Moses and would destroy the nations from before Israel. [31:3]

Who did Yahweh say would go over Jordan instead of Moses?

Yahweh told Moses that Joshua would go over the Jordan before Israel. [31:3]

What had Yahweh done to Sihon and to Og, the kings of the Amorites?

Yahweh had destroyed them and their land. [31:4]

What does Yahweh say he will do for Israel when they meet the nations in battle?

Yahweh says that he will give Israel victory over them when Israel meets them in battle. [31:5]

What instruction does Moses give to the Israelites?

Moses tells them to be strong, of good courage, not to fear and not to be afraid of the nations because Yahweh will go with them and will not fail or forsake them. [31:6]

What did Moses say to Joshua in the sight of all Israel?

Moses told Joshua to be strong and of good courage for Joshua would go with the people of Israel into the land that Yahweh swore to their ancestors to give to them and Yahweh will cause them to inherit the land. [31:7]

What did Moses tell Joshua that Yahweh would do for him?

Moses told Joshua that Yahweh would go before Joshua, be with him and Yahweh would not fail or abandon Joshua so Joshua should not be afraid or discouraged. [31:8]

To whom did Moses give the law after he wrote it?

Moses gave this law to the priests, the sons of Levi, who carried the ark and he also gave copies of it to all the elders of Israel. [31:9]

How often did Moses command the priests to read the law that Moses gave to them?

Moses commanded the priests to read the law at the end of every seven years, during the Festival of Shelters, in the hearing of all Israel. [31:10]

How often did Moses command the priests to read the law that Moses gave to them?

Moses commanded the priests to read the law at the end of every seven years, during the Festival of Shelters, in the hearing of all Israel. [31:11]

Why did Moses tell the priests to assemble the men, women, little ones and foreigners.

Moses told the priests to assemble all the people so that they could hear and learn, and honor Yahweh their God and keep all the words of the law and so that their children could hear and learn to honor Yahweh. [31:12]

Why did Moses tell the priests to assemble the men, women, little ones and foreigners.

Moses told the priests to assemble all the people so that they could hear and learn, and honor Yahweh their God and keep all the words of the law and so that their children could hear and learn to honor Yahweh. [31:13]

For how long should the priests read the law to the people of Israel?

The priests should read the law to the people for as long as they live in the land that they were going over the Jordan to possess it. [31:13]

Why did Yahweh tell Moses to call Joshua and present themselves in the tent of meeting?

Yahweh told Moses to call Joshua to the tent of meeting because the day was coming when Moses must die. [31:14]

What happen when Moses and Joshua presented themselves in the tent of meeting?

When Moses and Joshua presented themselves in the tent of meeting, Yahweh appeared in the tent in a pillar of cloud which stood over the door of the tent. [31:14]

What happen when Moses and Joshua presented themselves in the tent of meeting?

When Moses and Joshua presented themselves in the tent of meeting, Yahweh appeared in the tent in a pillar of cloud which stood over the door of the tent. [31:15]

How did Yahweh tell Moses the people would act after Moses went to sleep with his fathers?

Yahweh told Moses that the people would rise up, act like prostitutes going after the strange gods of the land and that they would forgot Yahweh and break Yahweh's covenant that he had made with them. [31:16]

What did Yahweh tell Moses he would do when the people forgot Yahweh's covenant?

Yahweh told Moses that on the day the people forsook his covenant, his anger would be kindled against them, he would abandon them, and he would hide his face from them. [31:17]

What did Yahweh tell Moses would happen to the people when Yahweh hid his face from them?

Yahweh told Moses that many disasters and troubles would find the people and he would hide his face from them because they turned to other gods. [31:17]

What did Yahweh tell Moses would happen to the people when Yahweh hid his face from them?

Yahweh told Moses that many disasters and troubles would find the people and he would hide his face from them because they turned to other gods. [31:18]

Why did Yahweh tell Moses to write a song and teach it to the people of Israel and put it in their mouths?

Yahweh told Moses to write a song and teach it to the people so that the song could be a witness for Yahweh against the people of Israel. [31:19]

What did Yahweh tell Moses the people would do when they were in the land that Yahweh swore to give to their ancestors?

Yahweh told Moses the people of Israel would turn to other gods, worship them, despise Yahweh and break his covenant. [31:20]

What did Yahweh tell Moses the song would do when many evils and troubles found the people of Israel?

Yahweh told Moses that the song would testify before Israel as a witness and it would not be forgotten out of the mouths of their descendants. [31:21]

What did Yahweh say he knew about the people even before he brought them into the land that he had sworn?

Yahweh said that he knew the plans that the people were forming today. [31:21]

How long did Moses wait before he wrote the song that Yahweh told him to write?

Moses wrote the song on the same day that Yahweh told him to write it and then he taught it to the people of Israel on that same day. [31:22]

What command did Yahweh give to Joshua, the son of Nun?

Yahweh commanded Joshua to be strong and of good courage. [31:23]

Why did Yahweh command Joshua to be strong and of good courage?

Yahweh told Joshua to be strong and of good courage because Joshua would bring the people of Israel into the land that Yahweh had sworn to them and Yahweh told Joshua that he would be with Joshua. [31:23]

To whom did Moses give the words of the law in a book when he had finished writing?

Moses gave the words of the law to the Levites who carried the ark of the testimony of Yahweh. [31:24]

To whom did Moses give the words of the law in a book when he had finished writing?

Moses gave the words of the law to the Levites who carried the ark of the testimony of Yahweh. [31:25]

What did Moses tell the Levites that they should do with the book of the law when he finished writing it?

Moses told the Levites to take the book of the law and put is by the side of the ark of the testimony of Yahweh their God so that it would be there as a witness against them. [31:25]

What did Moses tell the Levites that they should do with the book of the law when he finished writing it?

Moses told the Levites to take the book of the law and put is by the side of the ark of the testimony of Yahweh their God so that it would be there as a witness against them. [31:26]

What did Moses tell the Levites he knew about them even today, while he was still alive?

Moses told the Levites that he knew about their rebellion and how they had been rebellious against Yahweh. [31:27]

Why does Moses tell the Levites to assemble before him all the elders of their tribes and their officers?

Moses tells the Levites to assemble the elders and officers so that he could speak his words in their ears and call heaven and earth to witness against them. [31:28]

What does Moses say that he knows will happen after his death?

Moses says that after his death the people will utterly corrupt themselves and turn away from the path that Moses had commanded them. [31:29]

What does Moses say will happen when the people turn away from the path that Moses had commanded them?

Moses says that disaster will come on the people in the following days after they turn away from the path that Moses had commanded them. [31:29]

Why does Moses say disaster will come to the people?

Moses says disaster will come because they will do what is evil in the sight of Yahweh, so as to make him angry through the work of their hands. [31:29]

What did Moses sing in the ears of all the assembly of Israel?

Moses sang all the words of the song he had written. [31:30]

Deuteronomy 32

What is Moses asking the heavens and the earth to do?

Moses is asking the heavens to give ear and let him speak and he is asking the earth to listen to the words of his mouth. [32:1]

To what does Moses compare his teaching and his speech?

Moses compares his teaching to rain and his speech to dew. [32:2]

To whom name does Moses proclaim and ascribe greatness?

Moses proclaims the name of Yahweh and ascribes greatness to God. [32:3]

Whose works are perfect and paths are just?

The work of the Rock is perfect and his paths are just. [32:4]

Who has no iniquity and is just and upright?

God is faithful, has no iniquity and is just and upright. [32:4]

What does Moses call the people who have acted wickedly against Yahweh?

Moses calls them a wicked and crooked generation and foolish and senseless people. [32:5]

What does Moses call the people who have acted wickedly against Yahweh?

Moses calls them a wicked and crooked generation and foolish and senseless people. [32:6]

Who does Moses say made and established the people of Israel?

Moses says that Yahweh made and established the people of Israel. [32:6]

Of what does Moses say the fathers and elders will be able to remind the Israelites?

Moses says that the fathers and elders will be able to remind the Israelites about the days of ancient times and the years of many ages past. [32:7]

What does Moses say the fathers and elders can tell the people about when the Most High gave the nations their inheritance?

Moses said the the Most High divided all of mankind, and set the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the sons of Israel. [32:8]

What is Yahweh's portion and who is his apportioned inheritance?

Yahweh's portion is his people and Jacob is his apportioned inheritance. [32:9]

Where did Yahweh find Jacob (his people)?

Yahweh found Jacob (his people) in a desert land. [32:10]

What did Yahweh do for his people?

Yahweh shielded them, cared for them and guarded them as the apple of his eye. [32:10]

To what does Moses compare the way that Yahweh took care of his people?

Moses compares the way that Yahweh took care of his people to an eagle who guards her nest and flutters over her young. [32:11]

Who alone led the people of Israel?

Yahweh alone led the people of Israel. [32:12]

What happened when Jeshurun (Israel) grew fat?

When Jeshurun (Israel) grew fat and satisfied they abandoned and rejected Yahweh and made him jealous by their strange gods and angered him with their detestable idols. [32:15]

What happened when Jeshurun (Israel) grew fat?

When Jeshurun (Israel) grew fat and satisfied they abandoned and rejected Yahweh and made him jealous by their strange gods and angered him with their detestable idols. [32:16]

Who did God's people forget when they continued to rebel?

They forgot the God who gave them birth. [32:17]

Who did God's people forget when they continued to rebel?

They forgot the God who gave them birth. [32:18]

What did Yahweh do because his people provoked him?

Yahweh rejected his people because they provoked him. [32:19]

What did Yahweh do because his people provoked him?

Yahweh rejected his people because they provoked him. [32:20]

Who will Yahweh use to make Israel envious and angry?

Yahweh will make them envious by those who are not a people, and will make them angry by a nation that has no understanding. [32:21]

What did Yahweh say he would heap on Israel?

Yahweh said he would heap disasters on them. [32:23]

What would keep Yahweh from doing all that he threatened to his people?

Yahweh would keep from doing all that he threatened to his people because their enemies would judge mistakenly and say, "Our hand is exalted." [32:27]

Of what was Israel lacking as a nation?

Israel was lacking wisdom and there was no understanding in them. [32:28]

What does Moses want for Israel to consider?

Moses wants Israel to consider their coming fate. [32:29]

How is it that Israel can put their enemies to flight have victory over their enemies?

Israel can have victory because Yahweh has given them victory and the rock of their enemies is not like the Rock of the Israelites. [32:30]

How is it that Israel can put their enemies to flight have victory over their enemies?

Israel can have victory because Yahweh has given them victory and the rock of their enemies is not like the Rock of the Israelites. [32:31]

From where does the vine of the enemy come and what are how are the grapes described?

Their vine comes from Sodom and Gomorrah and their grapes are poisonous and bitter. [32:33]

How is the wine from the grapes of Sodom and Gomorrah described?

The wine is described as the poison of serpents and the venom of a snake. [32:33]

From where does the vine of the enemy come and what are how are the grapes described?

Their vine comes from Sodom and Gomorrah and their grapes are poisonous and bitter. [32:34]

How is the plan of Yahweh kept?

Yahweh's plan is kept by him and sealed up among his treasures. [32:34]

To whom does vengeance and recompense belong?

Vengeance and recompense belongs to Yahweh. [32:35]

How soon may the day of disaster and the things that are to come happen?

Disaster is near and the things to come will hurry to happen. [32:35]

Who will make decisions for his people and have pity on his servants?

Yahweh will decide for his people and he will pity his servants. [32:36]

From whom does help and protection not come for the people of Israel?

Protection and help does not come from the gods, the rock in whom they took refuge and who ate their sacrifices and drank their drink offerings. [32:37]

From whom does help and protection not come for the people of Israel?

Protection and help does not come from the gods, the rock in whom they took refuge and who ate their sacrifices and drank their drink offerings. [32:38]

Who does God say is a god besides him and what does God alone say that he can do?

God says that there is no god besides him and he alone will kill and make alive, wound and heal. [32:39]

What does God, who alone is God promise as he lifts up his hand to heaven?

As he lifts his hand to heaven he promises that as he lives forever, he will act. [32:40]

On whom will God bring justice and render vengeance?

God will bring justice and render vengeance on his enemies and those who hate him. [32:41]

From whom does God say that his arrows be drunk with blood and his sword devour flesh?

God's arrows will be drunk with the blood of the killed and captives and his sword will devour flesh from the heads of the leaders of the enemy? [32:42]

Who will rejoice with God's people when he avenges the blood of his servants and brings vengeance on his enemies?

The nations will rejoice with God's people. [32:43]

For whom will God make atonement for his land?

God will make atonement for his land, for his people. [32:43]

Who sang all the words of this song in the ears of the people?

Moses and Joshua sang this song in the ears of the people. [32:44]

Why are the people of Israel to fix their minds on the words that Moses has witnessed to them?

The people are to fix their minds on Moses' words so they could command their children to keep all the words of this law. [32:46]

Why did Yahweh tell Moses to go up into the mountains opposite Jericho?

Yahweh told Moses to go up to the mountains so that he could look at the land of Canaan which Yahweh was giving to the people of Israel as their possession. [32:48]

Why did Yahweh tell Moses to go up into the mountains opposite Jericho?

Yahweh told Moses to go up to the mountains so that he could look at the land of Canaan which Yahweh was giving to the people of Israel as their possession. [32:49]

What does Yahweh say will happen to Moses on the mountain?

Yahweh says that Moses will die on the mountain as Aaron had died on Mount Hor and was gathered to his people. [32:50]

Why did Yahweh say that Moses was going to die on the mountain?

Moses was going to die on the mountain because he was unfaithful to Yahweh at the waters of Meribah in Kadesh and because Moses did not treat Yahweh with honor and respect among the people of Israel. [32:50]

Why did Yahweh say that Moses was going to die on the mountain?

Moses was going to die on the mountain because he was unfaithful to Yahweh at the waters of Meribah in Kadesh and because Moses did not treat Yahweh with honor and respect among the people of Israel. [32:51]

What did Yahweh say that Moses would see before his death?

Yahweh said that Moses would see the land that Yahweh was giving to the people of Israel but he would not go there. [32:52]

Deuteronomy 33

When did Moses give this blessing to the people of Israel?

Moses gave this blessing to the people of Israel before his death. [33:1]

How does Moses describe Yahweh?

Moses describes Yahweh as one who shone out from Mout Paran, came with ten thousands of holy ones, and in his right hand there were flashes of lightning. [33:2]

How does Yahweh feel about the people of Israel?

Yahweh loves the people the people of Israel. [33:3]

How do the holy people of Israel respond to the love of Yahweh?

The holy people of Israel bow down at Yahweh's feet and receive Yahweh's words. [33:3]

What does Moses say about the law that he commanded to the people?

Moses calls the law an inheritance for the assembly of Jacob. [33:4]

What did Yahweh become when the heads of the people and all the tribes of Israel had gathered?

Yahweh became king in Jeshurun (Israel). [33:5]

What did Moses say would happen to Reuben?

Moses said that Reuben would live and not die but his men would be few. [33:6]

What is the blessing that Moses gives to Judah?

Moses asks Yahweh to bless Judah by listening to the voice of Judah, bringing him to his people and fighting for him. [33:7]

What does Moses tell the Levites to do in his blessing to them?

Moses tells the Levites to teach Yahweh's decrees, put incense and burnt offerings on Yahweh's altar, to bless Yahweh and accept the work of his hands and to shatter the loins of those who rise up against Yahweh. [33:8]

What does Moses tell the Levites to do in his blessing to them?

Moses tells the Levites to teach Yahweh's decrees, put incense and burnt offerings on Yahweh's altar, to bless Yahweh and accept the work of his hands and to shatter the loins of those who rise up against Yahweh. [33:10]

What does Moses tell the Levites to do in his blessing to them?

Moses tells the Levites to teach Yahweh's decrees, put incense and burnt offerings on Yahweh's altar, to bless Yahweh and accept the work of his hands and to shatter the loins of those who rise up against Yahweh. [33:11]

What does Moses say about Benjamin's blessing?

Yahweh says that Benjamin is the one loved by Yahweh, Yahweh shields him all day long and he lives between Yahweh's arms. [33:12]

Who was prince over his brothers?

Joseph was prince over his brothers. [33:16]

What will the ten thousands of Ephraim and the thousands of Manasseh do?

They will push the peoples, all of them, to the ends of the earth. [33:17]

From where does Moses say the blessings of Zebulun and Issachar will come?

The blessings of Zebulun and Issachar will come from the mountains, the abundance of the seas and from the sand hidden in the seashore. [33:18]

From where does Moses say the blessings of Zebulun and Issachar will come?

The blessings of Zebulun and Issachar will come from the mountains, the abundance of the seas and from the sand hidden in the seashore. [33:19]

How does Moses say Gad will live as his territory is enlarged?

Gad will live there like a lioness and tear off an arm or a head. [33:20]

What did Gad carry out for Yahweh?

Gad carried out the justice of Yahweh and his decrees with Israel. [33:21]

How did Moses describe Dan?

Moses described Dan as a lion cub that leaps out from Bashan. [33:22]

What land did Moses say Naphtali will take?

Naphtali will take possession of the land to the west and south. [33:23]

What does Moses say about the blessing for Asher?

Moses says that Asher will be more blessed than the other sons, that he might dip his foot in olive oil and that he will be secure for all his day. [33:24]

What does Moses say about the blessing for Asher?

Moses says that Asher will be more blessed than the other sons, that he might dip his foot in olive oil and that he will be secure for all his day. [33:25]

What did Moses say God will do to Jeshurun's (Israel's) enemies?

Moses said God would thrust out Jeshurun's (Israel's) enemies from before them and that God will say, "Destroy!" [33:27]

How will Jacob's descendants live?

Jacob's descendants will live safely and securely in a land of grain and new wine. [33:28]

How does Moses describing Israel?

Moses describes Israel as blessed and a people saved by Yahweh, whose enemies will come trembling to them. [33:29]

Deuteronomy 34

From where was Moses shown all the lands that the tribes of Israel would possess?

Moses was shown all the land that the tribes of Israel would posses from the top of Pisgah. [34:1]

From where was Moses shown all the lands that the tribes of Israel would possess?

Moses was shown all the land that the tribes of Israel would posses from the top of Pisgah. [34:2]

From where was Moses shown all the lands that the tribes of Israel would possess?

Moses was shown all the land that the tribes of Israel would posses from the top of Pisgah. [34:3]

What did Yahweh allow Moses to see before he died?

Yahweh allowed Moses to see the land that Yahweh swore to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. [34:4]

Where did Moses die and where did Yahweh bury Moses?

Moses died in the land of Moab and Yahweh buried him in the valley in the land of Moab opposite Beth Peor. [34:6]

What was Moses physical condition when he died at one hundred twenty years of age?

When Moses died he was still strong and could see well. [34:7]

How long did the people of Israel mourn for Moses?

The people mourned for Moses for thirty days. [34:8]

Why did the people of Israel listen to Joshua and do what Yahweh had commanded Moses?

The people of Israel listened to Joshua because Joshua was full of the spirit of wisdom, and Moses had laid his hands on him. [34:9]

How was Moses known by Yahweh?

Yahweh knew Moses face to face. [34:10]

Has there ever been a prophet like Moses in Israel?

There has never been any prophet like Moses in all of Israel. [34:10]

Has there ever been a prophet like Moses in Israel?

There has never been any prophet like Moses in all of Israel. [34:11]

Has there ever been a prophet like Moses in Israel?

There has never been any prophet like Moses in all of Israel. [34:12]

translationWords

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 3:28-29

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:21
- Deuteronomy 14:3-5
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 17:1
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 22:1-2
- Deuteronomy 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 25:4
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 33:17

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7

shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: false god, humble, humiliate, Isaiah, repent, sin, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17-18
- 2 Samuel 13:13-14
- Luke 20:11-12
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H6172, H7022, H7036, H8103, H8106, G127, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3856, G5195

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:13-14
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:5-7
- Numbers 16:44-46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 9:19-20
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

abomination, abominations, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:33-34
- Isaiah 01:12-13
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Proverbs 26:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:31-32
- Deuteronomy 17:1

- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 22:5
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:6-9
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- James 02:21-24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

acacia

Definition:

The term “acacia” is the name of a common shrub or tree growing in the land of Canaan in ancient times; it is still plentiful in that region today.

- The orange-brown wood of the acacia tree is very hard and durable, making it a useful material for building things.
- This wood is highly resistant to decay because it is so very dense that it keeps out water, and it has natural preservatives that keep insects from destroying it.
- In the Bible, acacia wood was used to build the tabernacle and the ark of the covenant.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ark of the covenant, tabernacle)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 38:6-7
- Isaiah 41:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7848

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:3-4

accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:38-41
- Hosea 04:4-5
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3198, H8799, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:13-14
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17

acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted

Facts:

The term “acknowledge” means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, “acknowledge” could be translated as “admit” or “declare” or “confess to be true” or “believe.”
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as “accept” or “recognize the value of” or “tell others that (the person) is faithful.”
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as “believe and obey God” or “declare who God is” or “tell other people about how great God is” or “confess that what God says and does is true.”

(See also: obey, glory, save)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:38-39
- Jeremiah 09:4-6
- Job 34:26-28
- Leviticus 22:31-33
- Psalm 029:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3045, H3046, H5046, H5234, H6942, G1492, G1921, G3670

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 33:9

acquit, acquits, acquitted

Definition:

The term “acquit” means to formally declare someone to be not guilty of an unlawful or immoral behavior he was accused of.

- This term is sometimes used in the Bible to talk about forgiving sinners.
- Often the context is about wrongly acquitting people who are wicked and rebel against God.
- This could be translated as “declare innocent” or “judge to be not guilty.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, sin)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 23:6-9
- Isaiah 05:22-23
- Job 10:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3444, H5352, H5355, H6403, H6663

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses

Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife." (See: euphemism)
- When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, sleep with, faithful)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:12-14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:27-28
- Matthew 12:38-40
- Revelation 02:22-23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** "Do not commit **adultery**."

- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:17-20

adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a tronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Isaiah 09:11-12
- Job 06:21-23
- Lamentations 04:12-13
- Luke 12:57-59
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:54
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 32:42

- Deuteronomy 32:43
- Deuteronomy 33:7
- Deuteronomy 33:29

afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Amos 05:12-13
- Colossians 01:24-27
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7

age, ages, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:26-28
- 1 Corinthians 02:6-7
- Hebrews 06:4-6
- Job 05:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2465, G165, G1074

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:7-8

alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17-18
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- Luke 17:17-19
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 10:18-19
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12

- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 23:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 27:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13

altar, altars

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27

- Deuteronomy 16:21-22
- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 27:4-5
- Deuteronomy 33:10

Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites

Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, David, Esau, Negev, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:42-43
- 2 Samuel 01:8-10
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Numbers 14:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:17-19

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- (See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19-20
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- Zephaniah 02:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4

Amorite, Amorites

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:9-10
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. ***15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. ***15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. ***15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28

- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 4:47-49
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6

ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 07:31-32
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 22:3-5
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:11-12
- Joshua 24:3-4

- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:4-5

- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 31:16
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18

anger, angered, angry

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: wrath)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:13-14
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Psalms 018:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 3:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:17-18
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18

- Deuteronomy 19:6-7
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:22

appoint, appoints, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Acts 03:19-20
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 13:48-49
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 20:8-9

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Sea of Reeds, Jordan River, Canaan, Salt Sea, Egypt)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:28-29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1026, H6160

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Deuteronomy 4:47-49
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30

Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic

Definition:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- 2 Samuel 08:5-6
- Amos 01:5
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:11-12
- Psalm 060:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H758, H763, G689

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 26:5

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:14-15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 07:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26

arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance

Definition:

The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:17-18
- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Proverbs 16:5-6
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1346, H1347, H6277

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 17:12-13
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 18:22

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:12-13
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H836

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25

Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. "Ashtoreth" may be another name for "Asherah," or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term "Asherah poles" refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah's husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: false god, Baal, Gideon, image, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- 2 Kings 21:1-3
- Isaiah 27:9
- Judges 03:7-8
- Micah 05:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H842, H6252, H6253

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:21-22

asleep, fall asleep, fell asleep, fallen asleep, sleep, sleeps, slept, sleeping, sleeper, sleepless, sleepy

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:13-15
- Acts 07:59-60
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Psalms 044:23-24
- Romans 13:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 31:16

assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- Acts 07:38-40
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:22
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:7-8
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 31:30
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

atonement, atone, atones, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:43

avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:46-47
- Romans 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 32:43

ax, axes

Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:4-5
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Psalm 035:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1631, H4621, H7134, G513

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:19-20

Baal

Facts:

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
- Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, Elijah, false god, prostitute, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Judges 02:11-13
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!"
- **19:07** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, "Hear us, O **Baal**!"
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1120, G896

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:3-4

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Revelation 02:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:38-40
- Judges 07:13-14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G2915, G2916

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8

barren

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:26-27
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Job 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7909, H7921, G692, G4723

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- Amos 04:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 4:47-49
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 32:14
- Deuteronomy 33:22

basket, baskets, basketfuls

Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: ark, Moses, Nile River, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:32-33
- Acts 09:23-25
- Amos 08:1-3
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:16-17

beast, beasts

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:15-18
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26

believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”

- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41-42
- John 01:12-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 09:40-43
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:3-4
- 1 Corinthians 06:1-3
- 1 Corinthians 09:3-6
- 2 Corinthians 06:14-16
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- 1 John 03:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, ”I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared

over the heads of all the **believers**.

- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesusâ€¦It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:32
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14-16
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 John 04:7-8
- Mark 01:9-11
- Mark 12:6-7
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Romans 16:6-8
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:15-17

Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1144, G958

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 33:12

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:18-19

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14-16
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5352, H5355, G273, G274, G298, G338, G410, G423

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 18:12-14

blemish, blemishes, unblemished

Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: believe, clean, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:18-19
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 06:13-15
- Song of Solomon 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H8400, H8549, G3470

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Deuteronomy 17:1

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** ”I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, ”May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 08 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8:9-10
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 14:24-25
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:18
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:15
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 23:19-20

- Deuteronomy 24:12-13
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:7
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:23
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25
- Deuteronomy 33:29

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- Acts 02:20-21
- Acts 05:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:10-12
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 22:8
- Deuteronomy 32:42
- Deuteronomy 32:43

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “The bloodshed” could be translated as “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “Through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “Innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “Bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you,” could be translated as “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: blood slaughter)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Hebrews 09:21-22
- Isaiah 26:20-21
- Matthew 23:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, G2210

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:8-9

blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23-24
- Psalm 051:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H4229, G631, G1591, G1813

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 9:13-14
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21

body, bodies

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- Ephesians 04:4-6
- Judges 14:7-9
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:8-9
- Romans 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53

bow and arrow, bows and arrows

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Psalms 058:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:42

bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:4-5
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Revelation 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche)
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 27:33-35
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 06:37-38
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:3

- Deuteronomy 8:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:17-18
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6

breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: Adam, Paul, word of God, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17-18
- Ecclesiastes 08:8-9
- Job 04:7-9
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 13:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, H7309, G1709, G1720, G4157

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 20:16-18

bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery

Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as, “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- To “bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to “pay to influence (someone)” or to “pay to have a dishonest favor done” or to “pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 07:7
- Isaiah 01:23
- Micah 03:9-11
- Proverbs 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 27:24-25

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 2:4-5
- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 20:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 33:16

burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Genesis 49:14-15
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Matthew 23:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:12-14

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Mark 12:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:13-14
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27
- Deuteronomy 27:6-8
- Deuteronomy 33:10

bury, buries, buried, burying, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:32-33
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 27:6-8
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

Caleb

Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hebron, Joshua)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:13-16
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 01:11-13
- Numbers 32:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

***14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. ***14:06** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!” ***14:08** ”Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land.”

so that they could live at peace in that land.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3612, H3614

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:34-35

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

camel, camels

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:23-25
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:6-7

Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49

captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5-6
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 43:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:10-12
- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:42

cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:28-29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24-25
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23

- Deuteronomy 18:12-14

chariot, chariots, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29-31
- Acts 08:36-38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:1

chief, chiefs

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:1-2
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 29:10-11

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
- children of the light
- children of obedience
- children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 24:16
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47

chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:1-3
- Colossians 03:12-14
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:6-8
- Matthew 24:19-22

- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21:5

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25-26
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”

- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:9-11
- Genesis 17:12-14
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Joshua 05:2-3
- Judges 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 01:17-20
- Jeremiah 09:25-26
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:1-3
- Acts 15:1-2
- Acts 11:1-3
- Romans 02:25-27
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Ephesians 02:11-12
- Philippians 03:1-3
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:16-17

- Deuteronomy 30:6-8

clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," or "free from sin."

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."

translationWordsclean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Psalms 051:7-9
- Proverbs 20:29-30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Luke 05:12-13
- Acts 08:6-8
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- James 04:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- Deuteronomy 14:9-10
- Deuteronomy 14:11-13
- Deuteronomy 14:18-20
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:9-11
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14

column, columns, pillar, pillars

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:21-22
- Deuteronomy 31:14-15

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:41-42
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 2:4-5
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:16
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 5:31
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:6-7
- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 10:5
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:13-14
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22

- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 12:31-32
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 18:17-19
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 19:6-7
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22:6-7
- Deuteronomy 24:5
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:14-15
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 34:9

commander, commanders

Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term to “command” an army could be translated as to “lead” or to “be in charge of.”

(See also: command, ruler, centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14-16
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 20:8-9

commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:6-7
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Psalm 058:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:20-21

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3

condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as,“judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- Job 09:27-29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:7-8
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:21-22
- Romans 05:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2

confirm, confirms, confirmed, confirmation

Definition:

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21-22
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H553, H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G1991, G2964, G3315, G4300, G4972

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 27:26

consume, consumes, consumed, consuming

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:8-10
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H1497, H1846, H2000, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3631, H3857, H4127, H4529, H4743, H5486, H5487, H5595, H6244, H6789, H7332, H7646, H7829, H8046, H8552, G355, G1159, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315, G5723

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:25-27

- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 20:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39

corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Exodus 20:15-17
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 027:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:17-20
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19

corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:11-12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1097, H1605, H2254, H2610, H4167, H4743, H4889, H4893, H7843, H7844, H7845, G853, G862, G1311, G1312, G2585, G2704, G4550, G4595, G5349, G5351, G5356

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:15-18
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:54-55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:24-26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G2681, G4259

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:10-11
- Numbers 14:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10

covenant, covenants, new covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:22-25
- Luke 01:72-75
- Luke 22:19-20
- Acts 07:6-8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:4-6
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** ”I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

Uses:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7:2-3
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 9:15-16
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 31:16

- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 33:9

cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15-16
- Luke 14:4-6
- Hebrews 09:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:34-35
- Deuteronomy 3:5-7
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 9:21
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 20:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10

create, creates, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, ”since the time when God created the world was created.

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15-17

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6

creature, creatures

Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: create)

Bible References:

- Daniel 04:10-12
- Ezekiel 01:7-9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H255, H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G2226, G2937, G2938

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:15-18

crime, crimes, criminal, criminals

Definition:

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:8-10
- Hosea 06:8-9
- Job 31:26-28
- Luke 23:32
- Matthew 27:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G156, G1462, G2556, G2557, G4467

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2

cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase “cry out” also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:8-10
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H603, H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7769, H7771, H7773, H7775, H8173, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15

cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. Thsi kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:14-16
- Acts 08:6-8
- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 06:17-19
- Luke 08:43-44
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. ***21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. ***26:06** Jesus continued saying, ”And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” ***26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. ***32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, ”I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” ***44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the

lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. ***44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah." ***49:02**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3444, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G4991, G5198, G5199

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- James 03:9-10
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Psalms 109:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21
- Deuteronomy 27:22-23
- Deuteronomy 27:26
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 29 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20

cut off, cuts off, cutting off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- Proverbs 23:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Jerusalem, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:34-35
- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 30:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1835, H1839, H2051

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 33:22
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- 2 Samuel 22:10-12
- Colossians 01:13-14
- Isaiah 05:29-30
- Jeremiah 13:15-17
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 5:22
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:8-10
- Acts 02:25-26
- Acts 13:21-22
- Luke 01:30-33
- Mark 02:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. ***17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. ***17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

***17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. ***17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. ***17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

day, days

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:4-6
- Daniel 10:4-6
- Ezra 06:13-15
- Ezra 06:19-20
- Matthew 09:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:13-14
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:32

deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:62-64
- Micah 06:11-12

deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, dec

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:16-17

declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: proclaim)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:23-24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:15-16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14

decree, decrees, decreed

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: command, declare, law, proclaim)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:12-13
- Esther 01:21-22
- Luke 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:31
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23

- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 11:31-32
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 33:10
- Deuteronomy 33:21

dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 20:5

deer, doe, does, fawns, roebuck, roebucks

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The term “buck” refers to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roedeer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:34-35
- Genesis 49:19-21
- Job 39:1-2
- Psalms 018:33-34
- Song of Solomon 02:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H354, H355, H365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:3-5

defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: clean, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:22-23

deliver, delivers, delivered, delivering, deliverer, deliverance

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:8-10
- Acts 07:35-37
- Galatians 01:3-5
- Judges 10:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1350, H2020, H2502, H3052, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4560, H4672, H5337, H5338, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6308, H6403, H6405, H6413, H6475, H6487, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8000, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G859, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:30-31

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, false god, angel, evil, clean)

Bible References:

- James 02:18-20
- James 03:15-18
- Luke 04:35-37
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 04:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.

- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:17-18

descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23-25
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:09** ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” ***04:09** ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” ***05:10** ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” ***17:07** ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!” ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:12

- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:37-38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14-15
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:1-3
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 1:39-40
- Deuteronomy 2:1-3
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2

- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 11:4-5
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

detest, detested, detestable

Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.” (See also: divination, clean)

Bible References:

- Genesis 43:32-34
- Jeremiah 07:29-30
- Leviticus 11:9-10
- Luke 16:14-15
- Revelation 17:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1602, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946, G947, G948, G4767, G5723, G3404

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:15-16

devour, devours, devoured, devouring

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:8-9
- Amos 01:9-10
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:22
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:42

die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "spiritual death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Colossians 02:20-23
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** ”Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, ”I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** ”Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G615, G622, G684, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:16-19

- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:8-9
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:6-7
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 20:5
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:22
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 22:25-27
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 24:16
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:14-15
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline

Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:4
- Hebrews 12:4-6
- Proverbs 19:17-18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:4-6

dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as to “not honor” or to “treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:10-11
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- John 08:48-49
- Leviticus 18:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6172, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G987, G2617

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:16-17

disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:20-22
- Acts 26:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, ”You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** ”The older son said to his father, ’All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, false god, magic, sorcery)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- Acts 16:16-18
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 18:12-14

divorce

Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:1-2
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:3-4
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15-16
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:21
- Deuteronomy 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31

doorpost

Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: Egypt, Passover)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:31-32
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Exodus 12:5-8
- Isaiah 57:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H4201

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Genesis 37:5-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler. ***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**. ***08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine." ***16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!" ***23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:1-3

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:28-30
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:37-38

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:12-14
- Luke 07:33-35
- Luke 21:34-35
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7302, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:42

eagle, eagles

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: Daniel, free, Nebuchadnezzar, power)

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23-24
- Daniel 07:4-5
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 04:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, H7360, G105

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:11-13
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 32:11-12

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51-53
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Zechariah 06:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:23-25

- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:22
- Deuteronomy 33:16

Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:7-8

Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:9-10
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- Matthew 02:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 10:18-19
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:4-5
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 20:1
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4

- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

elder, elders

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:15
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19

- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: miracle, prophet, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:02** **Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel. ***19:02** **Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so." ***19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat. ***19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty. ***19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again. ***19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire." ***19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!" ***36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

Elisha

Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Elijah, Naaman, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Luke 04:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H477

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: free, righteous, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:3-5
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Definition:

The word for "servant" can also mean "slave" and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

(See: Metaphor)

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, serve)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:21
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 23:15-16
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 32:36
- Deuteronomy 32:43
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something. *Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.* Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse. (See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:1-3
- Exodus 20:15-17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:21
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:54
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 32:21

Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54-55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H669, H673, G2187

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom, Isaac, Jacob, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34-35
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Romans 09:10-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**. ***07:02** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son. ***07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him. ***07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing. ***07:10** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:4-5

- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 2:12
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include“unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:39-40

- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 13:15-16
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40
- Deuteronomy 33:14-15
- Deuteronomy 33:27

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5104, H6578, G2166

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- 3 John 01:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:17-18
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 19:20-21
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21

- Deuteronomy 22:22
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 23:9-11
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 25:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29

ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32-33
- Genesis 30:31-32
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 15:3-5
- Mark 06:33-34
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 12:11-12
- Matthew 25:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, ”All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ’I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:3-5
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 17:1
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 22:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:14

exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47-49
- Acts 05:29-32
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46-47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:27

exile, exiles, exiled

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 30:4-5

face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, ”You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, ”Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, ”Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Joshua 02:14

- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:5-7
- Luke 12:45-46
- Luke 16:10-12
- Colossians 01:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- 3 John 01:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

family, families

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- Exodus 01:20-22
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19

favor, favors, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

To “favor” is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term “favoritism” means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor”with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:26-27
- Genesis 41:14-16
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Genesis 50:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5869, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H6491, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G5485, G5486

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 24:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:23

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “fear” can be translated as to “be afraid” or to “deeply respect” or to “revere” or to “be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 2:4-5
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 9:19-20
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 17:12-13
- Deuteronomy 18:22
- Deuteronomy 19:20-21
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

Facts:

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal that could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering, which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: burnt offering, fulfill, grain offering, guilt offering, peace offering, priest, sacrifice, unleavened bread, vow)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Numbers 06:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8002

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:6-8

festival, festivals

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
- Passover
- Festival of Unleavened Bread
- Firstfruits
- Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
- Festival of Trumpets
- Day of Atonement
- Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Exodus 05:1-2
- John 04:43-45
- Luke 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:13-14
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11

fig, figs

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 13:6-7
- Mark 11:13-14
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8

fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:5-7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:32
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:31-32
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2

- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:22

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:32-34
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 33:17

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, belivers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- Psalms 105:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 18:3-5

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 John 01:7-8
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 32:42

flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, ox, pig, sheep,)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30-32
- Matthew 26:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21

- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 32:14

fool, fools, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:16-18
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:1-3
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 25:7-9
- Proverbs 13:15-16
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6

forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:15-17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:10-11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:1-2
- Luke 05:20-21

- Acts 08:20-23
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21

forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:18-19

- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 31:16

found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.” (See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:28-30
- Matthew 13:34-35
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:22

fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Genesis 07:11-12
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Genesis 24:12-14
- Genesis 24:42-44
- James 03:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H794, H953, H1530, H1543, H1876, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H6780, H7823, H8444, H8666, G242, G305, G393, G985, G1530, G1816, G4077, G4855, G5453

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Deuteronomy 33:28

free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G572, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:18
- Deuteronomy 24:5
- Deuteronomy 32:36

freewill offering, freewill offerings

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, feast, grain offering, guilt offering, law, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10

fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces–”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural ,“fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”

- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 20:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:13

fulfill, fulfilled

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:20-22
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, ”I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** ”This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** ”This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:21-23

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:How to Translate Names)

(See also: census, prophet, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18-19
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 33:20

gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:23-25
- Acts 10:17-18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- Matthew 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:5-7
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9

- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 16:5
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:15
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:54
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13

Gaza

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Philip, Philistines, Ethiopia, Gath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Acts 08:26-28
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:23

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Mark 08:11-13
- Matthew 11:16-17
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34-35

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:34-35

- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20

Geshur, Geshurites

Definition:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.

(See also: Absalom, Amnon, Aram, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:23-24
- 2 Samuel 03:2-3
- Deuteronomy 03:14
- Joshua 12:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1650

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:14

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Amos 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

Gilgal

Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Elijah, , Elisha, Jericho, Jordan River)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 07:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:1-2
- Hosea 04:15-16
- Judges 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1537

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:29-30

Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan , Ham, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- Deuteronomy 07:1
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622### Uses:
- Deuteronomy 7:1

glean, gleans, gleaned, gleanings

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
- A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, grain, harvest, Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:5-7
- Ruth 02:1-2
- Ruth 02:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955### Uses:
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22

glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to “give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- Luke 18:42-43
- Luke 02:8-9
- John 12:27-29
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:16-17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:18-20
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811, G4888

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:23-24

- Deuteronomy 28:58-59

goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:31-32
- Genesis 31:10-11
- Genesis 37:31-33
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H1601, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H6939, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:3-5
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 32:14

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 1:25
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 1:32
- Deuteronomy 1:41-42
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:29
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 5:11
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:16
- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2

- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:2-3
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:3
- Deuteronomy 9:15-16
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29

- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:1
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 18:12-14
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 20:1
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 22:5
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16

- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:26

god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26

- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 12:31-32
- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:16
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:11-12
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:6-7
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Daniel 02:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19

Gomorrah

Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham , Babylon, Lot, Salt Sea, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:4-6
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:20-21
- Isaiah 01:9
- Matthew 10:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:32

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- James 03:13-14
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God plantedâ€¦the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 12:28

grain, grains, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:1-2
- Mark 02:23-24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Deuteronomy 25:4
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 33:28

grape, grapes, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individiual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:31-33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H2490, H3196, H5563, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Deuteronomy 32:14
- Deuteronomy 32:32

grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:5-6
- Genesis 50:4-6
- John 19:40-42
- Luke 23:52-53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Romans 03:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, ”In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, ”Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1164, H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G86, G2750, G3418, G3419, G5028

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:6-7
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:4-6
- Jonah 01:14-16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, ”I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, ”He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, ”He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, ”Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:11
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 25:1-2

had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: Euphemism)

- The expression "sleep with" someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is "slept with."
- In the Old Testament book "Song of Solomon," the ULB uses the term "lovemaking" to translate the word "love," which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression "make love to."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate "sleep with": "lie with" or "make love to" or "be intimate with."
- Other ways to translate "have relations with" could include "have sexual relations with" or "have marital relations with."
- The term "lovemaking" could also be translated as "loving" or "intimacy." Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:1-2
- 1 Samuel 01:19-20
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Matthew 01:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H160, H935, H1540, H2181, H2233, H3045, H3212, H6172, H7250, H7901, H7903, G1097

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 22:13-14
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms “Hades” and “Sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “Sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “Hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “Hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “Sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “Hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the words “Sheol” and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: death, heaven, hell, tomb)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 44:27-29
- Jonah 02:1-2
- Luke 10:13-15
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 11:23-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Revelation 01:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7585, G86

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:22

hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?" (See: metonymy)
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 08:14-17
- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 14:19-20
- John 03:34-36
- Mark 07:31-32
- Matthew 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 13:8-9

- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:15
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 27:15
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:32
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 34:9

hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung

Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person’s neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39-41
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:22-23

hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, evil, heart, labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Exodus 14:4-5

- Hebrews 04:6-7
- John 12:39-40
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H280, H386, H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5539, H5564, H5646, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6277, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G1425, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912, G4927

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:7-8

harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:10-11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9-10
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:13-14
- Deuteronomy 16:15
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 32:22
- Deuteronomy 33:14-15

head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations." This could be translated as "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over..."
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for "head" is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph. (See: synecdoche)
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H1627, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:12-14
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 32:42
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:21

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:16-18
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15
- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:29
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 6:6-7
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 20:8-9
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3

- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:13-14
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, ”Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, ”This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:15-18
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26

- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 30:4-5
- Deuteronomy 30:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40
- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 33:26
- Deuteronomy 33:28

Hebrew, Hebrews

Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:14-15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:12-13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447### Uses:
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14

high place, high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: altar, false god, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:3-4
- Amos 04:12-13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 06:1-3
- Habakkuk 03:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1116, H1181, H1354, H2073, H4791, H7311, H7413

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:13
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Hittite, Hittites

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:7-8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18

Hivite, Hivites

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:1-3
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: holy, God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20-21
- 2 Kings 19:20-22
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Isaiah 05:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14-15
- Luke 04:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H376, H6918, G40, G3741

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:1-2

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, bread, consecrate, courtyard, curtain, holy, set apart, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- Acts 06:12-15
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezra 09:8-9
- Hebrews 09:1-2
- Leviticus 16:17-19
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”

- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 11:7-10
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:21-23
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** ”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** ”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** ”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** ”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:21-22

- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:6-7
- Proverbs 05:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G2781, G3192, G3193

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:13

honor, honors

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:16

- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

hoof, hoofs, hooves

Facts:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

- An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
- Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
- God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: camel, cow, donkey, goat, ox, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Leviticus 11:3-4
- Psalms 069:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6119, H6471, H6536, H6541, H7272

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:6-7

Horeb

Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the “mountain of God.”
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: covenant, Israel, Moses, Sinai, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 05:9-10
- Deuteronomy 01:1-2
- Exodus 03:1-3
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2722

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:15-18
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 29:1

horror, horrors, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying

Definition:

The term “horror” refers to a very intense feeling of fear or terror. The person who is feeling horror is said to be “horrified.”

- Horror is more dramatic and intense than ordinary fear.
- Usually when someone is horrified they are also in shock or stunned.

(See also: fear, terror)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Ezekiel 23:33-34
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Job 21:4-6
- Psalms 055:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H1091, H1763, H2152, H2189, H4032, H4923, H5892, H6343, H6427, H7588, H8047, H8074, H8175, H8178, H8186

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:36-37

horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:4-5
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 20:1

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:12-13
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 12:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:17-18

house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:47-50
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 08:38-39
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 15:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 22:8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11

household, households

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 34:18-19
- John 04:53-54
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Philippians 04:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21

humble, humbles, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:19-21
- James 03:13-14
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 14:10-11
- Luke 18:13-14
- Matthew 18:4-6
- Matthew 23:11-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:3

humiliate, humiliated, humiliation

Facts:

The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”

- When God in humbling someone it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”

(See also: disgrace · humble · shame)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Ezra 09:5-6
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H937, H954, H1421, H2778, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H6030, H6031, H6256, H7034, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8216, H8213, H8217, H8589, G2617, G5014

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 25:3

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:20-22
- Romans 01:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179, G5481

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:15-18

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast m

- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 27:15

incense, incenses

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:10

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 3:28-29
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:12

- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:14
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

iniquity, iniquities

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression “innocent blood” could be translated as “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said “I have betrayed innocent blood,” he was saying “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- Acts 20:25-27
- Exodus 23:6-9
- Jeremiah 22:17-19
- Job 09:21-24
- Romans 16:17-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God." *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 27:24-25

inquire, inquires, inquired, inquiries

Facts:

The term “inquire” means to ask someone for information. The expression “inquire of” is often used to refer to asking God for wisdom or help.

- The Old Testament records several instances where people inquired of God.
- The word can also be used of a king or government official making a search through official written records.
- Depending on the context, “inquire” could be translated as “ask” or “ask for information.”
- The expression “inquire of Yahweh” could be translated as “ask Yahweh for guidance” or “ask Yahweh what to do.”
- To “inquire after” something could be translated as “ask questions about” or “ask for information about.”
- When Yahweh says “I will not be inquired of by you,” this could be translated as “I will not allow you to ask me for information” or “you will not be permitted to seek help from me.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezra 07:14-16
- Job 10:4-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1240, H1245, H1875, G1830

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:17-19

instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: command, decree, teach)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:4-5
- Genesis 26:4-5
- Hebrews 11:20-22
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 11:1-3
- Proverbs 01:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H5657, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, H8738, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2322, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3614, G3615, G3624, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19-20
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:17-18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**." ***05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me." ***05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**. ***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.** ***06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11-13
- Acts 07:44-46
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 33:10
- Deuteronomy 33:28
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, ”This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** ”Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 2:12
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:1-2
- Deuteronomy 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 23:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 25:3
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10

- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 31:30
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29
- Deuteronomy 32:44-45
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:21
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Manasseh, Naphtali, twelve tribes of Israel, Zebulun)

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Genesis 30:16-18
- Joshua 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G2466

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20-21
- Deuteronomy 05:9-10
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 36:4-6
- Joshua 24:19-20
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:21

Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:77-79
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35-37
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**. ***15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land. ***15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho. ***19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29

- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 3:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 4:47-49
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:02** **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. ***08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt. ***08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him. ***08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. ***08:09** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. ***09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:11-12

- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 33:16

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21-22
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Joshua 01:1-3
- Numbers 27:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

***14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land." ***14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.

***14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 3:28-29
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:14-15
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 32:44-45
- Deuteronomy 34:9

joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:6-7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29-30
- Acts 16:32-34

translationWordsjoy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoic

- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 16:13-14
- Deuteronomy 16:15
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11
- Deuteronomy 27:6-8
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:43
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- Luke 03:33-35
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 33:7
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

judge, judges

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: governor, judge, law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:26-28
- Luke 11:18-20
- Luke 12:13-15
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 25:3

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:13-15
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 25:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:27

just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)

- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 18:6-8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:3-4
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:18-19
- Deuteronomy 15 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 21 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 27:18-19
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 33:21

Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Edom, holy)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:27-29
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:13-14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 1:45-46
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses

Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:20-21
- Genesis 01:24-25
- Mark 09:28-29
- Matthew 13:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:11-13
- Deuteronomy 14:14-17
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11

king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 05:3-5
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:21-22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 14:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:5-7
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 4:47-49
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6

kingdom, kingdoms

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36-37
- Mark 03:23-25
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Revelation 01:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26

know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 2 Corinthians 02:14-15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4

- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1231, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G3877, G4267, G4894

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:3
- Deuteronomy 9:6
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 20:19-20
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18

labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:7-9
- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:4-6
- John 04:37-38
- Luke 10:1-2
- Matthew 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H213, H3018, H3021, H3022, H3023, H3205, H5447, H4522, H4639, H5445, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4704, G4866, G4904, G5389

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:18-20
- John 01:29-31
- John 01:35-36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3-4
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

*05:07 As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" *11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. *24:06 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." *45:08 He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word. *48:08 When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. *48:09 When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:14

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
- all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:5-6
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- Romans 03:19-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 14 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:6-8
- Deuteronomy 27:26
- Deuteronomy 28 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21

- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:10
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes

law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law, law)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:1-2
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:4-5
- John 18:31-32
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cedar, cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- Psalms 029:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, clean)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 17:11-13
- Mark 01:40-42
- Mark 14:3-5
- Matthew 08:1-3
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:8-9

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:33-34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2

- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26
- Deuteronomy 33:8

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, "life" could be translated as "spiritual life" or "eternal life," depending on the context.
- The concept of "spiritual life" could also be translated as "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:4-5
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:16
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2

- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:20-21
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6

like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:4-6
- Mark 08:24-26
- Matthew 17:1-2
- Matthew 18:1-3
- Psalms 073:4-5
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:15-18
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8

lions, lion, lioness, lionesses

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- Revelation 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:20

livestock

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, donkey, goat, horse, ox, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29-30
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H929, H4399, H4735

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:15-16

locust, locusts

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, Egypt, Israel, John (the Baptist), plague)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:28-31
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 01:4-6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 06:7-9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34-36
- Job 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H2783, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:11

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” *should not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words and it would look very strange.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
- 2 Samuel 07:21-23
- Deuteronomy 03:23-25
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Jeremiah 44:26-28
- Judges 06:22-24
- Micah 01:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H136, H430, H3068, G2316, G2962

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:23-25

lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

Definition:

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Jude 01:5-6
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 23:15-16

Lot

Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Ammon, Haran, Moab, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G3091

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, ”**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** ”The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, ”This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** ”Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 33:12

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Isaiah 02:9-11
- Jude 01:24-25
- Micah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 33:26
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: altar, Dan, Ephraim, Ezra, false god, Jacob, Judah, pagan, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9

- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:26-27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:3

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:12-13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27-28
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, ”The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, ”No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** ”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ’God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 7:2-3
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18

messenger, messengers

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 11:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:26-27

might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524,

H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:25-28
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:28-30
- Matthew 22:37-38
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likemindedtranslatio

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:15-18
- Acts 04:21-22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3

- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:57-58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

Miriam

Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miram and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Cush, intercede, Moses, Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:8-9

Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabitess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:10-11
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3
- Deuteronomy 34:7-8

month, months, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23-26
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:20-21
- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Matthew 17:3-4
- Romans 05:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

***09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:14-15
- Deuteronomy 31:16
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26
- Deuteronomy 31:30
- Deuteronomy 32:44-45
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:12
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

Most High

Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G5310

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:7-8

mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1669, H1671, H1897, H1899, H1993, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H6969, H7300, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 34:7-8

multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 22:15-17
- Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12-14
- 2 Timothy 02:19-21
- Acts 04:5-7
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 09:26-27
- Genesis 12:1-3
- Genesis 35:9-10
- Matthew 18:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:11
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 9:13-14
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 18:17-19
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 18:22
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: synecdoche)
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asher, Dan, Jacob, Sea of Galilee, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:7-8
- Judges 01:33
- Matthew 04:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G3508

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 33:23
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

nation, nations

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 13:19-20
- Acts 17:26-27
- Acts 26:4-5
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:13-14
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 18:12-14
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 20:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66

- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29
- Deuteronomy 32:43

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:13-15
- James 02:8-9
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:56-58
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Matthew 22:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:17-20
- Deuteronomy 5:21
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:14
- Deuteronomy 22:25-27
- Deuteronomy 23:24-25

- Deuteronomy 24:10-11
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:24-25

oak, oaks

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term “oak tree” rather than just the word “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, “an oak” could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like…,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: How to Translate Unknowns

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:29-30

oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" means is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- Luke 01:72-75
- Mark 06:26-29

- Matthew 05:36-37
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:71-72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 10:10-11
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. “Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has.Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedie

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22:6-7
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:26
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1880, H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 32:13
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25

olive, olives

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 16:5-7
- Psalms 052:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25

oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:133-134

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressorstranslationWords

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:15-16
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35

ordinance, ordinances

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H4687, H4931, H4941, G1296, G1345, G1378, G1379, G2937, G3862

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 8:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16

Paran

Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, desert, Egypt, Kadesh, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H364, H6290

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:1-2

partial, be partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17-18
- Malachi 02:8-9
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:15-17
- Romans 02:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4382, G4383

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:1-2
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.

- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2

peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. ***50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7521, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G425, G31514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19

Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: festival, firstfruits, harvest, Holy Spirit, raise)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Acts 02:1-4
- Acts 20:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2282, H7620, G4005

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G246, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:4-5
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2

- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 20:1
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:32
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:44-45
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:15
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 30:4-5
- Deuteronomy 32:36
- Deuteronomy 32:43

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:1-3
- James 03:1-2
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H724, H998, H1584, H1585, H3632, H3634, H4357, H4359, H4512, H8003, H8502, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G195, G197, G199, G739, G1295, G2005, G2675, G2676, G2677, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5052

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4

perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:22-23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:3
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17

- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:22
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 13:50-52
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:29-31
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:6-7

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** ”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, ”Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, ”I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”

- **46:04** But Ananias said, ”Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H4783, H6233, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 30:6-8

perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, deceive, disobey, evil, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:46-47
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:1-2
- Psalms 101:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3399, H3868, H3891, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H5999, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G654, G1294, G3344, G3346, G3859, G4106

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:19-20

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:11-13
- Acts 07:20-21
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08** **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** ”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

pig, pigs, pork, swine

Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called “pork.” The general term for pigs and related animals is “swine.”

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a “wild boar.” Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as “hogs.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:20-22
- Mark 05:11-13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2386, G5519

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:8

plague, plagues

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, Israel, Moses, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:10-11
- Revelation 09:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, H7752, G3061, G3148, G4127

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24

plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: evil, good, reap)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:6-8
- Luke 08:4-6
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:3-6
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5300, G5452 , G6037

plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowingtranslationW

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24

pledge, pledged, pledges

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:4-5
- Exodus 22:25-27
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162, G728

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:6
- Deuteronomy 24:10-11
- Deuteronomy 24:12-13
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18

plow, plows, plowed, plowing, plowers, plowman, plowmen, plowshares, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: bronze, ox)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Luke 09:61-62
- Luke 17:7-8
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5674, H6398, G722, G723

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11

pomegranate, pomegranates

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: bronze, Canaan, Egypt, Solomon, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24 Egypt

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8

possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy’ or ”live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:43-45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

- Matthew 13:44-46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 1:39-40
- Deuteronomy 2:4-5
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:12
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:47-49
- Deuteronomy 5:31
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:6
- Deuteronomy 10:10-11
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30

- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:14
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 23:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:12-13
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 30:4-5
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:23

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Jude 01:24-25
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Philippians 03:20-21
- Psalm 080:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, ”The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 32:36

praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 13:48-49
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46-47
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. ***17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. ***22:07** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! ***43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. ***47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3853, G3955, G4283, G4296

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:8-10
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- Colossians 04:2-4
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H5315, H5375, H6293, H6419, H6739, H6963, H7121, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 9:19-20

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: gold, silver)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:1-2
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H1431, H2532, H2580, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H4901, H5238, H5730, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:14-15
- Deuteronomy 33:16

prey, prey on

Definition:

The term “prey” refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, “prey” can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To “prey on” people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term “prey” could also be translated as “hunted animal” or “hunted one” or “victim.”

(See also: oppress)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 12:7-9
- Psalms 104:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H400, H957, H961, H962, H2863, H2963, H2964, H4455, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11

prince, princes, princess, princesses

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52-53

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7101, H7261, H7333, H7336, H7786, H7991, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G2232, G3175

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:16

proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3853, G4135

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4

promise, promises, promised

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:8-10
- James 01:12-13
- Numbers 30:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, ”I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”Â
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **05:04** ”Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 02 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 12:20
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3

Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: Canaan, promise)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

Uses:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 01 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 03 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 27 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 30:4-5
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:24-26
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:22-23

- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 33 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Job 36:10-12
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965, G2137

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48

- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10

prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 21:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:16

proverb, proverbs

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: Solomon, true, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 02:20-22
- Luke 04:23-24
- Proverbs 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:36-37

punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:9-10
- Acts 04:21-22
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:13-15
- Luke 23:15-17
- Matthew 25:44-46

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. ***49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:5-8
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 02:22-24
- Revelation 14:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4

Rabbah

Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: Ammon, David)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 2 Samuel 12:26-28
- Deuteronomy 03:11
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Jeremiah 49:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7237

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:11

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38

- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping

Definition:

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: Metaphor)
- Other ways to translate to “reap” and “reaper” could include to “harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”).

(See also: good news, harvest)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:29-30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4672, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2327

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:19-20

rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:37-38
- Luke 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

***14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead. ***18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam. ***18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin. ***18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods. ***20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon. ***45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, ”You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29

rebuke, rebukes, rebuked

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14-16
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G298, G299, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:20-21

receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

To “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. “Redemption” is the action of doing that. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Luke 02:36-38
- Ruth 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9

refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering

Definition:

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “refugee” is someone who is seeking a safe place. A “shelter” refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection,” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- “Refugees” are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as “aliens,” “homeless people,” or “exiles.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “house of safety.”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or to “take shelter” or to “take refuge” could be translated as to “find a place of safety” or to “put oneself in a protected place.”

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Isaiah 23:13-14
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Psalm 046:1-3
- Psalms 028:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 33:27

reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G96, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20

rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

Definition:

The term to “rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something. A “rest” is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as ” I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Revelation 14:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66

restore, restores, restored, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Acts 03:21-23
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:8-10
- Matthew 12:13-14
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:1-2

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Joseph (OT), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:31-32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:21-22
- Genesis 42:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6

reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- Philippians 03:15-16
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 34 General Notes

reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Isaiah 40:9-10
- Luke 06:35-36
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: parallelism)
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, evil, honor, mighty, punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:32-33
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- Lamentations 02:3-4

- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:1-2

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or ”doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Colossians 03:22-25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 24:12-13
- Deuteronomy 25:1-2
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4383, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2679, G2692, G3639, G4485

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:15-16

rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11-12
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:41-42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:4-6

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Leviticus 19:1-4
- Luke 13:12-14
- Mark 02:27-28
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** ”Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:15

sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27
- Deuteronomy 14:24-25
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 17:1
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 27:6-8
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38

- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name “Dead Sea.”
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, Arabah, , Jordan River, Moab, Negev)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 03:17
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H4417

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:17

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple,)

Bible References:

- Amos 07:12-13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Psalms 078:67-69

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G39

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:22-23

- Deuteronomy 14:24-25
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:5
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11

sandal, sandals

Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- Joshua 05:14-15
- Mark 06:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Acts 13:9-10
- Job 01:6-8
- Mark 08:33-34
- Zechariah 03:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:1-3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30-32

- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Philippians 01:28-30
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 22:25-27
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40

- Deuteronomy 33:29

scroll, scrolls

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:1-3
- Luke 04:16-17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 17:18-19

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: Arabia. Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**. ***12:05** Then God told Moses, ”Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.” ***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:39-40
- Deuteronomy 2:1-3
- Deuteronomy 11:4-5

seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:3-4
- Isaiah 29:11-12
- John 06:26-27
- Matthew 27:65-66
- Revelation 05:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:33-34

seed, semen

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called semen.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:30-32
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Jeremiah 02:20-22
- Matthew 13:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H2234, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39

seize, seizes, seized, seizure

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14-15
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:28-29
- Matthew 26:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:25-27

send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause…to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as ”the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 10:40-41
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:22-24
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13

- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24

serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake and "viper" refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, offspring, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:1-3
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 23:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 32:33-34

serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: covenant, law, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402,

G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256### Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:18
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 17:12-13
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: holy, sanctify, appoint)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:21

- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

shield, shields, shielded

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, andt were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36-37
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20-21
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:20-22
- Matthew 15:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:8-10

siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks

Definition:

A “siege” occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city or to put it “under siege” means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To “besiege” a city can also be expressed as to “lay siege” to it or to “perform a siege” on it.
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Jeremiah 33:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4692, H4693, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 20:12-13
- Deuteronomy 20:19-20
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:54
- Deuteronomy 28:56

sign, signs, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.\
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- John 02:17-19

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Matthew 26:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Christ, dedicate, Jacob, Judah, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 02:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:11-12

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:41-42
- Deuteronomy 07 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 09 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 9:15-16
- Deuteronomy 9:17-18
- Deuteronomy 9:21
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22:25-27
- Deuteronomy 23 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:16

Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as “Mount Horeb.”

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, Egypt, Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**. ***13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast. ***13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God. ***15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:1-2

sister, sisters

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: brother in Christ, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22-23
- Philemon 01:1-3
- Romans 16:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:22-23

snare, snares, ensnare, ensnares, ensnared, entrap, trap, traps, trapped

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who is starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: free, , prey, Satan, tempt)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 07:26
- Luke 21:34-35
- Mark 12:13-15
- Psalms 018:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6315, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G64, G1029, G2339, G2340, G3802, G3803, G3985, G4625

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:16

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:12-13
- Matthew 10:14-15
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:32

son, sons

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, ”I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, ”Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** ”Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š” they said.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:56

- Deuteronomy 32:19-20

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, false god, magic, sacrifice, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Revelation 09:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G3097, G5331, G5332, G5333

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 18:12-14

soul, souls

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means,“I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:40-42
- Genesis 49:5-6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:19-21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:46-47
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Psalms 019:7-8
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:29
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:20
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as ”special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, ”It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, ”Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 34:9

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and ” command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Numbers 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H6490, H7010

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:31
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 8:11-12
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 11:31-32
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12

- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10

stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

Definition:

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” in that he refuses to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: arrogant, proud, repent)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:51-53
- Deuteronomy 09:13-14
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Jeremiah 03:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7186, H7190, H8307, G483, G4644, G4645

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 9:6
- Deuteronomy 9:13-14
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29

stone, stones, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:5-7
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34-35
- Luke 20:5-6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24

strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
- “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
- “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
- “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
- “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
- “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
- “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
- “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
- “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
- “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
- “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
- “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.” (See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:10-11

- Luke 10:25-28
- Psalm 021:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H905, H1082, H1369, H1396, H1679, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H2633, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4206, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5332, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7293, H7296, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8510, H8632, H8633, G461, G772, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1849, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 28:32

strong drink, strong drinks

Definition:

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them. *Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.* Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink. *Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.* This term could also be translated as “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: grape, Nazirite, vow, wine)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:8-11
- Luke 01:14-15
- Numbers 06:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5435, H7941, G4608

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:26-27

suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Psalms 022:24-25
- Revelation 01:9-11
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, ”I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, ”My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4

sulfur, sulfurous

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: Gomorrah, judge, Lot, rebel, Sodom, godly)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:23-25
- Isaiah 34:8-10
- Luke 17:28-29
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1614, G2303

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 29:22-24

sword, swords, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Matthew 26:55-56
- Revelation 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 32:42
- Deuteronomy 33:29

teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14-16
- Luke 04:31-32
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Psalms 032:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 04:1-2
- Luke 11:3-4
- Matthew 26:39-41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

Ten Commandments

Facts:

The "Ten Commandments" were commands that God gave to Moses on Mount Sinai while the Israelites were living in the desert on their way to the land of Canaan. God wrote these commands on two large slabs of stone.

- God gave the Israelites many commands to obey, but the Ten Commandments were special commands to help the Israelites love and worship God and love other people.
- These commandments were also part of God's covenant with his people. By obeying what God had commanded them to do, the people of Israel would show that they loved God and belonged to him.
- The stone slabs with the commandments written on them were kept in the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the most holy place of the tabernacle and later, the temple.

(See also: ark of the covenant, command, covenant, desert, law, obey, Sinai, worship)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Luke 18:18-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** Then God wrote these **Ten Commandments** on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses. ***13:13** When Moses came down the mountain and saw the idol, he was so angry that he smashed the stones on which God had written the **Ten Commandments**. ***13:15** Moses wrote the **Ten Commandments** on new stone tablets to replace the ones he had broken.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H6235

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: Israel, Moses, pillar, tabernacle, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:1-2
- Numbers 04:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God. ***14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**. ***18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4150

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 31:14-15

tent, tents, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:44-45
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Genesis 12:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 16:7-8
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13

terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Luke 21:7-9
- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 28:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1763, H2111, H2189, H2283, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4048, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H8541, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26

test, tests, tested

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:19-22
- Acts 15:10-11
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Isaiah 07:13-15
- James 01:12-13
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Psalm 026:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 33:8

testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”

- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Micah 06:3-5
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Mark 01:43-44
- John 01:6-8
- John 03:31-33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 13:30-31
- Romans 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:11-12
- Revelation 12:11-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, ”We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:07** ”We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

Facts:

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, people group, prosper)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H314, H1419, H3220

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “theif” is “theives.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, crime, crucify, darkness, destroyer, power, Samaria, Satan)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33-34
- Mark 14:47-50
- Proverbs 06:30-31
- Revelation 03:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H6782, H7703, G727, G1888, G2417, G2812, G3027

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 24:7

thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:6-7
- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Daniel 02:34-35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:13-14

throne, thrones, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word "throne" is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power. (See: metonymy)
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 17:18-19

time, timely, times, untimely

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:6-8
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11-12
- Matthew 08:28-29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H116, H227, H268, H310, H570, H865, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3706, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6049, H6235, H6256, H6258, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3379, G3461, G3568, G3763, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4277, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:35

transgress, transgresses, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgression” refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To “transgress” is to commit a “transgression.”

- Figuratively, to “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression,” “sin,” “iniquity,” and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “trangress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13

trial, trials

Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, test, innocent, guilt)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G178, G1382, G1383, G2919, G3984, G3986, G4451

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:34

tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:12-14
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 1:22-24
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:13-14
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6

tribulation

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 04:16-17
- Mark 13:17-20
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9-11
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G2346, G2347

trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress.To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or ” when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Luke 24:38-40
- Matthew 24:6-8
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H598, H926, H927, H928, H1204, H1205, H1607, H1644, H1804, H1993, H2000, H2113, H2189, H2560, H2960, H4103, H5590, H5753, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7481, H7489, H7515, H7561, H8513,

G387, G1298, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2553, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5016, G5182

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:21

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 3 John 01:5-8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:17-18
- James 03:13-14
- James 05:19-20

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 18 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53

turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" can mean to "stop" doing something or to reject someone.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G576, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29

understand, understands, understood, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:45-47
- Luke 08:9-10
- Matthew 13:10-12
- Matthew 13:13-14
- Proverbs 03:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7306, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3129, G3539, G3563, G3877, G4441, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429, G6063

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:12-14
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3-4
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:3-4

- Deuteronomy 16:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17

vain, vanity

Definition:

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: false god, worthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H1891, H1892, H2600, H3576, H5014, H6754, H7307, H7385, H7386, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1432, G1500, G2755, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3150, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3154, G3155

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:11

vine, vines

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 15:1-2
- Luke 22:17-18
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:32

vineyard, vineyards

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:6-7
- Luke 20:15-16
- Matthew 20:1-2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H64, H1612, H3657, H3661, H3754, H3755, H8284, G289, G290

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 20:6-7
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39

virgin, virgins, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 01:34-35
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 25:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

***21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**. ***22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. ***22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?" ***49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, H5959, G3932, G3933

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:13-14
- Deuteronomy 22:15
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26

voice, voices

Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert….” (See: synecdoche)
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42-45
- Luke 09:34-36
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456, G5586

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:45-46
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 5:22
- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5

- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 33:7

vow, vows, vowed

Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: promise, oath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:22-24
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 23:21-23

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of“walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Kings 02:1-4
- Colossians 02:6-7
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 13:8-11
- Micah 04:2-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16

waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a "wasteland" or a "waste" refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term "waste away" is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 06:6-7
- Leviticus 26:37-39
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1110, H1197, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3765, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4875, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7722, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8437, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673, G4199

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:23-24

water, waters, watered, watering

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21-22
- John 04:9-10
- John 04:13-14
- John 04:15-16
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 14:9-10
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52
- Deuteronomy 33:8

week, weeks

Definition:

The term “week” literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term “week” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The “Festival of Weeks” is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called “Pentecost.”

(See also: Pentecost)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Leviticus 23:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7620, G4521

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:9-10

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:23-24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G4621

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:14

wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23-25
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:9-10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18-19

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:14
- Deuteronomy 32:33-34
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 33:28

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, wrath)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:1-2
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Revelation 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:13-14

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:2-4
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Isaiah 19:11-12
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Matthew 07:24-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:12-14
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29
- Deuteronomy 34:9

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, word, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 33:9

word, words

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see word of God

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: word of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:22-24
- Deuteronomy 1:25
- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 5:22
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 6:6-7
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 10:1-2
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 18:17-19
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 27:6-8
- Deuteronomy 27:26
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 30:13-14
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 31:30
- Deuteronomy 32:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:44-45
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 34:4-6

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:15
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

worship

Definition:

To “worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:5-7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, ”I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, ”Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ’**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Romans 01:18-19
- Romans 05:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:28-29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:24-25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:11-13
- Matthew 04:5-6
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H7559, G1125

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28

wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful

Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Genesis 16:5-6
- Luke 06:27-28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, to “be” or to “exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4

- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:19
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 1:25
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 1:32
- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 1:41-42
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 1:45-46
- Deuteronomy 2:1-3
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:12
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 3:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Deuteronomy 4:15-18
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 4:29

- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 5:11
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:16
- Deuteronomy 5:22
- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:2-3
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Deuteronomy 9:3
- Deuteronomy 9:15-16
- Deuteronomy 10:1-2
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Deuteronomy 10:5

- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:10-11
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 11:1
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:4-5
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:1
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11

- Deuteronomy 18:22
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 20:1
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 22:5
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 29:1
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 29:25-26
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 31:22-23
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:11-12
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:36
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

year, years

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31-33
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:1-2
- Exodus 12:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:18
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21

- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11

yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened

Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term "leaven" or "yeast" is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term "leaven" is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:5-8
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:20-21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:5-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:3-4

yoke, yokes, yoked

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, oppress, persecute, servant)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10-11
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Isaiah 09:4-5
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Philippians 04:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2201, G2218, G4805

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Leah, Salt Sea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:19-21
- Isaiah 09:1-2
- Judges 04:10
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2074, H2075, G2194

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19

Zoar

Facts:

Zoar was a small city where Lot fled when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

- It was formerly known as “Bela” but was renamed “Zoar” when Lot asked God to spare this “small” city.
- Zoar is thought to have been located in the plain of the Jordan River or at the southern end of the Dead Sea.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lot, Sodom, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 34:1-3
- Genesis 13:10-11
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 19:21-22
- Genesis 19:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6820

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

> ...*from childhood you have known the sacred writings* ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
    - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
        - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
    - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
        - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
        - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
        - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
    - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
        - Today the people in this house have been saved...
        - Today God has saved the people in this house...
    - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

    - The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
    - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 22:13-14
- Deuteronomy 22:15
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29
- Deuteronomy 32:36
- Deuteronomy 33:7
- Deuteronomy 33:12
- Deuteronomy 33:27
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

    - **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

    - The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

    - **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
        - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
        - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

    - **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
        - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:41-42
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5

- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 13:15-16
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:18-20
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:22
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 24:5
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:16
- Deuteronomy 24:16
- Deuteronomy 24:16
- Deuteronomy 25:1-2

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2
- Deuteronomy 25:3
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:15
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21
- Deuteronomy 27:22-23
- Deuteronomy 27:24-25
- Deuteronomy 27:26
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:32
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 29:29
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18

- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 32:22
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:33-34
- Deuteronomy 33:12
- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 33:14-15
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:20
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Apostrophe

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

> Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULB)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.

    - **He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' "** (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)
        - He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says about this altar. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on it.' "
    - **Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you** (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)
        - As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:43

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information.**

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

    - **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
        - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
    - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
        - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
            - Or:
        - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
    - **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
        - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

    - **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
        - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
    - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
        - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

    - At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 3:18
- Deuteronomy 3:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:15-16
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 12 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:26-27
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 17 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 17:12-13
- Deuteronomy 19 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2

- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:14
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 19:20-21
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20:1
- Deuteronomy 20:5
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:16-17
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 22:30
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 23:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Deuteronomy 24 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 24:12-13
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 25 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 25:13
- Deuteronomy 25:13
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:4-5
- Deuteronomy 27:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21
- Deuteronomy 27:20-21

- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 33:14-15
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19
- Deuteronomy 33:23
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25
- Deuteronomy 34:9

Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information.** The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig.

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
    - where the story takes place
    - when the story takes place
    - who is present when the story begins
    - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
    - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
    - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:10-11
- Deuteronomy 2:10-11
- Deuteronomy 2:12
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9

Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Original Measure | Metric Measure | | ——— | ——— | | handbreadth | 8 centimeters | | span | 23 centimeters | | cubit | 46 centimeters | | "long" cubit | 54 centimeters | | stadia | 185 meters |

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half.”
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet.”
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter[1]; its width will be two thirds of a meter [2]; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.” The footnotes would look like:
        - [1] two and a half cubits
        - [2] one cubit and a half

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:11

Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

| Unit in OT | Metal | Weight | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | daric | gold coin | 8.4 grams | | shekel | various metals | 11 grams | | talent | various metals | 33 kilograms|

| Unit in NT | Metal | Day's Wage | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | denarius/denarii | silver coin | 1 day | | drachma | silver coin | 1 day | | mite | copper coin| 1/64 day | | shekel | silver coin | 4 days | | talent | silver | 6,000 days |

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - ”The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.
    - ”The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
    - ”The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”
- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
    - ”The one owed five hundred denarii[1], and the other owed fifty denarii.[2]” (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
        - [1] five hundred days’s wages
        - [2] fifty day’s wages
- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.
    - ”The one owed five hundred denarii[1], and the other owed fifty denarii.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
        - [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29

Direct and Indirect Quotations

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks:"".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would," to replace the future tense indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

> He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him to tell no one,
- Direct quote: but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest…"

> Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, ”The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.”
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, ’Look here¡ or, ’Look there!’

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

    - **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, ”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
        - He instructed him to tell no one, but to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

    - **He instructed him, to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
        - He instructed him, ”Tell no one. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.## Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 12:20
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17

- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26
- Deuteronomy 33:27

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either distinguish the noun from other similar items, or they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between making a distinction between similar items and gving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister who was very thankful.
    - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could **distinguish this sister** of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister, who was very thankful.
    - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary's sister. It tells us about **how Mary's sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. The translator must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

> ... The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words "holy" and "most holy" distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

> A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to the woman who bore him. (Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase "who bore him" distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

> ... for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word "righteous" simply reminds us that God's judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

> Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase "who is ninety years old" is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

> I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULB)

The phrase "whom I have created" is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
    - **I hate those who serve worthless idols** (Psalm 31:6 ULB) - By saying "worthless idols," David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.
        - Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.
    - **... for your righteous judgments are good.** (Psalm 119:39 ULB)
        - ... for your judgments are good because they are righteous.
    - **Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?** (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB) - The phrase "who is ninety years old" is a reminder of Sarah's age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.
        - Can Sarah bear a son even when she is ninety years old?
    - **I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised** (2 Samuel 22:4 ULB) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase "who is worthy to be praised" gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.
        - I will call on Yahweh, because he is worthy to be praised
2. Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information.
    - **You are my Son, whom I love. I am pleased with you.** (Luke 3:22 ULB)
        - You are my Son. I love you and I am pleased with you.
        - Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 16:21-22

Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not" such as the underlined parts of these words: "unhappy," "impossible," and "useless."

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of "not."

> It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)
>
> And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is intelligent" or "He is very intelligent."

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> … so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

> All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

    - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
        - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
    - **… so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
        - “… so that they may be fruitful.”

2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

    - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished …** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
        - ”Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished …”
    - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
        - ”All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 5:11
- Deuteronomy 8:9-10
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word "and." Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

> King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was "very old."

> … he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself … (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared "many false things to say."

> … as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish–not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
    - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
        - ”You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
    - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
        - ”King David was very old.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.
    - **… a lamb without blemish and without spot…** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”
        - ” … a lamb without any blemish at all …”

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 20:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:1-2
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4

- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- Deuteronomy 33:9

Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

> ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

Examples from the Bible

> ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, ”Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.
    - **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
        - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
    - **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight."** (Luke 18:40-41)
        - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight."
    - **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
        - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 10:1-2
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 19:20-21
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 25:13
- Deuteronomy 25:13
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:30
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 33:22

Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

> ... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead". It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

> ... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?" (Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
  - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
  - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 22:13-14
- Deuteronomy 23:9-11
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:16
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 4:29
- Deuteronomy 4:29

- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 4:37-38
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 5:7-8
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 5:11
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:16
- Deuteronomy 5:17-20
- Deuteronomy 5:21
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 6:6-7
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Deuteronomy 7:2-3
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6

- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Deuteronomy 8:9-10
- Deuteronomy 8:11-12
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:3
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:6
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 9:7-8
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:10-11
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 16:21-22
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 21:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 21:22-23
- Deuteronomy 22:1-2
- Deuteronomy 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:6-7
- Deuteronomy 22:8
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 22:12
- Deuteronomy 22:22
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8

- Deuteronomy 23:9-11
- Deuteronomy 23:12-14
- Deuteronomy 23:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 23:19-20
- Deuteronomy 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:10-11
- Deuteronomy 24:12-13
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 25:11-12
- Deuteronomy 25:13
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:3-4
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 26:10-11
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:4-5
- Deuteronomy 27:4-5
- Deuteronomy 27:6-8
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14

- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:22
- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 28:30-31
- Deuteronomy 28:32
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Deuteronomy 28:40-41
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:54
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11
- Deuteronomy 29:12-13
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:4-5
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:13-14
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20

- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 31:24-26
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:14
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 33:8
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19
- Deuteronomy 33:23
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25
- Deuteronomy 33:26
- Deuteronomy 33:27
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Generic Noun Phrases

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;
> the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

Examples from the Bible

> The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

    - **Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
        - ”Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.” (Proverbs 12:2)

2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

    - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
        - ”People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”

3. Use the word “any, as in ”any person” or “anyone.”

    - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
        - ”People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”

4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

    - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
        - ”People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”

5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

    - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
        - ”People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 29:10-11

Go and Come

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to translate the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring") in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away, from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to go to them, not come toward Abraham.

> When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have gone into the land..."

> Joseph and Mary brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary took or carried Jesus to the temple.

> Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to come to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UDB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not come out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
    - **But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
        - But you will be free from my oath if you go to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
    - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
        - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not come out in public for five months.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.
    - **When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
        - "When you have arrived in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ..."
    - **Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark ...** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
        - "Yahweh said to Noah, "Enter, you and all your household, into the ark ..."
    - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
        - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not appear in public for five months.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

> You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)
>
> You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (see Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)
- Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
    - At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
- Use the months that people know.
    - At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
    - It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work."
- State clearly what season the month occurred in.
    - It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.
- Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
    - It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn[1] you must humble yourselves and do no work.
        - The footnote would look like:
    - [1]The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2

Hendiadys

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with "and," it is called "hendiadys." In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> ... his own kingdom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand how the two words work together; one word describing the other.

Examples from the Bible

> ... for I will give you words and wisdom ... (Luke 21:15 ULB)

"Words" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes "words."

> ... if you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
    - **for I will give you words and wisdom** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
        - for I will give you wise words
    - **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
        - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
    - **for I will give you words and wisdom.** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
        - for I will give you words of wisdom.
    - **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
        - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
    - **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
        - if you are willingly obedient
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.
    - **if you are, willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”
        - if you obey willingly

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

> You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

> It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
  - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

   - **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
     - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

   - **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
     - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

   - **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - ... a young man named Paul[1] The footnote would look like:
       - [1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
   - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
     - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

   - **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

        - [1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
    - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
        - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
    - **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
        - It came about in Iconium that Paul[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
            - [1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- Introduction to Deuteronomy
- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:22-24
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 2:1-3
- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:10-11
- Deuteronomy 2:12
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 2:16-19
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Deuteronomy 2:23
- Deuteronomy 2:23
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29
- Deuteronomy 2:30-31

- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 2:32-33
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 3:5-7
- Deuteronomy 3:5-7
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 3:15-16
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Deuteronomy 3:28-29
- Deuteronomy 4:41-43
- Deuteronomy 4:44-46
- Deuteronomy 6:16-17
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 10:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:22-24
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 32:48-49
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52
- Deuteronomy 32:50-52
- Deuteronomy 33:26
- Deuteronomy 34:1-3

Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarliy mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most, ”most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

> Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

> If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

> They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

> But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> ... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

> Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
    - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
        - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
    - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
        - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
    - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
        - ”And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
    - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

    - Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him."
    - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him."

4. For a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

    - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
        - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62

Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

"If the sun stopped shining…", "What if the sun stopped shining…", "Suppose the sun stopped shining…", "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with "if.")

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situations in the past

   > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died." (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

1. Hypothetical situations in the present

   > Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

1. Hypothetical situation in the future

   > Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

> The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 19:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:5
- Deuteronomy 20:6-7
- Deuteronomy 20:6-7
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, "You are telling me a lie")
- Do not push the envelope (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme")
- This house is under water (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value")
- We are painting the town red (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
    - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
        - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
    - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
        - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
    - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
        - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
    - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
        - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
    - **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
        - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:5-6
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:22-24
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 2:8
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 3:26-27
- Deuteronomy 4:11-12
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:29
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:28-30
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Deuteronomy 6:4-5
- Deuteronomy 6:6-7
- Deuteronomy 6:18-19
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 7:12-13
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:20-22
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 7:23-24
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:13-15
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2

- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 19:6-7
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 20:8-9
- Deuteronomy 20:19-20
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 21:15-17
- Deuteronomy 22:1-2
- Deuteronomy 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Deuteronomy 23:19-20
- Deuteronomy 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Deuteronomy 25:15-16
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:1-3
- Deuteronomy 27:15
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4

- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66
- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:13
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 34:10-12

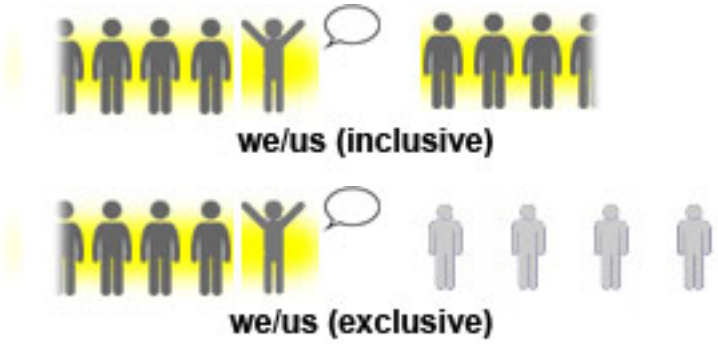
Inclusive "We"

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive "we"?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> ... the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9

Irony

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

> How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
> ”the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)
    - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
    - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
    - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

    - You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. ”Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

    - ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 32:37-38

Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

> Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are not the least among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

    - **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
        - ”For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”
    - **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
        - ”Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
        - ”Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:26-27
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 8:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:18
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47

Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULB)
>
> I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

> From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
    - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
        - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
    - **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
        - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.
    - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
        - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
    - **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
        - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 10:14-15
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 23:17-18
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the "image") stands for another concept (the "topic"). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is "the girl I love," and the image is "a red rose." The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form "tells" is a metaphor for the past tense form "told," because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: "live" metaphors, "dead" metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, 'Go and tell that fox...,'" where "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are "table leg," "family tree," "leaf" meaning a page in a book, and "crane" meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably "heal" meaning "repair," and "sick" meaning "spiritually powerless because of sin."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The heat is going *down*," and "The stock market *took a tumble*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
- "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patternsand the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his "love") is the **topic**, and "red rose" is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose's beauty is not identical to a woman's beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker's message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

> Jesus said to them. "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is "I," and the **image** is "bread." Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed break every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is "you") with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are "we" and "you," and the images are "clay and "potter." The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

    - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
        - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.

2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

    - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
        - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

    - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
        - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

    - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
        - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

    - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
        - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand."
        - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand."

4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

    - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
        - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.

    - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
        - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
    - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
        - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick.

6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:12-14
- Deuteronomy 1:25
- Deuteronomy 3:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:19-20
- Deuteronomy 4:23-24
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Deuteronomy 05 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:15
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 5:32-33
- Deuteronomy 06 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 6:1-2
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:2-3
- Deuteronomy 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 7:6
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:14-15
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 7:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:11-12

- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:16-17
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:8-9
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 11:26-28
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 11:31-32
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:8-9
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5

- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 13:12-14
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- Deuteronomy 14:8
- Deuteronomy 14:9-10
- Deuteronomy 14:11-13
- Deuteronomy 14:18-20
- Deuteronomy 14:18-20
- Deuteronomy 14:21
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:1-2
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 18:17-19
- Deuteronomy 18:17-19
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2

- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:6-7
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:14
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 21:8-9
- Deuteronomy 22:6-7
- Deuteronomy 24:17-18
- Deuteronomy 26:8-9
- Deuteronomy 26:18-19
- Deuteronomy 27:18-19
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:13-14
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:23-24
- Deuteronomy 28:42-44
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:47-48
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:63-64
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:15-16

- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:16
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:13
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:22
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:32
- Deuteronomy 32:32
- Deuteronomy 32:33-34
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 32:42
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19
- Deuteronomy 33:22
- Deuteronomy 33:23
- Deuteronomy 33:26
- Deuteronomy 33:27
- Deuteronomy 33:28
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Deuteronomy 33:29

- Deuteronomy 34:9

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

> and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

> Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> ... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
    - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
        - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
    - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
        - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
        - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
    - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
        - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 1:41-42
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:9
- Deuteronomy 2:24-25
- Deuteronomy 3:8-10
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 4:35-36
- Deuteronomy 5:4-6
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 6:8-9
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12

- Deuteronomy 6:13-15
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 6:24-25
- Deuteronomy 7:7-8
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 8:11-12
- Deuteronomy 8:13-14
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 8:18-20
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 9:4
- Deuteronomy 9:5
- Deuteronomy 9:21
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 9:22-24
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 9:27-29
- Deuteronomy 10:8-9
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:2-3
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 11:16-17
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:18-19
- Deuteronomy 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 12:1-2
- Deuteronomy 12:3-4
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 12:23-25
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 13:4-5

- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 13:6-7
- Deuteronomy 13:10-11
- Deuteronomy 13:17-18
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Deuteronomy 16:5
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:6-8
- Deuteronomy 18:9-11
- Deuteronomy 18:12-14
- Deuteronomy 18:17-19
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 18:20-21
- Deuteronomy 18:22
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:6-7
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 20:8-9
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 20:10-11
- Deuteronomy 20:12-13
- Deuteronomy 20:14-15
- Deuteronomy 20:19-20
- Deuteronomy 21:5
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7

- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:8
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 24:6
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 25:5-6
- Deuteronomy 25:7-8
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- Deuteronomy 25:11-12
- Deuteronomy 25:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:5
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:9-10
- Deuteronomy 27:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:5-6
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:32
- Deuteronomy 28:33-35
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:58-59
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:27-28
- Deuteronomy 30:1-3
- Deuteronomy 30:6-8
- Deuteronomy 30:13-14
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:7-8
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 32:42

- Deuteronomy 32:43
- Deuteronomy 32:43
- Deuteronomy 32:46-47
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 33:7
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:28

Nominal Adjectives

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> … The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds … (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> He will not be rich; his wealth will not last … (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> …the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
    - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
        - The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.
    - **Blessed are the meek ...** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
        - Blessed are people who are meek ...

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 13:4-5
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:12-13
- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:20-21
- Deuteronomy 22:23-24
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

> When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:1-2
- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Deuteronomy 1:22-24
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 3:3-4
- Deuteronomy 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 7:9-11
- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Deuteronomy 8:4-6
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 9:17-18
- Deuteronomy 9:25-26
- Deuteronomy 10:10-11
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:1-3
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:7-8

- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:13-14
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 19:8-10
- Deuteronomy 22:18-19
- Deuteronomy 22:28-29
- Deuteronomy 25:3
- Deuteronomy 28:25-26
- Deuteronomy 29:5-6
- Deuteronomy 31:1-3
- Deuteronomy 31:9-11
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 34:7-8

Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000| one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

    - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
        - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim, ... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
        - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim, ... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
    - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
        - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

    - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
        - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4

- Deuteronomy 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 10:1-2
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Deuteronomy 10:10-11
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:12-14
- Deuteronomy 16:3-4
- Deuteronomy 16:7-8
- Deuteronomy 23:1-2
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Deuteronomy 23:7-8
- Deuteronomy 26:1-2
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

> Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

    - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
        - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."
  - "Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does."
- **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
  - "For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel."

2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

   - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
     - "Yahweh truly sees everything a person does."

3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

   - **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
     - "All you have done is lie to me."
   - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
     - "Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does."

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 2:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:9-10
- Deuteronomy 9:11-12
- Deuteronomy 14:1-2
- Deuteronomy 15:4-6
- Deuteronomy 17:18-19
- Deuteronomy 20:2-4
- Deuteronomy 26:14-15
- Deuteronomy 26:16-17
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 29:7-9
- Deuteronomy 32:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10

- Deuteronomy 32:11-12
- Deuteronomy 32:13
- Deuteronomy 32:14
- Deuteronomy 32:15-16
- Deuteronomy 32:19-20
- Deuteronomy 32:21
- Deuteronomy 32:22
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 32:28-29
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:32
- Deuteronomy 32:33-34
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- Deuteronomy 32:36
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 32:39-40
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 32:42
- Deuteronomy 32:43
- Deuteronomy 33:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4
- Deuteronomy 33:5-6
- Deuteronomy 33:7
- Deuteronomy 33:8
- Deuteronomy 33:9
- Deuteronomy 33:10
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:12
- Deuteronomy 33:13
- Deuteronomy 33:14-15
- Deuteronomy 33:16
- Deuteronomy 33:17
- Deuteronomy 33:18-19
- Deuteronomy 33:20
- Deuteronomy 33:21
- Deuteronomy 33:22
- Deuteronomy 33:23
- Deuteronomy 33:24-25

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
    - **... sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
        - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you
2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
    - **... sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
        - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.
    - **... even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
        - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Deuteronomy 4:25-26
- Deuteronomy 8:15-17
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:10-12
- Deuteronomy 24:3-4
- Deuteronomy 28:1-2
- Deuteronomy 28:7-8
- Deuteronomy 28:15
- Deuteronomy 28:22
- Deuteronomy 28:45-46
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Deuteronomy 30:19-20
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:21
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:25-26
- Deuteronomy 32:42

Predictive Past

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
> their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULB)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

> Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:1-2 ULB)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
> and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULB)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying,
> ”Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULB)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said “the Lord came.”

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

- **For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;** (Isaiah 9:6a ULB)
    - ”For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;

2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
    - Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
    - Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 33:27
- Deuteronomy 33:28

Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

Description

Pronouns are words that people use in place of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone. The most common type of pronoun is personal.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
    - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
    - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
    - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself in the mirror.** - The word "himself" refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- **Who built the house?**

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They tell more about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house that John built.** The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man who built the house.** The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen this here?**
- **Who is that over there?**

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to anyone.**
- **Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.**
- **They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.**

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 1:20-21
- Deuteronomy 1:34-35
- Deuteronomy 4:3-4

- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 32:11-12
- Deuteronomy 32:13
- Deuteronomy 32:14
- Deuteronomy 32:27
- Deuteronomy 33:3-4

Quotes Within Quotes

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we can talk about it having layers of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULB)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULB

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULB)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, "... I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother." ' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULB)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.' " ' " (2 Kings 1:6 ULB)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (see Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULB and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

    - **Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. ...I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar."** (Acts 25:14-21 ULB)
        - Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. ...I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, 'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?' But when Paul said, 'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,' I told the guard, 'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'"

2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

    - **Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, “I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, ‘At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’ ”** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULB)
        - Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ”I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them that at twilight they will eat meat, and in the morning they will be filled with bread. Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God.”
    - **They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’ ” ’ ”** (2 Kings 1:6 ULB)
        - They told him that a man had come to meet them who said to them, ”Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him that Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’ ”

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 12:20
- Deuteronomy 12:29-30
- Deuteronomy 15:11
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 17:14-15
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used theis question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
    - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
        - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
    - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
        - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
    - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
        - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”
    - **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
        - You should not insult God’s high priest!
    - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
        - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
    - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
        - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
    - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
        - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:12-14
- Deuteronomy 1:26-28
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Deuteronomy 3:23-25
- Deuteronomy 04 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 4:7-8
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 9:1-2
- Deuteronomy 10:12-13
- Deuteronomy 11:29-30
- Deuteronomy 20 General Notes
- Deuteronomy 20:19-20
- Deuteronomy 30:11-12
- Deuteronomy 30:13-14
- Deuteronomy 31:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Deuteronomy 32:30-31
- Deuteronomy 32:33-34
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Deuteronomy 33:29

Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
    - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
        - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
    - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
        - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
    - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

    - See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
    - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
    - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:9-11
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 9:3
- Deuteronomy 10:22
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Deuteronomy 28:27-29
- Deuteronomy 28:49-51
- Deuteronomy 28:60-62
- Deuteronomy 32:1-2
- Deuteronomy 32:9-10
- Deuteronomy 32:11-12
- Deuteronomy 33:20

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No." Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes."

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
    - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
        - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
    - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
        - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
    - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
        - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
    - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
        - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
    - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
    - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
        - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 14:1-2

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> the Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?" (Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
    - **"My soul exalts the Lord."** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
        - "I exalt the Lord."
    - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

    - ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
    - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Deuteronomy 1:17-18
- Deuteronomy 1:29-31
- Deuteronomy 2:6-7
- Deuteronomy 2:13-15
- Deuteronomy 2:28-29
- Deuteronomy 3:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:21-22
- Deuteronomy 4:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:9-10
- Deuteronomy 4:27-28
- Deuteronomy 4:30-31
- Deuteronomy 4:32-33
- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Deuteronomy 5:1-3
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Deuteronomy 5:23-24
- Deuteronomy 5:25-27
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Deuteronomy 7:17-19
- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Deuteronomy 9:17-18
- Deuteronomy 10:20-21
- Deuteronomy 11:6-7
- Deuteronomy 11:24-25
- Deuteronomy 12:5-6
- Deuteronomy 12:7
- Deuteronomy 12:10-11
- Deuteronomy 12:12
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:18-19
- Deuteronomy 12:20
- Deuteronomy 12:21-22

- Deuteronomy 12:21-22
- Deuteronomy 12:28
- Deuteronomy 13:8-9
- Deuteronomy 13:8-9
- Deuteronomy 13:8-9
- Deuteronomy 13:15-16
- Deuteronomy 14:26-27
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 14:28-29
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:9-10
- Deuteronomy 15:22-23
- Deuteronomy 16:5
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 16:11-12
- Deuteronomy 16:13-14
- Deuteronomy 16:15
- Deuteronomy 16:18-20
- Deuteronomy 17:2-4
- Deuteronomy 17:5-7
- Deuteronomy 17:8-9
- Deuteronomy 17:16-17
- Deuteronomy 17:20
- Deuteronomy 18:3-5
- Deuteronomy 18:15-16
- Deuteronomy 19:11-13
- Deuteronomy 19:20-21
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7
- Deuteronomy 21:6-7
- Deuteronomy 21:20-21
- Deuteronomy 24:1-2
- Deuteronomy 24:14-15
- Deuteronomy 24:19-20
- Deuteronomy 25:3
- Deuteronomy 25:11-12
- Deuteronomy 26:12-13
- Deuteronomy 28:11-12
- Deuteronomy 28:32
- Deuteronomy 28:52-53
- Deuteronomy 28:54
- Deuteronomy 28:56
- Deuteronomy 28:65-66

- Deuteronomy 28:67-68
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:2-4
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Deuteronomy 30:9-10
- Deuteronomy 30:17-18
- Deuteronomy 31:4-6
- Deuteronomy 31:12-13
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Deuteronomy 31:30
- Deuteronomy 32:23-24
- Deuteronomy 32:41
- Deuteronomy 32:44-45
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Deuteronomy 33:16

Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
    - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
    - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

    - your sins ... will be white like milk
    - your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
    - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
    - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
    - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
    - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
    - to him who made the sun and the moon

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 1:43-44
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Deuteronomy 14:3-5
- Deuteronomy 14:3-5
- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- Deuteronomy 14:11-13
- Deuteronomy 14:14-17
- Deuteronomy 14:18-20
- Deuteronomy 15:15-17
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Deuteronomy 22:9-11
- Deuteronomy 33:8

When Masculine Words Include Women

This page answers the question: *How do I translate "brother" or "he" when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In some parts of the Bible, the words "men", "brothers" and "sons" refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says 'brothers' when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is "his", but it is not limited to males.

> A wise child makes his father rejoice
> but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

> We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULB)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, 'If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.' (Mark 22:24 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.
    - **The wise man dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
        - "The wise person dies just like the fool dies."
        - "Wise people die just like fools die."
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
    - **For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, about the troubles we had in Asia.** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
        - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia." (2 Corinthians 1:8)
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.
    - **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me."** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
        - "If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me."

Uses:

- Deuteronomy 15:12-14